

## AGENDA ITEM MEMO

**BOARD MEETING DATE:** February 2, 2022

**TO:** Board Members

**THROUGH:** Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator  
Ashley Harden, General Counsel  
Rebecca Trevino, Chief Financial Officer

**FROM:** Georgia Sanchez, Development Fund Manager

**SUBJECT:** General Obligation new money and refunding Series 2022 Bond Sale

### **ACTION REQUESTED**

Consider approving by resolution: (a) the issuance, sale and delivery of State of Texas, General Obligation Water Financial Assistance and Refunding Bonds, Series 2022A, Series 2022B, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program), and Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program); (b) a Preliminary Official Statement; and (c) authorization for the Executive Administrator, General Counsel, Chief Financial Officer, and Development Fund Manager, or any other authorized representative to act on behalf of the Texas Water Development Board in the sale and delivery of such bonds.

### **BACKGROUND**

On August 19, 2021, approval was received to initiate the process for the issuance of General Obligation bonds to provide additional funding for the Financial Assistance Account of the Water Development Fund (DFund) program and pay costs of issuance.

Hilltop Securities Inc. was selected to serve as financial advisor, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP as bond counsel, and Bracewell LLP as disclosure counsel. The selection of an underwriting syndicate, led by senior manager Ramirez & Co., Inc., included Frost Bank, Raymond James & Associates, Inc., and Siebert Williams Shank & Co. LLC.

The required documents, including the Bond Resolutions and Preliminary Official Statement have been drafted and are included as attachments. Upon approval by the Board, a formal Notice of Intent to issue debt will be provided to the Bond Review Board (BRB), and approval is expected from the BRB in advance of posting the Preliminary Official

#### [Our Mission](#)

Leading the state's efforts in ensuring a secure water future for Texas and its citizens

#### [Board Members](#)

Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman | Kathleen Jackson, Board Member

Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator

Statement. Staff anticipates non-substantive edits to update the bond documents prior to publication.

### **KEY ISSUES**

While the par and premium amounts will be adjusted at the time of pricing due to market considerations, total par for the new money and refunding series combined will not exceed \$330,000,000. Final bond sizing will also be influenced by the amount and terms of financial assistance formally requested by the entities participating in the DFund program.

The costs of issuance for the transaction have been estimated at a not-to-exceed of \$4.25 per bond for the underwriter's discount, and \$792,000 for all other transaction-related fees and expenses. The estimated costs of issuance are appropriate and may be negotiated further based on market conditions at the time of pricing.

Below is a short summary of the preliminary schedule of events currently anticipated for this transaction:

- **February 2** TWDB considers approval of the issuance/documents
- **April 19** Bond pricing initiation
- **April 20** Bond pricing
- **May 10** Closing and delivery of the bonds
- **May 11** TWDB adopts lending rate scales

### **RECOMMENDATION**

In order to realize savings in the DFund, Economically Distressed Areas, and State Participation programs, and to provide additional funding for the DFund program, the Executive Administrator recommends approving by resolution: (a) the issuance, sale and delivery of State of Texas, General Obligation Water Financial Assistance and Refunding Bonds, Series 2022A, Series 2022B, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program), and Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program); (b) a Preliminary Official Statement; and (c) authorization for the Executive Administrator, General Counsel, Chief Financial Officer, and Development Fund Manager to act on behalf of the Texas Water Development Board in the sale and delivery of such bonds.

Attachments:

- 1 – Series 2022A Draft Bond Resolution
- 2 – Series 2022B Draft Bond Resolution
- 3 – Series 2022C Draft Bond Resolution
- 4 – Taxable Series 2022D Draft Bond Resolution
- 5 – Draft Preliminary Official Statement

**BOND RESOLUTION  
OF THE  
TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD  
AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF  
STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE BONDS,  
SERIES 2022A  
AND SUCH OTHER SUBSERIES  
AS MAY BE DESIGNATED PURSUANT TO THE TERMS HEREOF  
ADOPTED:  
FEBRUARY 2, 2022**

Table of Contents

Page

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Section 1.01	Definitions .....	2
Section 1.02	Rules of Construction.....	8
Section 1.03	Interpretations .....	8

ARTICLE II

THE SERIES 2022A BONDS

Section 2.01	Authorization of Bonds .....	8
Section 2.02	Denominations, Date and Interest Rates .....	10
Section 2.03	Maturities and Amounts .....	10
Section 2.04	Execution of Bonds .....	10
Section 2.05	Temporary Bonds.....	10
Section 2.06	Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar .....	11
Section 2.07	Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds .....	11
Section 2.08	Owners of Bonds.....	13
Section 2.09	Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.....	14
Section 2.10	Successor Paying Agent/Registrars .....	14
Section 2.11	Book-Entry Only System .....	15
Section 2.12	All Bonds On Parity .....	16

ARTICLE III

REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY

Section 3.01	Limitation on Redemption .....	16
Section 3.02	Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.....	16
Section 3.03	Partial Redemption.....	16
Section 3.04	Notice of Redemption .....	17
Section 3.05	Payment Upon Redemption.....	18
Section 3.06	Effect of Redemption.....	18

ARTICLE IV

FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES

Section 4.01	Form of Bond and Certificates .....	18
Section 4.02	Opinion of Bond Counsel .....	19
Section 4.03	Printing of Statement of Insurance.....	19

Table of Contents  
(continued)

Page

ARTICLE V

SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS;  
ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS

Section 5.01	General Obligations .....	19
Section 5.02	Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.....	19
Section 5.03	Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds .....	19
Section 5.04	Flow of Funds For Debt Service .....	20
Section 5.05	Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment .....	21
Section 5.06	Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller .....	22
Section 5.07	Payment of Bonds.....	22
Section 5.08	Cooperation with State Officers .....	22
Section 5.09	Investment of Funds.....	22

ARTICLE VI

COVENANTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.01	Special Covenant.....	23
Section 6.02	Covenants to Maintain Tax-Exempt Status .....	23
Section 6.03	Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.....	27
Section 6.04	Remedies of Bondholders.....	27
Section 6.05	Bond Enhancement Agreements .....	27

ARTICLE VII

SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

Section 7.01	Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.....	27
Section 7.02	Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners.....	28
Section 7.03	Effect of Amendatory Resolutions.....	30
Section 7.04	Bonds May Bear Notation .....	30

ARTICLE VIII

PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS

Section 8.01	Issuance and Sale of Bonds .....	30
Section 8.02	Official Statement.....	31
Section 8.03	Custody of Bonds.....	32
Section 8.04	Use of Bond Proceeds .....	32

ARTICLE IX

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING

Section 9.01	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller .....	32
--------------	--	----

Table of Contents  
(continued)

	Page
Section 9.02	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board..... 33
Section 9.03	Incorporation by Reference..... 34
Section 9.04	Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments..... 34
ARTICLE X	
DEFEASANCE	
Section 10.01	Series 2022A Bonds Deemed Paid ..... 36
Section 10.02	Investment in Defeasance Securities..... 36
Section 10.03	Paying Agent/Registrar Services ..... 36
Section 10.04	Selection of Series 2022A Bonds for Defeasance..... 37
ARTICLE XI	
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	
Section 11.01	Further Procedures ..... 37
Section 11.02	Open Meeting; Notice ..... 37
Section 11.03	Prior Actions..... 37
Section 11.04	Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge..... 37
Exhibit A	Form of Bond ..... A-1
Exhibit B	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board..... B-1

**RESOLUTION**

**OF THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF  
STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE BONDS, SERIES 2022A, AND  
RESOLVING OTHER MATTERS RELATED THERETO**

WHEREAS, the Texas Water Development Board (the “**Board**”) has previously issued, sold, and delivered general obligation bonds of the State of Texas (the “**State**”), to fund one or more accounts of the Texas Water Development Fund II (referred to herein as “**Development Fund II**”) established pursuant to the provisions of Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Constitution of the State (the “**State Constitution**”), approved by the voters on November 4, 1997 (“**Section 49-d-8**”); and

WHEREAS, in addition to bonds authorized by other provisions of the State Constitution, Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-11**”) authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds of the State, at its determination and on a continuing basis, for one or more accounts of Development Fund II, in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of the bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6,000,000,000; and

WHEREAS, prior to the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds (as hereinafter defined), the Board presently has the remaining constitutionally authorized but unissued bonding ability to issue \$5,926,010,655 aggregate principal amount of bonds outstanding at any time pursuant to Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, Section 49-d-11 states that (i) Section 49-d-8 applies to the bonds authorized by Section 49-d-11, (ii) the limitation in Section 49-d-8 that the Board may not issue bonds in excess of the aggregate principal amount of previously authorized bonds does not apply to the bonds authorized by and issued under Section 49-d-11, and (iii) a limitation on the percentage of state participation in any single project imposed by Article III of the State Constitution does not apply to a project funded with the proceeds of bonds issued under authority of Section 49-d-8 or Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, the Board finds it advisable and determines that it is a public purpose and in the best interests of the State, in accordance with authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-11, and Subchapter L, Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code (the “**Act**”), to authorize issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects (as each such term is hereinafter defined), subject to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, as hereinafter provided; and

WHEREAS, bonds authorized to be issued pursuant to this Resolution are reasonably expected by the Board to be paid from revenue sources other than the general revenues of the State;

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD:**

ARTICLE I

**DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS**

**Section 1.01 Definitions.** Throughout this Resolution (except in the FORM OF BOND attached as **Exhibit A** to this Resolution), in addition to the terms defined in the preamble to this Resolution the following terms and expressions used herein shall have the meanings specified in this Section.

**“Act”** means Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

**“Amortization Installment”** means the amount of money which is required for retirement of Term Bonds (whether at maturity or by mandatory redemption and including redemption premium, if any).

**“Approval Certificate”** means collectively one or more certificates executed by an Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof which finalize the pricing and terms of the Series 2022A Bonds pursuant to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, including specifying the issuance of one or more subseries.

**“Attorney General”** means the Attorney General of the State.

**“Authentication Certificate”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.07.

**“Authorized Denomination”** means \$5,000 principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and any integral multiple thereof.

**“Authorized Representative”** means each of the Executive Administrator, the Chief Financial Officer, the Development Fund Manager and the General Counsel of the Board, acting individually and not jointly.

**“Board”** means the Texas Water Development Board.

**“Bond”** or **“Bonds”** means a Series 2022A Bond or Series 2022A Bonds, as applicable.

**“Bond Appendix”** means the quarterly appendix prepared by the Comptroller which sets forth certain information regarding the State (including its government, finances, economic profile, and other matters) for use by State entities when issuing debt.

**“Bond Enhancement Agreement”** means any agreement of the nature described in Section 17.954(c), Texas Water Code.

**“Bond Payment Account”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 5.03.

**“Book-Entry-Only System”** means the system maintained by the securities depository described in Section 2.11.

**“Business Day”** means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close.

“**Chapter 9**” means Chapter 9, Texas Business & Commerce Code.

“**Chapter 551**” means Chapter 551, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1206**” means Chapter 1206, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1208**” means Chapter 1208, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1371**” means Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, enacted on or before the Date of Delivery.

“**Common Issue Bonds**” means the Series 2022A Bonds and any other tax-exempt bonds sold within 15 days of the first day on which there is a binding written contract for the sale or exchange of the Series 2022A Bonds, which are part of the same “issue” as the Series 2022A Bonds, as defined in section 1.150-1(c) of the Regulations.

“**Comptroller**” means the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

“**Computation Amount**” means the surplus proceeds (rounded to the next higher \$5,000 denomination) equal to the remainder of (i) thirty percent (30%) of the Net Proceeds less proceeds of Common Issue Bonds directly or indirectly used to make loans to Political Subdivisions as of the last day of the One-Year Computation Period (but not less than zero) or (H) ninety-five percent (95%) of the Net Proceeds less the proceeds of Common Issue Bonds directly or indirectly used to make loans to Political Subdivisions as of the last day of the Three-Year Computation Period (but not less than zero).

“**Continuing Disclosure Agreement**” means the Amended and Restated Continuing Disclosure Agreement dated March 12, 2019, between the Comptroller and the Texas Bond Review Board, as may be further amended from time to time.

“**Date of Delivery**” means the date of delivery of the Series 2022A Bonds to the Underwriters.

“**Dated Date**” means the date designated in the Approval Certificate as such with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds.

“**Defeasance Securities**” means, unless otherwise specified in an Approval Certificate, (i) Federal Securities, (ii) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022A Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, (iii) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022A Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less

than “AAA” or its equivalent, and (iv) any other then authorized securities or obligations that may be used to defease obligations such as the Series 2022A Bonds under the then applicable laws of the State.

“**Designated Payment/Transfer Office**” means the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar designated as the place for payment, transfer and exchange of the Series 2022A Bonds, initially, the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar in Dallas, Texas.

“**Development Fund I**” means the Texas Water Development Fund as described in the Development Fund I Constitution Provisions.

“**Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions**” means Sections 49-c, 49-d, 49-d-1, 49-d-2, 49-d-5, 49-d-6 and 49-d-7 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Development Fund II**” has the meaning specified for that term in the preamble to this Resolution.

“**DTC**” means The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, and its successors and assigns.

“**DTC Participant**” means the securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations on whose behalf DTC was created to hold securities to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among DTC Participants.

“**Economically Distressed Areas Program Account**” means the account described in Section 17.958, Texas Water Code.

“**EDAP Project**” means any project found and determined by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Subchapter K.

“**Eligible Investments**” means those investments in which the Board is authorized by law and its investment policy to invest its funds.

“**Federal Securities**” means direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America.

“**Financial Assistance Account**” means the account described in Section 17.959, Texas Water Code.

“**Financial Assistance Bonds**” means the general obligation bonds of the State issued by the Board under authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, and Section 49-d-11 to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account of Development Fund II, including the Previously Issued Financial Assistance Bonds, the Series 2022A Bonds, and the Series 2022B Bonds.

“**Financial Obligation**” means a (a) debt obligation; (b) derivative instrument entered into in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation; or (c) guarantee of any such debt obligation or any such derivative instrument; provided that “Financial Obligation” shall not include municipal securities as to which a final official statement (as defined in the Rule) has been provided to the MSRB consistent with the Rule. The Board and the Comptroller intend the

words used in this definition to have the same meanings as when they are used in the Rule, as evidenced by SEC Release No. 34-83885, dated August 20, 2018.

**"Fiscal Year"** means the period of time beginning in each calendar year on September 1 and ending on August 31 of the calendar year next following.

**"Form of Bond"** means the Form of Bond attached hereto as **Exhibit A**.

**"GASB"** means the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

**"Holder"** or **"Owner"** means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022A Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

**"Initial Bonds"** means the Series 2022A Bonds authorized, issued, sold and delivered hereunder and upon which the registration certificate, manually executed by or on behalf of the Comptroller, has been placed.

**"Interest Payment Date"** means each February 1 and August 1, beginning on the first such date occurring after the Date of Delivery.

**"Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds"** means:

- (1) the Board's rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from the Financial Assistance Account, together with any evidence of such rights;
- (2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance;
- (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance;
- (4) money and assets attributable to Financial Assistance Bonds, including money and assets transferred to the Financial Assistance Account from Development Fund I pursuant to Subsection (b) of Section 49-d-8; and
- (5) money deposited in the Financial Assistance Account pursuant to Subsection (c) of Section 49-d-8.

**"MSRB"** means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

**"Net Proceeds"** means the amounts received from the sale of Common Issue Bonds less proceeds used to pay costs of issuance, including any underwriters' compensation, proceeds used to pay interest on such Common Issue Bonds during all or any portion of the One-Year Computation Period or the Three-Year Computation Period, as the case may be, and proceeds used to refund prior Bonds. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable, the amount of Net Proceeds shall be adjusted to equal only the amount of Net Proceeds with respect to the portion of the Common Issue Bonds treated as a separate issue pursuant to Section 149(f)(7)(B) of the Code due to only that portion of the Common Issue Bonds being reasonably expected (at the time of issuance of the Common Issue Bonds) to be used (or is intentionally used) to make loans as described in Section 149(f)(6)(A) of the Code.

**“Official Statement”** means the Official Statement pertaining to the Series 2022A Bonds, and authorized by Section 8.02 hereof.

**“One-Year Computation Period”** means the period ending on the last day of the one-year period commencing on the Date of Delivery.

**“Owner”** or **“Holder”** means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022A Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

**“Outstanding”** means, when used to modify the bonds issued, authenticated and delivered under this Resolution, the Series 2022A Bonds excluding (i) Series 2022A Bonds which have been exchanged or replaced or otherwise surrendered for cancellation, (ii) Series 2022A Bonds which have been paid, (iii) Series 2022A Bonds which have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided, and (iv) Series 2022A Bonds with respect to which this Resolution has been discharged pursuant to ARTICLE XIII.

**“Paying Agent/Registrar”** means the financial institution named in Section 2.06 or any successor thereto named in accordance with the provisions of Section 2.10.

**“Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement”** means the paying agent agreement between the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, relating to the performance of the duties and responsibilities of the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds.

**“Person”** means any natural person, firm, partnership, association, corporation, or public body.

**“Political Subdivision”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 17.001(6), Texas Water Code.

**“Previously Issued Financial Assistance Bonds”** means bonds previously issued to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account and any refunding bonds issued in replacement thereof.

**“Purchase Agreement”** means collectively one or more bond purchase agreements between the Board and the Underwriters relating to the sale of the Series 2022A Bonds.

**“Registration Books”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.06.

**“Regulations”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 9.02.

**“Resolution”** means this Resolution authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds and all amendments hereto.

**“Rule”** means SEC Rule 15c2-12, as amended from time to time.

**“Rural Water Assistance Fund”** means the account within the general revenue fund of the State established pursuant to Subchapter R.

**“SEC”** means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

**“Section 49-d-8”** means Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Section 49-d-9**” means Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Section 49-d-11**” means Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Series 2022A Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of this Resolution and the terms and conditions set forth in the Approval Certificate relating thereto, including any subseries.

“**Series 2022B Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

“**Series 2022C Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

“**Series 2022D Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

“**State**” means the State of Texas.

“**State Constitution**” means the Constitution of the State.

“**State Participation Account**” means the account described in Section 17.957, Texas Water Code.

“**State Participation Project**” means any project found by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Section 16.131, Texas Water Code.

“**State Treasury**” means the treasury of the State under the administration and supervision of the Comptroller.

“**Subchapter K**” means Subchapter K, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

“**Subchapter Q**” means Subchapter Q, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

“**Subchapter R**” means Subchapter R, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

“**Term Bonds**” means Series 2022A Bonds so designated by the Board herein or in the Approval Certificate.

“**Three-Year Computation Period**” means the period ending on the last day of the three-year period commencing on the Date of Delivery.

“**Underwriters**” means the investment banking firms that contract to purchase the Series 2022A Bonds pursuant to the Purchase Agreement and in accordance with Section 8.01.

**“Water Assistance Project”** means any project for which the Board is authorized to provide financial assistance, in accordance with the purposes described by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions or Section 49-d-8, other than (i) an EDAP Project or (ii) a State Participation Project. The term “Water Assistance Project” includes, without limitation, transfers to or deposits to the credit of any state revolving fund administered by the Board under the provisions of the Texas Water Code, specifically Chapter 15, Texas Water Code, and transfers to or deposits to the credit of the Rural Water Assistance Fund or the Water Infrastructure Fund.

**“Water Infrastructure Fund”** means the special fund in the State Treasury established pursuant to Subchapter Q and administered by the Board.

**Section 1.02 Rules of Construction.**

(a) Designation of Articles, Sections. For all purposes of this Resolution, unless the context requires otherwise, all references to designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions are to the Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this Resolution. The words “herein,” “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Resolution as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

(b) References. Except where the context otherwise requires, terms defined in this Resolution to impart the singular number shall be considered to include the plural number and vice versa. References to any named Person means that party and its successors and assigns. References to any constitutional, statutory or regulatory provision means such provision as it exists on the date this Resolution is adopted by the Board and any future amendments thereto or successor provisions thereof. Any reference to the payment of principal in this Resolution shall be deemed to include the payment of Amortization Installments. References in this Resolution to the FORM OF BOND refer to the form attached to this Resolution as Exhibit A.

**Section 1.03 Interpretations.** The titles and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Resolution have been inserted for convenience of reference only and are not to be considered a part hereof and shall not in any way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

**ARTICLE II**

**THE SERIES 2022A BONDS**

**Section 2.01 Authorization of Bonds.**

(a) Purpose; Maximum Amount. For the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8 and Section 49-d-11, the negotiable general obligation bonds of the State to be known and designated as **STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE BONDS, SERIES 2022A**, are hereby authorized and may be issued from time to time for the purpose of conserving and developing the water resources of the State, to-wit, by providing funds for the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects, including state matching funds for federal funds provided by any state revolving fund administered by the Board under the provisions of the Texas Water Code, and paying expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds. The combined principal amount of all Series 2022A Bonds issued pursuant to this Resolution shall not exceed \$145,000,000. In addition, the combined principal amount of all Series 2022A

Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022C Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds shall not exceed \$330,000,000.

(b) Delegation of Authority. As authorized by Chapter 1371, each Authorized Representative, individually and not jointly, is hereby authorized, appointed and designated to act on behalf of the Board in selling and delivering, in one or more series or subseries, the Series 2022A Bonds and carrying out the procedures specified in this Resolution, including determining:

(i) the date for issuance and sale, and the Dated Date, of each series or subseries of Series 2022A Bonds;

(ii) the name and any special or additional series designation for each series or subseries of the Series 2022A Bonds;

(iii) the principal amount of each series or subseries of Series 2022A Bonds to be sold (subject to the limitations set forth in Section 2.01(a)), as well as the principal amount of each stated maturity within a series or subseries of Series 2022A Bonds;

(iv) the price at which the Series 2022A Bonds shall be sold;

(v) the principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds to be sold as current interest bonds, if any; the principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds to be sold as premium capital appreciation bonds, if any;

(vi) the principal amortization schedule for the Series 2022A Bonds (including, without limitation, the designation of any of the maturities of the Series 2022A Bonds as Term Bonds and any Amortization Installments to be deposited to the credit of the Bond Payment Account relating to any Term Bond so designated);

(vii) in accordance with the provisions of ARTICLE V hereof, the redemption features of the Series 2022A Bonds (including any associated premium);

(viii) the rate or rates of interest to be borne by the Series 2022A Bonds;

(ix) whether to acquire a Bond Enhancement Agreement in support of all or any portion of the Series 2022A Bonds; and

(x) any other matters relating to the issuance, sale and delivery of the Series 2022A Bonds; all of which shall be specified in one or more Approval Certificates executed in accordance with the terms hereof and within the parameters set forth in Section 2.01(c) below.

(c) Parameters. The Authorized Representative may exercise any authority granted under Chapter 1371 so long as on the date the Purchase Agreement is executed:

(i) the maximum maturity date of any Series 2022A Bonds issued hereunder shall not exceed thirty two (32) years from the issue date of such bonds;

(ii) the true interest cost rate applicable to the Series 2022A Bonds shall not exceed 6.0%; and

(iii) the final series or subseries of Series 2022A Bonds issued hereunder must be sold no later than six months after the date of adoption of this Resolution (though the closing of a particular series of Series 2022A Bonds sold in accordance with this provision may occur after such date as long as such closing period is determined by an Authorized Representative to be of reasonable duration).

**Section 2.02 Denominations, Date and Interest Rates.** The Series 2022A Bonds shall be in any Authorized Denomination, shall be numbered consecutively from R-1 upward, shall be dated the date described in the Approval Certificate, and shall be in substantially the form attached hereto as **Exhibit A** with such changes and modifications as are set forth in the Approval Certificate. Interest on the Series 2022A Bonds shall be payable on the Interest Payment Dates. The Series 2022A Bonds shall bear interest at rates as specified in the Approval Certificate. Interest shall be payable in the manner and on the terms provided in this Resolution and the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed in accordance with the terms of the Approval Certificate to reflect the aggregate principal amount of the Series 2022A Bonds sold to the Underwriters.

**Section 2.03 Maturities and Amounts.** The Series 2022A Bonds shall mature on the dates and in the amounts as set forth in the principal amortization schedule contained in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 2.04 Execution of Bonds.** Each Series 2022A Bond shall be executed for and on behalf of the State as a general obligation of the State by having placed thereon the lithographed or printed facsimile or the manual signatures of the Chair of the Board and the Executive Administrator, and the manually impressed or lithographed or printed facsimile seal of the Board. Lithographed or printed facsimile signatures and seal shall have the same effect as if each Series 2022A Bond had been manually signed by such officers, and the seal had been manually impressed on each Series 2022A Bond.

In case any officer whose signature is on a Series 2022A Bond no longer holds such office at the time of authentication, or was the proper officer on the date of execution but not on the nominal date of action, the Series 2022A Bond shall nevertheless be valid.

**Section 2.05 Temporary Bonds.** Pending the preparation of definitive Series 2022A Bonds, the Board may execute and, upon the Board's request, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver, one or more temporary Series 2022A Bonds substantially of the tenor of the definitive Series 2022A Bonds in lieu of which they are delivered, with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations, as evidenced by the execution of such temporary Series 2022A Bonds, as such officers executing such temporary Series 2022A Bonds may determine.

Until exchanged for Series 2022A Bonds in definitive form, such Series 2022A Bonds in temporary form shall be entitled to the benefit and security of this Resolution. The Board, without unreasonable delay, shall prepare, execute and deliver to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and upon the presentation and surrender of the temporary Series 2022A Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor, definitive Series 2022A Bonds of the same maturity, aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and bearing or accruing interest at the

same rate as the temporary Series 2022A Bonds surrendered. The exchange shall be made without any charge to any owner of Series 2022A Bonds.

**Section 2.06 Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar.**

(a) Appointment. The Board hereby appoints The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as the initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds. The Board shall keep or cause to be kept at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar books or records of the registration and transfer of the Series 2022A Bonds (the “**Registration Books**”), and the Board hereby appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar as its registrar and transfer agent to keep such books or records and make such transfers and registrations under such reasonable regulations as the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe; and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall make such transfers and registrations as herein provided. It shall be the duty of the Paying Agent/Registrar to obtain from the registered owner and record in the Registration Books the address of such registered owner of each Series 2022A Bond to which payments with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds shall be mailed, as herein provided. The Board or its designee shall have the right to inspect the Registration Books during regular business hours of the Paying Agent/Registrar, but otherwise the Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep the Registration Books confidential and, unless otherwise required by law, shall not permit their inspection by any other entity. The Board hereby further appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar to act as the paying agent for paying the principal of and interest on the Series 2022A Bonds, and to act as its agent to convert and exchange or replace Series 2022A Bonds, all as provided in this Resolution. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep proper records of all payments made by the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds, and of all conversions and exchanges of such Series 2022A Bonds, and all replacements of such Series 2022A Bonds, as provided in this Resolution.

(b) Duties. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform such duties as are required of the Paying Agent/Registrar hereunder and under the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement. The Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is hereby authorized to execute and deliver for and on behalf of the Board the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement, which shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with Financial Assistance Bonds previously issued by the Board, with such changes as the Executive Administrator may approve, such approval to be conclusively evidenced by the execution and delivery of such agreement by the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof.

**Section 2.07 Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds.**

(a) Transfer. Registration of each Series 2022A Bond may be transferred on the Registration Books only upon presentation and surrender of such Series 2022A Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for transfer of registration and cancellation, together with proper written instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing the assignment of the Series 2022A Bond, or any portion thereof in any Authorized Denomination, to the assignee or assignees thereof, and the right of such assignee or assignees to have the Series 2022A Bond or any such portion thereof registered in the name of such assignee or assignees. Upon the assignment and transfer of any Series 2022A Bond or any portion thereof, a new substitute Series 2022A Bond or Series 2022A Bonds shall be issued in conversion and exchange therefor in the manner provided in this Section.

(b) Duty of Conversion, Exchange or Replacement. Pursuant to Chapter 1206, and particularly Subchapter B thereof, the duty of conversion and exchange or replacement of Series 2022A Bonds in the manner prescribed herein is hereby imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar. Each Series 2022A Bond may be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022A Bonds in the manner set forth herein. Each Series 2022A Bond issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, to the extent of the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount thereof, as the case may be, upon surrender of such Series 2022A Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with a written request therefor duly executed by the registered owner or the assignee or assignees thereof, or its or their duly authorized attorneys or representatives, with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, at the option of the registered owner or such assignee or assignees, as appropriate, shall be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022A Bonds in the form prescribed in the FORM OF BOND of like series or subseries, in any Authorized Denomination (subject to the requirement hereinafter stated that each substitute Series 2022A Bond shall have a single stated maturity date), as requested in writing by such registered owner or such assignee or assignees, in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount of any Series 2022A Bond or Series 2022A Bonds, as the case may be, so surrendered, and payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be. If a portion of any Series 2022A Bond shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity as provided herein, a substitute Series 2022A Bond or Series 2022A Bonds having the same maturity date, of like series or subseries and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon surrender thereof for cancellation. The Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall cancel all Series 2022A Bonds surrendered for conversion and exchange or replacement. If any Series 2022A Bond or portion thereof is assigned and transferred or converted, each Series 2022A Bond issued in exchange therefor shall have the same principal maturity date, be of like series or subseries and bear or accrue interest at the same rate, as the Series 2022A Bond for which it is being exchanged.

(c) No Additional Actions Necessary. No additional ordinances, orders, or resolutions need be passed or adopted by the Board or any other Person so as to accomplish the foregoing conversion and exchange or replacement of any Series 2022A Bond or portion thereof, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall provide for the printing, execution and delivery of the substitute Series 2022A Bonds in the manner prescribed herein. All Series 2022A Bonds issued in conversion and exchange or replacement of any other Series 2022A Bond or portion thereof (i) shall be issued in fully registered form with the principal of and interest on such Series 2022A Bonds to be payable only to the registered owners thereof, (ii) may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, (iii) may be transferred and assigned, (iv) may be converted and exchanged for other Series 2022A Bonds, shall have the characteristics, (vi) shall be signed and sealed, and (vii) the principal of and interest thereon shall be payable, all if and as provided with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds, and in the manner required or indicated, in ARTICLE II of this Resolution. Each substitute Series 2022A Bond shall bear a letter and/or number to distinguish it from each other Series 2022A Bond. Each fully registered Series 2022A Bond delivered in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022A Bond or portion thereof as permitted or required by any provision of this Resolution shall constitute one of the Series 2022A Bonds for all purposes of this Resolution, and may again be converted and exchanged or replaced.

(d) Authentication Certificate. On each substitute Series 2022A Bond issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022A Bond or Series 2022A Bonds issued under this

Resolution there shall be printed thereon a Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate (the "**Authentication Certificate**"), in the form set forth in the FORM OF BOND. An authorized representative of the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, before the delivery of any such Series 2022A Bond, date and manually sign the Authentication Certificate, and no such Series 2022A Bond shall be deemed to be issued or outstanding unless the Authentication Certificate is so executed. Upon the execution of the Authentication Certificate, the converted and exchanged or replaced Series 2022A Bond shall be valid, incontestable, and enforceable in the same manner and with the same effect as the Initial Bonds which originally were delivered pursuant to this Resolution, approved by the Attorney General, and registered by the Comptroller.

(e) Restrictions on Transfer or Exchange. Neither the Board, the State nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (i) to issue, transfer, or exchange any Series 2022A Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Series 2022A Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (ii) to transfer or exchange any Series 2022A Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; except that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any such Series 2022A Bond which has been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon surrender thereof. In which event, the Paying Agent/Registrar may make such arrangements as it deems appropriate for notation on each new Series 2022A Bond issued in exchange for or upon transfer of the Series 2022A Bond so selected for redemption of an appropriate legend to the effect that such new Series 2022A Bond has been so selected for redemption.

(f) Payment of Fees. The registered owner of any Series 2022A Bond requesting any conversion and exchange shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges for converting and exchanging any such Series 2022A Bond or portion thereof, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, all as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange; except that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Series 2022A Bond or any portion or portions thereof in any Authorized Denomination, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of the unredeemed portion of a Series 2022A Bond which has been redeemed in part prior to maturity, as provided in this Resolution, such fees and charges will be paid by the Board. In addition, the Board hereby covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022A Bonds that it will pay the (i) reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for its services with respect to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Series 2022A Bonds, when due, and (ii) fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for services with respect to the transfer or registration of Series 2022A Bonds, and with respect to the conversion and exchange of Series 2022A Bonds solely to the extent above provided.

**Section 2.08 Owners of Bonds.** The Person in whose name any Series 2022A Bond shall be registered in the Registration Books at any time shall be treated as the absolute owner thereof for all purposes of this Resolution, whether such Series 2022A Bond shall be overdue, and the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary unless otherwise required by law; and payment of, or on account of, the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on any such Series 2022A Bond shall be made only to such registered owner. All such payments shall be valid and effectual to satisfy and discharge the liability upon such Series 2022A Bond to the extent of the sum or sums so paid.

**Section 2.09 Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.**

(a) Replacement. In the event any outstanding Series 2022A Bond is damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall cause to be printed, executed, and delivered, a new Series 2022A Bond of the same principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, maturity date, and interest rate, as the damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022A Bond, in replacement for such Series 2022A Bond in the manner hereinafter provided.

(b) Application for Replacement. Application for replacement of damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022A Bonds shall be made to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022A Bond, the applicant for a replacement Series 2022A Bond shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless from any loss or damage with respect thereto. Also, in every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022A Bond, the applicant shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence to their satisfaction of the loss, theft or destruction of such Series 2022A Bond, as the case may be. In every case of damage or mutilation of a Series 2022A Bond, the applicant shall surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation the Series 2022A Bond so damaged or mutilated.

(c) Payment in Lieu of Replacement. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, in the event any such Series 2022A Bond shall have matured, and no default has occurred which is then continuing in the payment of the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022A Bond, the Board may authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a damaged or mutilated Series 2022A Bond) instead of issuing a replacement Series 2022A Bond, provided security or indemnity is furnished as above provided in this Section.

(d) Payment of Costs. Prior to the issuance of any replacement Series 2022A Bond, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall charge the owner of such Series 2022A Bond with all legal, printing, and other expenses in connection therewith. Every replacement Series 2022A Bond issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section by virtue of the fact that any Series 2022A Bond is lost, stolen or destroyed shall constitute a contractual obligation of the Board whether the lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022A Bond shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Resolution equally and proportionately with any and all other Series 2022A Bonds duly issued under this Resolution.

(e) Legal Authority. In accordance with Chapter 1206, this Section shall constitute authority for the issuance of any such replacement Series 2022A Bond without necessity of further action by the Board of any other Person, and the duty of the replacement of such Series 2022A Bonds is hereby authorized and imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver such Series 2022A Bonds in the form and manner and with the effect, as provided in Section 2.07 for Series 2022A Bonds issued in conversion and exchange for other Series 2022A Bonds.

**Section 2.10 Successor Paying Agent/Registrars.** The Board covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022A Bonds that at all times while the Series 2022A Bonds are outstanding the Board will provide a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company to act as and perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds under this Resolution, and that the Paying Agent/Registrar will be one entity. The Board reserves the right to, and may, at its option, change the Paying Agent/Registrar upon not less than sixty (60) days' written notice to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In the event that the entity at any time acting as Paying Agent/Registrar (or its successor by merger,

acquisition, or other method) should resign or otherwise cease to act as such, the Board covenants that promptly it will appoint a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company which shall be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any state, authorized under such laws to exercise trust powers, subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority, to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Resolution. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the previous Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall transfer and deliver the Registration Books (or a copy thereof), along with all other pertinent books and records relating to the Series 2022A Bonds, to the new Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Board. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board promptly will cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar to each registered owner of the Series 2022A Bonds, by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice also shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar and the Designated Payment/Transfer Office. By accepting the position and performing as such, each Paying Agent/Registrar shall be deemed to have agreed to the provisions of this Resolution, and a certified copy of this Resolution shall be delivered to each Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 2.11 Book-Entry Only System.** The Initial Bonds shall be delivered to the Underwriters against payment received therefrom on the Date of Delivery. The senior managing underwriter named in Section 11.01 hereof, acting as the representative for the Underwriters, shall be required to promptly surrender the Initial Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar for exchange. Series 2022A Bonds issued in exchange therefor shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, as registered owner of the Series 2022A Bonds, and held in the custody of DTC. Unless otherwise requested by DTC, a single certificate will be issued and delivered to DTC for each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds. Beneficial owners of Series 2022A Bonds will not receive physical delivery of Series 2022A Bond certificates except as provided hereinafter. For so long as DTC shall continue to serve as securities depository for the Series 2022A Bonds as provided herein, all transfers of beneficial ownership interests will be made by book-entry only, and no investor or other party purchasing, selling or otherwise transferring beneficial ownership of Series 2022A Bonds is to receive, hold or deliver any Series 2022A Bond certificate.

With respect to Series 2022A Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation to any DTC Participant or to any Person on whose behalf a DTC Participant holds an interest in the Series 2022A Bonds. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co. or any DTC Participant with respect to any ownership interest in the Series 2022A Bonds, (ii) the delivery to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022A Bonds, as shown on the Registration Books, of any notice with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds, including any notice of redemption, and (iii) the payment to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022A Bonds, as shown in the Registration Books, of any amount with respect to principal of or premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022A Bonds.

Replacement Series 2022A Bonds may be issued directly to beneficial owners of Series 2022A Bonds other than DTC, or its nominee, but only in the event that: (i) DTC determines not to continue to act as securities depository for the Series 2022A Bonds (which determination shall become effective no less than ninety (90) days after written notice to such effect to the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar); (ii) the Board has advised DTC of its determination (which determination is conclusive as to DTC and beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds) that DTC is incapable of discharging its duties as securities depository for the Series 2022A Bonds; or (iii) the Board has determined (which determination is conclusive as to DTC

and the beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds) that the interests of the beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds might be adversely affected if such book-entry only system of transfer is continued. Upon occurrence of any of the foregoing events, the Board shall use its best efforts to attempt to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC. If the Board fails to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC, the Board shall cause to be authenticated and delivered replacement Series 2022A Bonds, in certificate form, to the beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds. In the event that the Board makes the determination noted in (ii) or (iii) above (provided that the Board undertakes no obligation to make any investigation to determine the occurrence of any events that would permit the Board to make any such determination), and has made provisions to notify the beneficial owners of Series 2022A Bonds of such determination by mailing an appropriate notice to DTC, it shall cause to be issued replacement Series 2022A Bonds in certificate form to beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds as shown on the records of DTC provided to the Board.

Whenever, during the term of the Series 2022A Bonds, the beneficial ownership thereof is determined by a book entry at DTC, the requirements in this Resolution of holding, delivering or transferring Series 2022A Bonds shall be deemed modified to require the appropriate Person or entity to meet the requirements of DTC as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

If at any time, DTC ceases to hold the Series 2022A Bonds as securities depository, all references herein to DTC shall be of no further force or effect.

**Section 2.12 All Bonds On Parity.** No Financial Assistance Bond shall be entitled to priority of payment over any other Financial Assistance Bond in the application of any moneys made available by law for the payment thereof, irrespective of the fact that some of the Financial Assistance Bonds may have been or may be delivered prior to the delivery of other Financial Assistance Bonds, it being the intent of this Resolution that all Financial Assistance Bonds shall rank equally on parity with each other.

### ARTICLE III

#### **REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY**

**Section 3.01 Limitation on Redemption.** Unless otherwise provided in the Approval Certificate, the Series 2022A Bonds shall be subject to redemption before scheduled maturity only as provided in this Article. Any provision of this Article, including, without limitation, any provisions relating to the method or selection of Series 2022A Bonds for redemption may be modified in an Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.02 Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.** The Series 2022A Bonds shall be subject to optional redemption and mandatory redemption by the Board on behalf of the State prior to maturity in the manner and at the redemption price as described in the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed upon the execution of the Approval Certificate to reflect the redemption provisions, if any, applicable to Bonds as provided for in the Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.03 Partial Redemption.**

(a) The Series 2022A Bonds redeemed in part shall be selected for redemption as described in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) A portion of a single Bond of a denomination greater than an Authorized Denomination may be redeemed but only in a principal amount equal to a minimum Authorized Denomination or any integral multiple thereof. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall treat each minimum Authorized Denomination of such Bond as though it were a single Bond for purposes of selection for redemption.

(c) Upon surrender of any Bond for redemption in part, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver an exchange Bond in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Bond so surrendered.

**Section 3.04 Notice of Redemption.**

(a) The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of the Series 2022A Bonds or any portion thereof. Notice of any redemption of the Series 2022A Bonds shall be given to the registered owners thereof by the Paying Agent/Registrar in the manner provided in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) In addition to the manner of providing notice of redemption of the Series 2022A Bonds as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice of redemption of the Series 2022A Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at least thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date to each registered securities depository and to the MSRB. In addition, in the event of a redemption caused by an advance refunding of the Series 2022A Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall send a second notice of redemption to the Persons specified in the immediately preceding sentence at least thirty (30) days but not more than ninety (90) days prior to the actual redemption date. Any notice sent to the registered securities depositories or the MSRB shall be sent so that they are received at least two (2) days prior to the general mailing, publication or electronic posting date of such notice. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall also send a notice of redemption to the registered owner of any Series 2022A Bonds who has not sent the Series 2022A Bonds in for redemption sixty (60) days after the redemption date. The failure to send, mail or receive any such notice described in this clause (b), or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Series 2022A Bond.

(c) The Board reserves the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022A Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of monies and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying/Agent Registrar instructing the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such monies and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Series 2022A Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

(d) Each redemption notice, whether required in the FORM OF BOND or otherwise by this Resolution, shall contain a description of the Series 2022A Bonds to be redeemed, including the complete name of the Series 2022A Bonds, the series, the date of issue, the interest rate, the maturity date, the CUSIP number, if any, the amounts called of each Series 2022A Bond, the publication and mailing date for

the notice, the date of redemption, the redemption price, the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar and the address at which the Series 2022A Bond may be redeemed including a contact person and telephone number.

(e) All redemption payments made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners of the Series 2022A Bonds shall include a CUSIP number relating to each amount paid to such registered owner.

(f) Should notice to call Series 2022A Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022A Bonds so called for redemption, no Series 2022A Bond shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Series 2022A Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022A Bonds as provided herein or in the Series 2022A Bonds.

**Section 3.05 Payment Upon Redemption.**

(a) By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

(b) Upon presentation and surrender of any Bond called for redemption at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar on or after the date fixed for redemption, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall pay the principal of and accrued interest on such Bond to the date of redemption from the money provided for that purpose.

**Section 3.06 Effect of Redemption.**

(a) Notice of redemption having been given, and due provision having been made for payment, Series 2022A Bonds or portions thereof called for redemption shall become due and payable on the date fixed for redemption; thereafter, such Series 2022A Bonds or portions thereof shall cease to bear interest from the date fixed for redemption, whether or not such Series 2022A are presented and surrendered for payment on such date.

(b) If the Board shall fail to make provision for the payment of all sums due on a redemption date, then any Series 2022A Bond or portion thereof called for redemption shall continue to bear interest until due provision is made for the payment of same by the Board.

**ARTICLE IV**

**FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES**

**Section 4.01 Form of Bond and Certificates.** The form of all Series 2022A Bonds, including the form of the Authentication Certificate and the form of Assignment to be printed on each of the Series 2022A Bonds, and the form of registration certificate of the Comptroller that shall accompany the Initial Bonds, shall be substantially in the form as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, with such appropriate variations, omissions or insertions as are permitted or required by this Resolution or the applicable Approval Certificate. The Series 2022A Bonds may have such letters, numbers or other identifying marks of

identification (including identifying numbers and letters of the Committee on Uniform Securities Identification Procedures of the American Bankers Association) and such legends and endorsements thereon as may, consistent herewith, be approved by the Chair of the Board or the Authorized Representative.

**Section 4.02 Opinion of Bond Counsel.** A copy of the approving opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, bond counsel to the Board in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds, in the form in which it is to be delivered upon payment for the Series 2022A Bonds, either will be printed on the reverse side of or otherwise attached to the Series 2022A Bonds or will be delivered to DTC if the Series 2022A Bonds are held in book-entry only form; and the use of the lithographed or printed facsimile signature of the Executive Administrator to certify to the correctness of such copy is hereby authorized.

**Section 4.03 Printing of Statement of Insurance.** The Board hereby authorizes the printer of the Series 2022A Bonds to print thereon any statement of insurance with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds furnished by any municipal bond insurance company insuring the Series 2022A Bonds.

## ARTICLE V

### **SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS; ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS**

**Section 5.01 General Obligations.** The Financial Assistance Bonds, including the Previously Issued Financial Assistance Bonds, the Series 2022A Bonds, and the Series 2022B Bonds, constitute general obligations of the State pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on each of the Financial Assistance Bonds when due, the full faith and credit of the State and, in the manner herein provided, the resources of the Board are hereby pledged.

**Section 5.02 Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.** It is found, determined and confirmed that Development Fund II has been established in the State Treasury. Pursuant to the Act, Development Fund II shall contain the State Participation Account, the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account and the Financial Assistance Account. In addition, Development Fund II may contain such additional accounts as the Board determines are necessary and convenient for the administration of Development Fund II.

### **Section 5.03 Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds.**

(a) **Section 49-d-8 and Legislative Powers.** All Bond proceeds (other than any proceeds to be used to refund outstanding bonds or other obligations) shall be deposited in the State Treasury to the credit of the Financial Assistance Account. Section 49-d-8 provides that accounts within Development Fund II shall consist of certain identified items, and Subsection (g) of Section 49-d-8 further states that:

“[Section 49-d-8] being intended only to establish a basic framework and not to be a comprehensive treatment of the Texas Water Development Fund II, there is hereby reposed in the legislature full power to implement and effectuate the design and objects of [Section 49-d-8], including the power to delegate such duties, responsibilities, functions, and authority to the Texas Water Development Board as it believes necessary.”

(b) Financial Assistance Account. Consistent with the Act and Section 49-d-8, the “Texas Water Development Fund II Water Financial Assistance Account” (the “**Financial Assistance Account**”) shall receive such moneys as described below, and the moneys therein shall be used as described below:

- (i) Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds designated by the Board as issued for Water Assistance Projects;
- (ii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to Financial Assistance Bonds designated by the Board as issued for Water Assistance Projects;
- (iii) investment income earned on money on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account; and
- (iv) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the credit of the Financial Assistance Account.

Except for those moneys that the Board determines are unavailable for such purpose, moneys on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account shall be used to pay principal and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds. The Board may use moneys on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects in any manner that the Board determines necessary for the administration of the Financial Assistance Account, consistent with the provisions of Section 49-d-8 and the laws of the State, including specifically the Act, and this Resolution. Moneys on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account may also be used for payment of the expenses of the Board incurred in connection with the issuance of the Financial Assistance Bonds and the administration of Development Fund II.

(c) Bond Payment Account. The Board has established in the State Treasury the “Texas Water Development Fund II Water Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account” (the “**Bond Payment Account**”), as a special account into which shall be deposited in the manner, within the time limits, and from sources as prescribed in Sections 5.04 and 5.05, amounts sufficient to pay when due the principal of and premium, if any, and interest payable on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds.

**Section 5.04 Flow of Funds For Debt Service**

(a) Transfers for Payments of Bonds. While and so long as any Financial Assistance Bond is outstanding, on or before the date interest or interest and principal on the Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board shall cause to be transferred, from the moneys available for such purpose in the Financial Assistance Account, to the Bond Payment Account an amount which shall be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for moneys currently on deposit in the Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

(b) Notice to Comptroller of Insufficient Funds. If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within fifteen (15) days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available

in the Financial Assistance Account for transfer to the Bond Payment Account, as described in subsection (a) of this Section, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, it is hereby made the duty of the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof to request the Comptroller to deposit in the Bond Payment Account out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, not later than three (3) days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money shall have been received in the State Treasury, an amount sufficient so that the total amount in the Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

(c) Use of Remaining Moneys. After making the transfers for the benefit of the Bond Payment Account as provided above in this Section, other available moneys remaining in the Financial Assistance Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for all of the purposes for which the Board may expend moneys in the Financial Assistance Account under Section 49-d-8.

(d) Bond Enhancement Agreement. Payments to be made by the Board under the terms of a Bond Enhancement Agreement shall be governed by the resolution adopted by the Board authorizing the execution and delivery of such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

(e) Transfers Upon Board Resolution. Anything contained in this Section to the contrary notwithstanding, money in the Financial Assistance Account representing proceeds from a series of Financial Assistance Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the Financial Assistance Account, or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance shall not be available for transfer to the Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the Bond Payment Account. Proceeds from the Series 2022A Bonds shall be deposited to the Bond Payment Account to the extent specified in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 5.05 Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment.** The Board recognizes the absolute and ultimate obligation of the State to provide during each Fiscal Year all money necessary for the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest become due, out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, in such Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, as set forth in Subsection (e) of Section 49-d-8, as follows:

“... If there is not enough money in any account available to pay the principal of and interest on the general obligation bonds issued for such account, including money to make payments by the Texas Water Development Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to principal of or interest on such bonds, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the state treasury in each fiscal year not otherwise appropriated by this constitution an amount that is sufficient to pay the principal

of and interest on such general obligation bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year or to make bond enhancement payments with respect to those bonds.”

**Section 5.06 Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller.** The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to make the deposits and transfers required under all provisions of the resolutions authorizing the Financial Assistance Bonds, including this Resolution. The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to do all things necessary or convenient to make current funds available at the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds) to pay principal of and interest on all Financial Assistance Bonds as they mature and come due and to provide such current funds as are required for the redemption thereof prior to maturity, or to make any payments under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, all in accordance with their respective authorizing resolutions. It is made the duty of the Comptroller to make such deposits and transfers as are required in instances wherein the Board exercises its option to call Financial Assistance Bonds for payment prior to maturity. Remittances to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds) of money for payment of principal and interest or for redemption of Financial Assistance Bonds must be made in accordance with the provisions hereof.

**Section 5.07 Payment of Bonds.** The Board hereby covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds) for the payment of interest on and principal of the Financial Assistance Bonds, and any premium thereon, becoming due on each interest or principal payment date. The Board further covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the payments, if any, to be made under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to the principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds. In addition, the Board covenants that such moneys shall be forwarded to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement, no later than each such interest or principal payment date.

**Section 5.08 Cooperation with State Officers.** It is the duty of the Board, its officers, employees and agents (who are hereby so authorized and directed) to cooperate with and aid the Comptroller in calculating the amounts to be deposited in, or transferred to, the appropriate accounts and in ascertaining the amounts to be remitted to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

**Section 5.09 Investment of Funds.** All money in Development Fund II and the accounts created therein that is not immediately committed to the purposes thereof or the payment of the Financial Assistance Bonds issued for any such account may be invested by the Board in Eligible Investments, and the Board may sell any Eligible Investment at the governing market rate.

ARTICLE VI

**COVENANTS AND REMEDIES**

**Section 6.01 Special Covenant.** The Board covenants that it will faithfully and promptly deposit into the Financial Assistance Account all money received from the sale of obligations acquired from Political Subdivisions with moneys from the Financial Assistance Account.

**Section 6.02 Covenants to Maintain Tax-Exempt Status.**

(a) Definitions. When used in this Section, the following terms have the following meanings:

“**Closing Date**” means the date on which the Common Issue Bonds are first authenticated and delivered to the initial purchasers against payment therefor.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, effective on or before the Closing Date.

“**Computation Date**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Gross Proceeds**” means any proceeds as defined in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations, and any replacement proceeds as defined in Section 1.148-1(c) of the Regulations, of the Common Issue Bonds.

“**Investment**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Nonpurpose Investment**” means any investment property, as defined in section 148(b) of the Code, in which Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds are invested and which is not acquired to carry out the governmental purposes of the Common Issue Bonds.

“**Rebate Amount**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Regulations**” means any proposed, temporary, or final Income Tax Regulations issued pursuant to Sections 103 and 141 through 150 of the Code, and 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, which are applicable to the Common Issue Bonds. Any reference to any specific Regulation shall also mean, as appropriate, any proposed, temporary or final Income Tax Regulation designed to supplement, amend or replace the specific Regulation referenced.

“**Yield**” of

(i) any Investment has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-5 of the Regulations; and

(ii) the Common Issue Bonds has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-4 of the Regulations.

(b) Not to Cause Interest to Become Taxable. The Board shall not use, permit the use of, or omit to use Gross Proceeds or any other amounts (or any property the acquisition, construction or

improvement of which is to be financed directly or indirectly with Gross Proceeds) in a manner which if made or omitted, respectively, would cause the interest on any Common Issue Bond to become includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owner thereof for federal income tax purposes. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, unless and until the Board receives a written opinion of counsel nationally recognized in the field of municipal bond law to the effect that failure to comply with such covenant will not adversely affect the exemption from federal income tax of the interest on any Common Issue Bond, the Board shall comply with each of the specific covenants in this Section.

(c) No Private Use or Private Payments. Except as permitted by section 141 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall at all times prior to the last stated maturity of the Common Issue Bonds:

(1) take any action necessary to assure that state or local governments exclusively own, operate and possess all property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed or refinanced directly or indirectly with Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds, and not use or permit the use of such Gross Proceeds (including all contractual arrangements with terms different than those applicable to the general public) or any property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds in any activity carried on by any person or entity (including the United States or any agency, department and instrumentality thereof) other than a state or local government, unless such use is solely as a member of the general public; and

(2) take any action necessary to assure that state or local governments do not directly or indirectly impose or accept any charge or other payment by any person or entity who is treated as using Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds or any property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed or refinanced directly or indirectly with such Gross Proceeds, unless either (i) such use is merely as a member of the general public on the same terms as all other members of the general public, except possibly any rate differences corresponding to amount of use or (ii) such charge or payment consists of taxes of general application within the state or local governments or interest earned on investments acquired with such Gross Proceeds pending application for their intended purposes.

(d) No Private Loan. Except to the extent permitted by section 141 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not use Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds and shall take any action necessary to assure that Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds are not used to make or finance loans to any person or entity other than a state or local government. For purposes of the foregoing covenant, such Gross Proceeds are considered to be "loaned" to a person or entity if: (1) property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds is sold or leased to such person or entity in a transaction which creates a debt for federal income tax purposes; (2) capacity in or service from such property is committed to such person or entity under a take-or-pay, output or similar contract or arrangement; or (3) indirect benefits, or burdens and benefits of ownership, of such Gross Proceeds or any property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds are otherwise transferred in a transaction which is the economic equivalent of a loan.

(e) Allocation of, and Limitation on, Expenditures for Loans to Political Subdivisions. The Board shall account for the expenditure of the proceeds from the sale of the Common Issue Bonds and any

investment earnings thereon to be used for the purposes described in Section 2.01 on its books and records in accordance with the requirements of the Code. The Board agrees to obtain the advice of nationally-recognized bond counsel if such expenditure fails to comply with the foregoing to assure that such expenditure will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Common Issue Bonds.

(f) Disposition of Loans to Political Subdivisions. Loans to Political Subdivisions will not be sold or otherwise disposed in a transaction resulting in the receipt by the Board of cash or other compensation, unless the Board obtains an opinion of nationally- recognized bond counsel that such sale or other disposition will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Common Issue Bonds, the proceeds of which were used to make or refinance the making of such loans. The Board shall assure that Political Subdivisions, or any related persons thereto, will be prohibited from purchasing the Common Issue Bonds or a portion thereof in an amount related to the amount of the loan to be acquired by the Board from any such Political Subdivision.

(g) Not to Invest at Higher Yield. Except to the extent permitted by section 148 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not at any time prior to the final stated maturity of the Common Issue Bonds directly or indirectly invest Gross Proceeds in any Investment, if as a result of such investment the Yield of any Investment acquired with Gross Proceeds, whether then held or previously disposed of, exceeds the Yield of the Common Issue Bonds.

(h) Not Federally Guaranteed. Except to the extent permitted by section 149(b) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not take or omit to take any action which would cause the Common Issue Bonds to be federally guaranteed within the meaning of section 149(b) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder.

(i) Information Report. The Board shall timely file the information required by section 149(e) of the Code with the Secretary of the Treasury on Form 8038-G or such other form and in such place as the Secretary may prescribe.

(j) Rebate of Arbitrage Profits. Except to the extent otherwise provided in section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder:

(1) The Board shall account for all Gross Proceeds (including all receipts, expenditures and investments thereof) on its books of account separately and apart from all other funds (and receipts, expenditures and investments thereof) and shall retain all records of accounting for at least six years after the day on which the last outstanding Common Issue Bond is discharged. However, to the extent permitted by law, the Board may commingle Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds with other money of the Board, provided that the Board separately accounts for each receipt and expenditure of Gross Proceeds and the obligations acquired therewith.

(2) Not less frequently than each Computation Date, the Board shall calculate the Rebate Amount in accordance with rules set forth in section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder. The Board shall maintain such calculations with its official transcript of proceedings relating to the issuance of the Common Issue Bonds until six years after the final Computation Date.

(3) As additional consideration for the purchase of the Common Issue Bonds by the purchasers thereof and the loan of the money represented thereby and in order to induce such purchase by measures designed to insure the excludability of the interest thereon from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, the Board shall pay to the United States the amount that when added to the future value of previous rebate payments made for the Common Issue Bonds equals (i) in the case of a Final Computation Date as defined in Section 1.148-3(e)(2) of the Regulations, one hundred percent (100%) of the Rebate Amount on such date; and (ii) in the case of any other Computation Date, ninety percent (90%) of the Rebate Amount on such date. In all cases, the rebate payments shall be made at the times, in the installments, to the place and in the manner as is or may be required by section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, and shall be accompanied by Form 8038-T or such other forms and information as is or may be required by Section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder. In order to facilitate compliance with this covenant, a "Rebate Fund" is hereby established by the Board for the sole benefit of the United States of America, and such fund shall not be subject to the claim of any other Person, including, without limitation, any bondholder. The Rebate Fund is established for the additional purpose of compliance with section 148 of the Code.

(4) The Board shall exercise reasonable diligence to assure that no errors are made in the calculations and payments required by paragraphs (2) and (3), and if an error is made, to discover and promptly correct such error within a reasonable amount of time thereafter (and in all events within one hundred eighty (180) days after discovery of the error), including payment to the United States of any additional Rebate Amount owed to it, interest thereon, and any penalty imposed under Section 1.148-3(h) of the Regulations.

(k) Not to Divert Arbitrage Profits. Except to the extent permitted by section 148 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not, at any time prior to the earlier of the stated maturity or final payment of the Common Issue Bonds, enter into any transaction that reduces the amount required to be paid to the United States pursuant to Subsection (j) of this Section because such transaction results in a smaller profit or a larger loss than would have resulted if the transaction had been at arm's length and had the Yield of the Common Issue Bonds not been relevant to either party.

(l) Elections. The Board hereby directs and authorizes the Executive Administrator and the Chief Financial Officer of the Board, either or any combination of them, to make elections permitted or required pursuant to the provisions of the Code or the Regulations, as they deem necessary or appropriate in connection with the Common Issue Bonds, in the Certificate as to Tax Exemption or similar or other appropriate certificate, form or document.

(m) Common Issue Bonds Not Hedge Bonds.

(1) At the time the original bonds refunded by the Common Issue Bonds were issued, the Board reasonably expected that at least 85% of the spendable proceeds of such bonds would be spent within three years after such bonds were issued.

(2) Not more than 50% of the proceeds of the original bonds refunded by the Common Issue Bonds were invested in Nonpurpose Investments having a substantially guaranteed Yield for a period of 4 years or more.

**Section 6.03 Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.** The Board covenants that it will maintain within the funds and accounts described in Section 5.03 such accounts and subaccounts as the Board, in cooperation with the Comptroller, determines necessary for the convenient and efficient administration of such funds and accounts so as not to commingle moneys derived from the issuance of or dedicated to the payment of bonds or other obligations issued by the Board, the interest on which is exempt from federal income taxation under the applicable provisions of the Code.

**Section 6.04 Remedies of Bondholders.** All rights available to the owners of the Financial Assistance Bonds under the Constitution and the laws of the State, including, without limitation, Section 17.970, Texas Water Code, to compel the performance of their official duties by the Board, its officers and employees, and by other officers of the State to the end that the principal of and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds may be paid promptly, are hereby recognized.

**Section 6.05 Bond Enhancement Agreements.** Pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 17.954, Texas Water Code, the Board reserves the right at any time and from time to time to enter into one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements that the Board hereafter determines to be necessary or appropriate to place the obligation of the Board, as represented by the Series 2022A Bonds, in whole or in part, on the interest rate, currency, cash flow, or other basis desired by the Board.

## ARTICLE VII

### SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

#### **Section 7.01 Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.**

(a) Amendments Requiring Consent. The registered owners of Series 2022A Bonds aggregating in principal amount 51% of the aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of the Series 2022A Bonds at the time outstanding (but not including in any case Series 2022A Bonds which may then be held or owned by or for the account of the Board) shall have the right from time to time to approve an amendment of this Resolution which may be deemed necessary or desirable by the Board; *provided, however*, that nothing herein contained shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions contained in this Resolution or in the Series 2022A Bonds so as to:

- (i) make any change in the maturity of any of the Series 2022A Bonds;
- (ii) reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the Series 2022A Bonds;
- (iii) reduce the principal amount or maturity amount, as applicable, payable on any of the Series 2022A Bonds;
- (iv) modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on or maturity amount of, as the case may be, any Series 2022A Bond, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;

(v) change the minimum percentage of the principal amount or maturity amount of the Series 2022A Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment; or

(vi) affect the rights of the registered owners of less than all of the Series 2022A Bonds then outstanding;

unless such amendment or amendments be approved by the registered owners of all of the Series 2022A Bonds at the time outstanding.

(b) Notice. If at any time the Board shall desire to amend this Resolution under this Section, the Board shall cause notice of the proposed amendment to be published in a financial newspaper or journal published in The City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas, once during each calendar week for at least four (4) successive calendar weeks. Such notice shall briefly set forth the nature of the proposed amendment and shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board and the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for inspection by all registered owners of Series 2022A Bonds. Such publication is not required, however, if notice in writing is given to each registered owner.

(c) Adoption of Amendatory Resolution. Whenever at any time, within one (1) year from the date of this publication of said notice or other service of written notice, the Board shall receive an instrument or instruments executed by the registered owners of at least 51% in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of Series 2022A Bonds then outstanding, which instrument or instruments shall refer to the proposed amendment described in said notice and which specifically consent to and approve such amendment in substantially the form of the copy thereof on file with the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board may adopt the amendatory resolution in substantially the same form.

(d) Effectiveness of Consents. Any consent given by the registered owner of a Series 2022A Bond pursuant to the provisions of this Resolution shall be irrevocable for a period of six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of the notice provided for in this Resolution, and shall be conclusive and binding upon all future registered owners of the same Series 2022A Bond during such period. Such consent may be revoked at any time after six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of such notice by the registered owner who gave such consent, or by a successor in title, by filing notice of such revocation with the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Board, but such revocation shall not be effective if the registered owners of 51% in aggregate principal amount and maturity amount, as applicable, of the Series 2022A Bonds outstanding as in this Section defined have, prior to the attempted revocation, consented to and approved the amendment.

(e) Proof of Ownership. For the purposes of this Section, proof of ownership of any Series 2022A Bond shall be established by the registration of any such Series 2022A Bond on the Registration Books kept and maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 7.02 Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners**

(a) Amendments Not Requiring Consent. The foregoing provisions of this Article notwithstanding, the Board may, without prior notice to or the consent of the registered owners, pursuant to an amendatory resolution, from time to time:

(i) impose conditions or restrictions additional to, but not in diminution of, those contained in this Resolution, respecting the issuance of Financial Assistance Bonds;

(ii) undertake covenants additional to but not inconsistent with those contained in this Resolution;

(iii) correct any ambiguity or correct or supplement any inconsistent or defective provision contained in this Resolution or any amendatory resolution;

(iv) adopt amendments to this Resolution that provide for the payment of principal of and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds or the payment of administrative expenses of the Board from Bond proceeds; or

(v) adopt amendments to this Resolution (including specifically, without limitation, amendments under authority of Section 7.02 and 9.04) that, in the opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board, do not adversely affect the registered owners.

(b) Specific Amendments not Requiring Consent. In addition to the foregoing, the Board expressly reserves the right, without prior notice to or consent from the registered owners of the Financial Assistance Bonds, to amend the provisions of ARTICLE VII of this Resolution to reflect subsequent amendments to the State Constitution and the Act, including, without limitation, amendments altering:

(i) the administration of Development Fund II; or

(ii) the accounts within Development Fund II; or

(iii) the deposit or application of moneys received by the Board as repayments of loans to Political Subdivisions and interest on those loans, or proceeds from the sale, transfer or lease of facilities held for any account within Development Fund II; or

(iv) the use of the proceeds of the Financial Assistance Bonds; or

(v) the rights, duties and obligations of the Comptroller as specified in ARTICLE VII;

or

(vi) the procedure for payment of the Financial Assistance Bonds; or

(vii) the payment of expenses of administering Development Fund II and other authorized expenses of the Board; or

(viii) the administration of the Water Infrastructure Fund;

*provided, however,* that such amendments to this Resolution can be made only if:

(1) the Board receives an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that such amendments comply with the Act, that the Financial Assistance Bonds continue to be general obligations of the State and the State Constitution provides for appropriation out of the first money coming into the State Treasury in each Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, of an amount sufficient to pay the principal of or interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds that mature

or become payable during that Fiscal Year, to the extent the same are not otherwise paid from funds pledged to their payment;

(2) bond counsel acceptable to the Board renders an opinion substantially to the effect that any such amendment will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on any tax-exempt Financial Assistance Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes; and

(3) each nationally-recognized securities rating agency that issued a rating at the time the Financial Assistance Bonds were initially delivered to the underwriters thereof and that has a then existing rating thereon confirms in writing that subsequent to any such amendment, the Financial Assistance Bonds will continue to be rated as general obligation bonds of the State.

(c) Notice. If the Board so amends this Resolution as provided in subsection (b) above, it shall cause notice of such amendment to be published one (1) time in a financial newspaper or journal of general circulation in the City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas. Such notice shall contain a summary of the amendatory language, recite that the conditions set forth in clauses (A), (B) and (C) of subsection (b) have been satisfied, and recite the effective date of such amendment. Such notice shall be published within thirty (30) days of the effective date of such amendment as set forth in such notice. Such notice shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board for inspection. Such publication is not required, however, if written notice is given to each registered owner of the Financial Assistance Bonds.

**Section 7.03 Effect of Amendatory Resolutions**. Upon the adoption of any amendatory resolution pursuant to the provisions of this Section, this Resolution shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with such amendatory resolution, and the respective rights, duties and obligations of the Board under this Resolution and all the registered owners of outstanding Series 2022A Bonds shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder, subject in all respects to such amendments.

**Section 7.04 Bonds May Bear Notation**. Series 2022A Bonds authenticated and delivered after the execution of any amendatory resolution pursuant to this Article may bear a notation in form approved by the Paying Agent/Registrar as to any matter provided for in such amendatory resolution. If the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar shall so determine, new Series 2022A Bonds so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, to any such amendatory resolution may be prepared and executed by the Board and authenticated and delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in exchange for the Series 2022A Bonds then outstanding.

## ARTICLE VIII

### PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS

#### **Section 8.01 Issuance and Sale of Bonds**

(a) Approval Certificate. Each Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall approve, execute and deliver one or more Approval Certificates, which completed and executed Approval Certificates shall evidence the sale (including the date of such sale) of a series or subseries of Series 2022A Bonds by the Board to the Underwriters. The Approval Certificate shall contain

a finding substantially to the effect that based on recommendations made to the Authorized Representative by the financial advisor to the Board, the terms of the sale of the Series 2022A Bonds were the most advantageous to the Board reasonably obtained, and the sale of the Series 2022A Bonds is in the best interests of the Board.

(b) Underwriters. Ramirez & Co., Inc. is hereby designated as the senior managing underwriter for the Underwriters. The Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall select such additional investment banking firms as deemed appropriate to assure that the Series 2022A Bonds are sold on terms advantageous to the Board.

(c) Purchase Agreement. The Purchase Agreement shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of Financial Assistance Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance Water Assistance Projects. A Purchase Agreement shall contain the terms of the sale of the Series 2022A Bonds, as negotiated by the Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof. At the direction of an Authorized Representative, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022C Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds may be sold, but are not required to be sold, pursuant to the terms of a common Purchase Agreement. Each Authorized Representative is hereby authorized and directed to execute the Purchase Agreement for and on behalf of the Board. An Authorized Representative's approval of a Purchase Agreement shall be conclusively evidenced by the execution thereof. It is hereby officially found, determined, and declared that the terms of this sale were and are to be negotiated under authority granted by Section 17.955, Texas Water Code.

(d) Ratings. No Series 2022A Bonds shall be delivered unless prior to delivery, the particular series or subseries of Series 2022A Bonds shall have been rated by a nationally recognized rating agency for municipal securities in one of the four highest rating categories for long term obligations, as required by Chapter 1371.

(e) Payment of Attorney General Fee. The Board hereby authorizes the payment of the fee of the Attorney General for the examination of the proceedings relating to the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds, in the amount determined in accordance with the provisions of Section 1202.004, Texas Government Code.

(f) Effect of Determination Made by Authorized Representative. A finding or determination made by an Authorized Representative acting under the authority delegated thereto by this Resolution with respect to all matters relating to the issuance and sale of the Series 2022A Bonds shall have the same force and effect as a finding or determination made by the Board.

**Section 8.02 Official Statement.** Prior to execution of a Purchase Agreement, the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a preliminary Official Statement to be prepared for distribution by the Underwriters to prospective purchasers of the Series 2022A Bonds sold under the terms of such Purchase Agreement, such document to be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of Financial Assistance Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance Water Assistance Projects, with such changes and completions as the Authorized Representative may deem necessary or appropriate to enable the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, to deem the preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, except for such omissions as are permitted by the Rule. Within seven (7) business days after the execution of a Purchase Agreement, the

Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a final Official Statement to be provided to the Underwriters in compliance with the Rule and the rules of the MSRB.

**Section 8.03 Custody of Bonds.** After the Initial Bonds have been executed, it shall be the duty of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, to deliver the Initial Bonds to the Attorney General for examination and approval. After the Initial Bonds shall have been approved by the Attorney General they shall be delivered to the Comptroller for registration. The Initial Bonds thus registered shall remain in the custody of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, or subject to the order of the Chair, until the sale of the Series 2022A Bonds to the Underwriters on the Date of Delivery.

**Section 8.04 Use of Bond Proceeds.** Proceeds from the sale of Series 2022A Bonds shall, promptly upon receipt by the Board, be deposited to the credit of the funds and accounts described in this Resolution and applied in the manner specified in the applicable Approval Certificate signed by an Authorized Representative.

## ARTICLE IX

### CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING

#### **Section 9.01 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller.**

(a) General. The Board and the legal and beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds are third-party beneficiaries of the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. The Comptroller is required to observe the Continuing Disclosure Agreement in respect of any issue of "Securities," as defined in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement (which include the Series 2022A Bonds), for so long as the State remains an "obligated person" as defined in the Rule. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the MSRB as described below.

(b) Annual Reports of the State. Pursuant to the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The Comptroller is not obligated to provide such financial and operating data more frequently than on an annual basis. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the State of the general type included in the Bond Appendix. The Comptroller will update and provide this information within 195 days after the end of each fiscal year of the State. The updated information provided by the Comptroller need not be audited, but the Comptroller will provide audited financial statements of the State prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for governmental entities when the State Auditor completes its statutorily required audit of such financial statements. The accounting principles pursuant to which such financial statements must be prepared may be changed from time to time to comply with State law.

(c) Event Notices of the Comptroller. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller has also agreed to provide notice to the MSRB of any of the following events, with respect, to the Series 2022A Bonds, in a timely manner and not more than ten (10) business days after occurrence of the event:

(i) incurrence of a Financial Obligation of the State, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which affect security holders, if material; and

(ii) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which reflect financial difficulties.

(d) Change in State Fiscal Year. The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. If the State changes its fiscal year, the Comptroller will notify the MSRB of the change prior to the next date by which the Comptroller otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as described above.

**Section 9.02 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board.**

(a) Annual Reports of the Board. The Board shall provide annually to the MSRB, within 195 days after the end of each Fiscal Year ending in or after 2022, financial information and operating data with respect to the Board and the State of the general type included in Tables 1 and 2 and Appendix B of the final Official Statement authorized by **Section 8.02** hereof, being the information described in **Exhibit B** hereto. Any financial statements so to be provided shall be (1) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in **Exhibit B** hereto and (2) audited, if the Board or the State, as appropriate, commissions an audit of such statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. If audited financial statements are not so provided, then the Board shall provide unaudited financial statements within the required time for the applicable Fiscal Year to the MSRB, and audited financial statements when and if audited financial statements become available.

(b) Event Notices of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner not in excess of ten (10) Business Days after the occurrence of any of the following events with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds:

- (1) Principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) Non-payment related defaults, if material;
- (3) Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
- (4) Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
- (5) Substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) Adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Series 2022A Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Series 2022A Bonds;
- (7) Modifications to rights of holders of the Series 2022A Bonds, if material;

- (8) Series 2022A Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
- (9) Defeasances;
- (10) Release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2022A Bonds, if material;
- (11) Rating changes;
- (12) Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Board;
- (13) The consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Board or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and
- (14) Appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or change in the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar, if material.

As used in clause 12 above, the phrase “bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event” means the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Board in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, or if jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the Board and officials or officers of the Board in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner, of any failure by the Board to provide financial information or operating data in accordance with Section 9.02(a) by the time required by such Section.

(c) Change in Board Fiscal Year. If the Board changes its Fiscal Year, it will notify the MSRB of the change (and of the date of the new Fiscal Year end) prior to the next date by which the Board otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data pursuant to this Section.

**Section 9.03 Incorporation by Reference.** The financial information and operating data to be provided pursuant to this Section may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document (including an official statement or other offering document, if it is available from the MSRB) that theretofore has been provided to the MSRB or filed with the SEC. All filings shall be made electronically, in the format specified by the MSRB.

**Section 9.04 Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments.** The Board shall be obligated to observe and perform the covenants specified in this this Article for so long as, but only for so long as, the Board or the State remains an “obligated person” with respect to the Series 2022A Bonds within the meaning of the Rule, except that the Board in any event will give the notice required by Section 9.02(b) of any Series 2022A Bond calls and defeasance that cause the Board and the State to be no longer “obligated persons”.

The provisions of this Article are for the sole benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds, and nothing in this Article, express or implied, shall give any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy, or claim hereunder to any other Person. The Board undertakes to provide only the financial information, operating data, financial statements, and notices which it has expressly agreed to provide pursuant to this Article and does not hereby undertake to provide any other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of the Board's or the State's financial results, condition, or prospects or hereby undertake to update any information provided in accordance with this Article or otherwise, except as expressly provided herein. The Board does not make any representation or warranty concerning such information or its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Series 2022A Bonds at any future date.

UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL THE BOARD BE LIABLE TO THE HOLDER OR BENEFICIAL OWNER OF ANY SERIES 2022A BOND OR ANY OTHER PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR DAMAGES RESULTING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM ANY BREACH BY THE BOARD, WHETHER NEGLIGENT OR WITHOUT FAULT ON ITS PART, OF ANY COVENANT SPECIFIED IN THIS ARTICLE, BUT EVERY RIGHT AND REMEDY OF ANY SUCH PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR OR ON ACCOUNT OF ANY SUCH BREACH SHALL BE LIMITED TO AN ACTION FOR MANDAMUS OR SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE.

All documents provided to the MSRB shall be accompanied by identifying information, as prescribed by the MSRB.

No default by the Board in observing or performing its obligations under this Article shall constitute a breach of or default under this Resolution for purposes of any other provision of this Resolution.

Nothing in this Article is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive, or otherwise limit the duties of the Board or the State under federal and State securities laws.

Should the Rule be amended to obligate the Board to make filings with or provide notices to entities other than the MSRB, the Board agrees to undertake such obligation in accordance with the Rule as amended.

The provisions of this Article may be amended by the Board from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the Board or the State, but only if (1) the provisions of this Article, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Series 2022A Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022A Bonds in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount (or any greater amount required by any other provision of this Resolution that authorizes such an amendment) of the outstanding Series 2022A Bonds consent to such amendment or (b) a Person that is unaffiliated with the Board and the State (such as nationally-recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022A Bonds. If the Board so amends the provisions of this Article, it shall include with any amended financial information or operating data next provided in accordance with Section 9.02(a) an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information or operating data so provided. The Board may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure

requirement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Series 2022A Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022A Bonds.

## ARTICLE X

### DEFEASANCE

**Section 10.01 Series 2022A Bonds Deemed Paid.** Any Series 2022A Bond and the interest thereon shall be deemed to be paid, retired and no longer outstanding (a “Defeased Bond”), except to the extent hereinafter provided in this Article, when payment of the principal of such Series 2022A Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date (whether such due date be by reason of maturity or otherwise) either (i) shall have been made or caused to be made in accordance with the terms thereof, or (ii) shall have been provided for on or before such due date by irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other similar instrument (the “**Future Escrow Agreement**”) for such payment (1) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such payment or (2) Defeasance Securities that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. At such time as a Series 2022A Bond shall be deemed to be a Defeased Bond hereunder, as aforesaid, such Series 2022A Bond and the interest thereon shall no longer be secured by, payable from, or entitled to the benefits of, the Financial Assistance Account, and such principal and interest shall be payable solely from such money or Defeasance Securities. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, it is hereby provided that any determination not to redeem Defeased Bonds that is made in conjunction with the payment arrangements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) above shall not be irrevocable; provided, that in the proceedings providing for such payment arrangements, the Board (1) expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (2) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the payment arrangements; and (3) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

**Section 10.02 Investment in Defeasance Securities.** Any moneys so deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar may at the written direction of the Board be invested in Defeasance Securities, maturing in the amounts and times as hereinbefore set forth, and all income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar that is not required for the payment of the Series 2022A Bonds and interest thereon, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be turned over to the Board, or deposited as directed in writing by the Board. Any Future Escrow Agreement pursuant to which the money and/or Defeasance Securities are held for the payment of Defeased Bonds may contain provisions permitting the investment or reinvestment of such moneys in Defeasance Securities or the substitution of other Defeasance Securities upon the satisfaction of the requirements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) of Section 10.01. All income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar which is not required for the payment of the Defeased Bonds, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be remitted to the Board or deposited as directed in writing by the Board.

**Section 10.03 Paying Agent/Registrar Services.** Until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for such

Defeased Bonds the same as if they had not been defeased, and the Board shall make proper arrangements to provide and pay for such services as required by this Resolution.

**Section 10.04 Selection of Series 2022A Bonds for Defeasance.** In the event that the Board elects to defease less than all of the principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds of a maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall select, or cause to be selected, such amount of Series 2022A Bonds by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate and consistent with the terms of this Resolution.

## ARTICLE XI

### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

**Section 11.01 Further Procedures.** The Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the General Counsel, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or any other officers of the Board and each of them, shall be and they are hereby expressly authorized, empowered and directed from time to time and at any time to do and perform all such acts and things and to execute, acknowledge and deliver in the name and under the seal of the Board and on behalf of the Board all agreements, instruments, or such other documents, whether mentioned herein or not, as may be necessary or desirable in order to carry out the terms and provisions of this Resolution, and the initial sale and delivery of the Series 2022A Bonds. In addition, prior to the initial delivery of the Series 2022A Bonds, the Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or the General Counsel of the Board and the Board's Bond Counsel are hereby authorized and directed to approve any technical changes or corrections to this Resolution or to any of the instruments authorized and approved by this Resolution: (i) in order to cure any technical ambiguity, formal defect, or omission in the Resolution or such other document; or (ii) as requested by the Attorney General or his representative to obtain the approval of the Series 2022A Bonds by the Attorney General and if such officer or counsel determines that such ministerial changes are consistent with the intent and purpose of the Resolution, which determination shall be final. In the event that any officer of the Board whose signature shall appear on any document shall cease to be such officer before the delivery of such document, such signature nevertheless shall be valid and sufficient for all purposes the same as if such officer had remained in office until such delivery.

**Section 11.02 Open Meeting; Notice.** It is hereby officially found and determined that the meeting at which this Resolution is adopted is open to the public as required by law at all times during which this Resolution and the subject matter thereof are discussed, considered and formally acted upon; and reasonable notice of this meeting was delivered to the Secretary of State of the State, as required by Chapter 551.

**Section 11.03 Prior Actions.** All actions taken by the Board authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds are in all things approved, ratified and confirmed, except that to the extent such actions conflict with any provision of this Resolution, the terms and provisions of this Resolution shall control and prevail.

**Section 11.04 Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge.** Chapter 1208 applies to the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds and the pledge of the credit of the State made pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and such pledge is therefore valid, effective, and perfected. If State law is amended at any time while the Series 2022A Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that such pledge is to be subject to the filing requirements

of Chapter 9, then in order to preserve to the registered owners of the Series 2022A Bonds the perfection of the security interest in said pledge, the Board agrees to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under State law to comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9 and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

ADOPTED AND APPROVED this February 2, 2022.

---

Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

**LIST OF EXHIBITS**

<b>Exhibit A</b>	Form of Bond
<b>Exhibit B</b>	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board

## EXHIBIT A

## FORM OF BOND

NO. \_\_\_\_\_

\$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
STATE OF TEXAS  
WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE BOND  
SUBSERIES 2022A<sup>1</sup>

MATURITY DATEINTEREST RATE  
%DATED DATE  
\_\_\_\_\_, 2022CUSIP

Registered Owner:

Principal Amount:

ON THE MATURITY DATE SPECIFIED ABOVE, THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), hereby promises to pay to the registered owner specified above, or to the registered assignees hereof (either being hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount specified above and to pay interest thereon, from the dated date of this Bond specified above, to the date of its scheduled maturity or date of redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the rate of interest per annum specified above, with said interest being payable on February 1, 20\_, and semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, except that if the Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate appearing on the face of this Bond is dated later than February 1, 20\_, such interest is payable semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 following such date of authentication.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") in Dallas, Texas (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof as shown on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the fifteenth day of the month next preceding such interest payment date (the "Record Date") by check drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Board required to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner of record on the Record Date at its address as it appears on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described. The Board covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that no later than each principal payment date and interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Series 2022A Bonds (as defined herein) when due.

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

INTEREST ON the Series 2022A Bonds shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ANY PAYMENTS required to be made hereunder on any day which is not a Business Day (as defined below) shall be made instead on the next succeeding Business Day and no interest shall accrue on such payments in the interim. "Business Day" means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close. Notwithstanding the foregoing, during any period in which ownership of the Series 2022A Bonds is determined only by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022A Bonds, any payment to the securities depository, or its nominee or registered assigns, shall be made in accordance with existing arrangements between the Board and the securities depository.

THIS BOND is one of a series of Bonds of like tenor and effect except as to number, maturity, interest rate and right of prior redemption, dated as of the dated date of this Bond specified above, aggregating \_\_\_\_\_ (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) (the "Series 2022A Bonds")<sup>1</sup>, issued pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-8"), Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-11") and Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code ("Subchapter L"), and a resolution authorizing the issuance of the series of Bonds of which this is one, adopted by the Board and duly of record in the minutes of the Board (hereinafter called the "Bond Resolution"), to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects assistance project and to pay expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds. In the Bond Resolution, the Board delegated to certain designated officials the authority to establish and approve the final terms of sale of the Series 2022A Bonds through the execution of one or more Approval Certificates (the Bond Resolution and applicable Approval Certificate are collectively referred to herein as the "Resolution"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Resolution.

THE SERIES 2022A BONDS having stated maturities on and after \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ shall be subject to redemption prior to maturity, at the option of the Board, in whole or in part, in Authorized Denominations, on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_, or on any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

THE SERIES 2022A BONDS maturing on August 1, in the years \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Term Bonds") are subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption annually, on August 1 of the years and in the principal amounts set forth below, plus accrued interest from the most recent interest payment date on which interest has been paid or fully provided for, to the redemption date:

**Term Bonds due August 1, 20**

Mandatory Redemption Date (August 1)	<u>Principal Amount</u>
---	-------------------------

† Final Maturity

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

THE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT of Term Bonds required to be redeemed shall be reduced, at the option of the Board, by the principal amount of Term Bonds which, at least 50 days prior to the mandatory sinking fund redemption date (1) shall have been defeased or acquired by the Board and delivered to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, (2) shall have been purchased and canceled by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the request of the Board with money in the Bond Fund, or (3) shall have been redeemed pursuant to the optional redemption provisions set forth above and not theretofor credited against a mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement. On or before August 1 of every year in which there are mandatory redemption requirements as defined above for the Term Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall determine the principal amount of Term Bonds that must be mandatorily redeemed on August 1 of such year, after taking into account deliveries for cancellation and prior redemption of Term Bonds as provided above.

THE SERIES 2022A BONDS shall be subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption prior to their scheduled maturities, on \_\_\_\_\_ (the "One-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption"), in an amount equal to the Computation Amount applicable to the One Year Computation Period (as each term is defined in the Resolution), plus accrued interest to the date of such extraordinary mandatory redemption, at the redemption prices set forth below, expressed as percentages of the principal amount of each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds so redeemed:

<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Redemption Price (%)</u>
-----------------	-----------------------------

THE FOREGOING NOTWITHSTANDING, the Series 2022A Bonds shall not be subject to such extraordinary mandatory redemption if the Board obtains an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that the failure by the Board to cause such extraordinary mandatory redemption to occur will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on the Series 2022A Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

THE SERIES 2022A BONDS shall be subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption prior to their scheduled maturities, on \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Three-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption"), in an amount equal to the Computation Amount applicable to the Three-Year Computation Period (as defined in the Resolution), plus accrued interest to the date of such extraordinary mandatory redemption, at the redemption prices set forth below, expressed as percentages of the principal amount of each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds so redeemed:

<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Redemption (%)</u>
-----------------	-----------------------

FOLLOWING THE EARLIER OF (i) the 90th day after the Three-Year Computation Period for the Series 2022A Bonds and (ii) the date on which 95 percent of the proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds have been used to make loans, if such date occurs prior to the end of the Three-Year Computation Period for the Series 2022A Bonds, the Series 2022A Bonds shall not be subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption.

THE FOREGOING NOTWITHSTANDING, the Series 2022A Bonds shall not be subject to such extraordinary mandatory redemption if the Board obtains an opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that the failure by the Board to cause such extraordinary mandatory redemption to occur will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on the Series 2022A Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

For Purposes of the One-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption and the Three-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption of Bonds, as the case may be, the Series 2022A Bonds subject to such redemption shall be selected on a "Pro-Rata Basis"; provided, that if any amount required to be redeemed remains after such selection, such remaining amount shall be applied to the redemption of \$5,000 principal amount of each maturity of Series 2022A Bonds in inverse order of maturity. The term "Pro-Rata Basis" means that the principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds of a particular maturity shall be determined by multiplying the Computation Amount by the ratio which the principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds of such maturity then Outstanding bears to the aggregate principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds then Outstanding and subject to redemption.

IF FEWER THAN ALL OF THE SERIES 2022A BONDS are called for redemption, the maturities to be redeemed will be selected by the Board, and the Series 2022A Bonds to be redeemed within any one maturity will be selected by the Paying Agent/Registrar by lot (or in such other manner as the Paying Agent/Registrar may determine) in integral multiples of \$5,000; *provided, however*, that during any period in which ownership of such Series 2022A Bonds to be redeemed is determined only by a book-entry at DTC, or a successor securities depository, if fewer than all of such Series 2022A Bonds of the same maturity and bearing the same interest rate are to be redeemed, the particular Series 2022A Bonds of such maturity and bearing such interest rate will be selected in accordance with the arrangements between the Board and DTC or successor securities depository; *provided, further, however*, that such selection methodology shall not apply to the Series 2022A Bonds that are redeemed pursuant to application of the extraordinary mandatory redemption provisions above, in which case selection of redeemed Series 2022A Bonds shall occur in the manner described above.

IF THE SERIES 2022A BONDS are no longer registered to DTC or its nominee, any redemption of less than all of a maturity of such Series 2022A Bonds shall be effected by the Paying Agent/Registrar among owners on a pro-rata basis subject to minimum Authorized Denominations. The Series 2022A Bonds or portions thereof to be redeemed shall be determined by the Paying Agent/Registrar, using such method as it shall deem fair and appropriate.

AT LEAST thirty (30) days prior to the date fixed for any redemption, (a) a written notice of such redemption shall be given to the registered owner of each Bond or a portion thereof being called for redemption by depositing such notice in the United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to each such registered owner at his address shown on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar, and (b) notice of such redemption either shall be published one (1) time in or posted electronically on the website of a financial journal or publication of general circulation in the United States of America or the State of Texas carrying as a regular feature notices of municipal bonds called for redemption; *provided, however*, that the failure to send, mail, or receive such notice described in clause (a) above, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond, and the Resolution provides that the provision of notice as described in clause (a) above shall be the only notice actually required in connection with or as a prerequisite to the redemption of any Bonds. By the date fixed for any such redemption due provision shall be made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for this Bond or the portion hereof which is to be so redeemed, plus accrued interest thereon to the date fixed for redemption. Should notice to call Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022A Bonds so called for redemption, no Bonds shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the

notice of redemption for such Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022A Bonds as provided herein or in the Resolution. By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

THE BOARD RESERVES the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022A Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of moneys and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying Agent/Registrar instruction the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such moneys and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

IF SUCH NOTICE of redemption is given, and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided in the paragraph above, this Bond, or the portion thereof which is to be so redeemed, thereby automatically shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity, and shall not bear interest after the date fixed for its redemption, and shall not be regarded as being Outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of this Bond or any portion hereof. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed, a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination, at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Board, all as provided in the Resolution

THIS BOND OR ANY PORTION OR PORTIONS HEREOF IN ANY AUTHORIZED DENOMINATION may be assigned and shall be transferred only in the registration books of the Board kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar acting in the capacity of registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds, upon the terms and conditions set forth in the Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any Authorized Denomination to the assignee or assignees. A new Bond or Bonds payable to such assignee, or to the previous registered owner in the case of the assignment and transfer of only a portion of this Bond, shall be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in conversion of and exchange for this Bond, all in the form and manner as provided in the next paragraph hereof for the conversion and exchange of other Bonds.

AS PROVIDED in the Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be, having the same maturity date and interest rate, in any Authorized

Denomination, as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner or assignee, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office for cancellation.

NEITHER THE BOARD, the State of Texas, nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, transfer, exchange or make any conversion of any Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (b) to transfer or exchange any Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; provided, however, that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of the Series 2022A Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any Bonds which have been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon the surrender thereof. The registered owner requesting conversion and exchange of any Bond or portion thereof shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's customary fees and charges, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange, except, however, that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Bond or Bonds or portion thereof, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of a portion of a Bond which has been redeemed prior to maturity, as provided herein, the fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar will be paid by the Board.

WHENEVER the beneficial ownership of this Bond is determined by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022A Bonds, the foregoing requirements of holding, delivering or transferring this Bond shall be modified to require the appropriate person or entity to meet the requirements of the securities depository as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022A Bonds is changed by the Board, resigns or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Board has covenanted in the Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and promptly will cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Series 2022A Bonds.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the Board, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Board.

THE ISSUE of Bonds of which this is one shall be and is hereby made a general obligation of the State of Texas, pursuant to Section 49-d-8 and Subchapter L, and for the faithful performance of all covenants, recitals and stipulations herein contained, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and interest on this Bond when due, the resources of the Board and the full faith and credit of the State of Texas are hereby pledged.

PAYMENTS OF THE PRINCIPAL OF and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be made primarily from the "Texas Water Development Fund II Water Financial Assistance Account" (the "Financial Assistance Account") within the Texas Water Development Fund II ("Development Fund II") created by Section 49-d-8. The Financial Assistance Account shall be comprised of (1) the Board's rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from such account, together with any evidence of such rights;

(2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance; (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance; (4) money and assets attributable to bonds issued and sold by the Board for such account, including money and assets transferred from the Texas Water Development Fund pursuant to Section 49-d-8; (5) money deposited to such account from the sale, transfer, or lease, in whole or in part, of facilities held for such account; (6) payments received by the Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to bonds issued for such account; (7) interest and other income received from investment of money in such account; and (8) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the Financial Assistance Account. Proceeds from the sale of the bonds on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account shall not be available to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part unless specifically authorized by the Board. The Bonds and all other bonds or other obligations issued or incurred by the Board pursuant to Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, or Section 49-d-11 to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account of Development Fund II or to refund any such bonds or obligations are referred to herein as "Financial Assistance Bonds". Section 49-d-8 provides that to the extent there is not money in any account available for payment of principal of and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds issued for such account, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the State Treasury (as defined in the Resolution) in each fiscal year, not otherwise appropriated by the Texas Constitution, an amount which is sufficient to pay the principal of and interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year.

IT IS HEREBY certified and recited that all acts, conditions and things required to be done precedent to and in the issuance of this Bond and the series of which it forms a part have been properly done, have happened and have been performed in regular and due time, form and manner as required by the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas and the Resolution, and that the series of Bonds of which this is a part does not exceed any constitutional or statutory limitation, and that provision has been made for the payment of the principal of and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part as such principal and interest become due by a continuing appropriation heretofore made by Section 49-d-8 and by a pledge of the credit of the State of Texas.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, this Bond is executed with the lithographed or printed facsimile or manual signatures of the Chairwoman of the Texas Water Development Board and the Executive Administrator, and the seal of said Board is lithographed, printed or manually impressed hereon.

THE STATE OF TEXAS

---

Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

[To accompany Definitive Bonds only]

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Resolution described on the face of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of a Bond, Bonds or a portion of a Bond or Bonds of an issue which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST  
COMPANY, N.A., Paying Agent/Registrar

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Representative

ASSIGNMENT

FOR VALUE RECEIVED the undersigned hereby sells, assigns, and transfers unto (Print or typewrite name, address, and zip code of transferee:)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_(Social Security or other identifying number \_\_\_\_\_) the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints \_\_\_\_\_ attorney to transfer the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

DATED:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature guaranteed:  
  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
NOTICE: The signature on this assignment must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears on the face of the within Bond in every particular.

[To accompany Initial Bond(s) only]

REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE OF  
TEXAS COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER )  
OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS ) REGISTER NO. \_\_\_\_\_  
THE STATE OF TEXAS )

I HEREBY CERTIFY that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and duly registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

WITNESS my signature and seal of office this \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts

(SEAL)

The Initial Series 2022A Bond shall be in the form set forth therefor in this Exhibit, except as follows:

Heading and paragraphs one (1) through three (3) shall be replaced as follows:

NO. T-1 \$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
STATE OF TEXAS  
WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE BOND  
SERIES 2022A<sup>1</sup>

Bond Date:

\_\_\_\_\_, 2022

Registered Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

Principal Amount: \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), for value received, acknowledges itself indebted to and hereby promises to pay to the registered owner named above, or the registered assigns thereof, the Principal Amount hereinabove stated on August 1 in the years and in principal installments in accordance with the following schedule:

<u>Year of Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Interest Rates (%)</u>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

(Information to be inserted from Approval Certificate).

(without right of prior redemption) and to pay interest on the unpaid principal installments hereof from the date of its delivery at the per annum rates of interest specified above computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months; such interest being payable on February 1, 20\_\_, and each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, until maturity. Principal installments of this Series 2022A Bond are payable in the year of maturity or on a redemption date to the registered owner hereof by The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender, at its designated offices in East Syracuse, New York (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). Interest is payable to the registered owner of this Bond whose name appears on the "Security Register" maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the "Record Date," which is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding each interest payment date, and interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar by check sent United States Mail, first class postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Security Register or by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. All payments of principal of, premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be without exchange or collection charges to the registered owner hereof and in any coin or currency of the United States of America, which at the time of payment is legal tender for the payment of public and private debts. If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to be closed, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to be closed; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

**EXHIBIT B**

**DESCRIPTION OF ANNUAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION  
OF THE BOARD**

The following information is referred to in Section 9.02 of this Resolution.

**Annual Financial Statements and Operating Data**

The financial information and operating data with respect to the Board to be provided annually in accordance with such Section is the quantitative financial information and operating data pertaining to the Board included in Tables 1 and 2 of the Official Statement and in Appendix B to the Official Statement relating to the Bonds.

**Accounting Principles**

The accounting principles referred to in such Section are generally accepted accounting principles for governmental units as prescribed by the Government Accounting Standards Board from time to time, as such principles may be changed from time to time to comply with state law or regulation.

**BOND RESOLUTION  
OF THE  
TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD  
AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF  
STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE  
REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2022B  
AND SUCH OTHER SUBSERIES  
AS MAY BE DESIGNATED PURSUANT TO THE TERMS HEREOF  
ADOPTED:  
FEBRUARY 2, 2022**

Table of Contents

Page

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Section 1.01	Definitions .....	2
Section 1.02	Rules of Construction.....	8
Section 1.03	Interpretations .....	8

ARTICLE II

THE SERIES 2022B BONDS

Section 2.01	Authorization of Bonds .....	8
Section 2.02	Denominations, Date and Interest Rates .....	10
Section 2.03	Maturities and Amounts .....	10
Section 2.04	Execution of Bonds .....	10
Section 2.05	Temporary Bonds.....	10
Section 2.06	Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar .....	11
Section 2.07	Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds .....	11
Section 2.08	Owners of Bonds.....	13
Section 2.09	Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.....	14
Section 2.10	Successor Paying Agent/Registrars .....	14
Section 2.11	Book-Entry Only System .....	15
Section 2.12	All Bonds On Parity .....	16

ARTICLE III

REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY

Section 3.01	Limitation on Redemption .....	16
Section 3.02	Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.....	16
Section 3.03	Partial Redemption.....	16
Section 3.04	Notice of Redemption .....	17
Section 3.05	Payment Upon Redemption.....	18
Section 3.06	Effect of Redemption.....	18

ARTICLE IV

FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES

Section 4.01	Form of Bond and Certificates .....	18
Section 4.02	Opinion of Bond Counsel .....	19
Section 4.03	Printing of Statement of Insurance.....	19

Table of Contents  
(continued)

Page

ARTICLE V

SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS;  
ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS

Section 5.01	General Obligations .....	19
Section 5.02	Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.....	19
Section 5.03	Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds .....	19
Section 5.04	Flow of Funds For Debt Service .....	20
Section 5.05	Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment .....	21
Section 5.06	Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller .....	22
Section 5.07	Payment of Bonds.....	22
Section 5.08	Cooperation with State Officers .....	22
Section 5.09	Investment of Funds.....	22

ARTICLE VI

COVENANTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.01	Special Covenant.....	23
Section 6.02	Covenants to Maintain Tax-Exempt Status .....	23
Section 6.03	Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.....	27
Section 6.04	Remedies of Bondholders.....	27
Section 6.05	Bond Enhancement Agreements .....	27

ARTICLE VII

SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

Section 7.01	Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.....	27
Section 7.02	Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners.....	28
Section 7.03	Effect of Amendatory Resolutions.....	30
Section 7.04	Bonds May Bear Notation .....	30

ARTICLE VIII

PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS

Section 8.01	Issuance and Sale of Bonds .....	30
Section 8.02	Official Statement.....	31
Section 8.03	Custody of Bonds.....	32
Section 8.04	Use of Bond Proceeds .....	32

ARTICLE IX

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING

Section 9.01	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller .....	32
--------------	--	----

Table of Contents  
(continued)

	Page
Section 9.02	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board..... 33
Section 9.03	Incorporation by Reference..... 34
Section 9.04	Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments..... 34
ARTICLE X	
DEFEASANCE	
Section 10.01	Series 2022B Bonds Deemed Paid ..... 36
Section 10.02	Investment in Defeasance Securities..... 36
Section 10.03	Paying Agent/Registrar Services ..... 36
Section 10.04	Selection of Series 2022B Bonds for Defeasance..... 37
ARTICLE XI	
MATTERS RELATING TO THE REFUNDED BONDS	
Section 11.01	Purpose for Refunding ..... 37
Section 11.02	Escrow Agreement..... 37
Section 11.03	Purchase of United States Treasury Obligations..... 37
Section 11.04	Redemption of Refunded Bonds..... 38
Section 11.05	Escrow Fund ..... 38
Section 11.06	Transfer of Funds..... 38
ARTICLE XII	
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	
Section 12.01	Further Procedures ..... 38
Section 12.02	Open Meeting; Notice ..... 39
Section 12.03	Prior Actions..... 39
Section 12.04	Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge..... 39
SCHEDULE I	List of Refundable Bonds..... I-1
Exhibit A	Form of Bond ..... A-1
Exhibit B	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board..... B-1

**RESOLUTION**

**OF THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2022B, AND RESOLVING OTHER MATTERS RELATED THERETO**

WHEREAS, the Texas Water Development Board (the “**Board**”) has previously issued, sold, and delivered general obligation bonds of the State of Texas (the “**State**”), to fund one or more accounts of the Texas Water Development Fund II (referred to herein as “**Development Fund II**”) established pursuant to the provisions of Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Constitution of the State (the “**State Constitution**”), approved by the voters on November 4, 1997 (“**Section 49-d-8**”); and

WHEREAS, in furtherance of the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-9**”), and Subchapter L, Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code (the “**Act**”), the Board has heretofore issued and there are currently outstanding obligations of the State as described in “**SCHEDULE I**” attached to this Resolution and incorporated herein by reference (collectively referred to as the “**Refundable Bonds**”); and

WHEREAS, in addition to bonds authorized by other provisions of the State Constitution, Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-11**”) authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds of the State, at its determination and on a continuing basis, for one or more accounts of Development Fund II, in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of the bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6,000,000,000; and

WHEREAS, Section 49-d-11 states that (i) Section 49-d-8 applies to the bonds authorized by Section 49-d-11, (ii) the limitation in Section 49-d-8 that the Board may not issue bonds in excess of the aggregate principal amount of previously authorized bonds does not apply to the bonds authorized by and issued under Section 49-d-11, and (iii) a limitation on the percentage of state participation in any single project imposed by Article III of the State Constitution does not apply to a project funded with the proceeds of bonds issued under authority of Section 49-d-8 or Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, since the Refundable Bonds were not originally authorized by Section 49-d-11, bonds issued to refund the Refundable Bonds would not count against the authorization established by Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, current market conditions are favorable to achieve some level of debt service savings if the Board were to refund some or all of the Refundable Bonds; and

WHEREAS, the Board finds it advisable and determines that it is a public purpose and in the best interests of the State, in accordance with authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, and the Act, to authorize issuance of the 2022B Bonds (as defined herein) to refund all or a portion of the Refundable Bonds in accordance with Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371 (hereinafter defined), subject to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, as hereinafter provided; and

WHEREAS, bonds authorized to be issued pursuant to this Resolution are reasonably expected by the Board to be paid from revenue sources other than the general revenues of the State;

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD:**

ARTICLE I

**DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS**

**Section 1.01 Definitions.** Throughout this Resolution (except in the FORM OF BOND attached as **Exhibit A** to this Resolution), in addition to the terms defined in the preamble to this Resolution the following terms and expressions used herein shall have the meanings specified in this Section.

**“Act”** means Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

**“Amortization Installment”** means the amount of money which is required for retirement of Term Bonds (whether at maturity or by mandatory redemption and including redemption premium, if any).

**“Approval Certificate”** means collectively one or more certificates executed by an Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof which finalize the pricing and terms of the Series 2022B Bonds pursuant to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, including specifying the issuance of one or more subseries.

**“Attorney General”** means the Attorney General of the State.

**“Authentication Certificate”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.07.

**“Authorized Denomination”** means \$5,000 principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and any integral multiple thereof.

**“Authorized Representative”** means each of the Executive Administrator, the Chief Financial Officer, the Development Fund Manager and the General Counsel of the Board, acting individually and not jointly.

**“Board”** means the Texas Water Development Board.

**“Bond”** or **“Bonds”** means a Series 2022B Bond or Series 2022B Bonds, as applicable.

**“Bond Appendix”** means the quarterly appendix prepared by the Comptroller which sets forth certain information regarding the State (including its government, finances, economic profile, and other matters) for use by State entities when issuing debt.

**“Bond Enhancement Agreement”** means any agreement of the nature described in Section 17.954(c), Texas Water Code.

**“Bond Payment Account”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 5.03.

**“Book-Entry-Only System”** means the system maintained by the securities depository described in Section 2.11.

**“Business Day”** means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close.

“**Chapter 9**” means Chapter 9, Texas Business & Commerce Code.

“**Chapter 551**” means Chapter 551, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1206**” means Chapter 1206, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1207**” means Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1208**” means Chapter 1208, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1371**” means Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, enacted on or before the Date of Delivery.

“**Common Issue Bonds**” means the Series 2022B Bonds and any other tax-exempt bonds sold within 15 days of the first day on which there is a binding written contract for the sale or exchange of the Series 2022B Bonds, which are part of the same “issue” as the Series 2022B Bonds, as defined in section 1.150-1(c) of the Regulations.

“**Comptroller**” means the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

“**Continuing Disclosure Agreement**” means the Amended and Restated Continuing Disclosure Agreement dated March 12, 2019, between the Comptroller and the Texas Bond Review Board, as may be further amended from time to time.

“**Date of Delivery**” means the date of delivery of the Series 2022B Bonds to the Underwriters.

“**Dated Date**” means the date designated in the Approval Certificate as such with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds.

“**Defeasance Securities**” means, unless otherwise specified in an Approval Certificate, (i) Federal Securities, (ii) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022B Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, (iii) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022B Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, and (iv) any other then authorized securities or obligations that may be used to defease obligations such as the Series 2022B Bonds under the then applicable laws of the State.

**“Designated Payment/Transfer Office”** means the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar designated as the place for payment, transfer and exchange of the Series 2022B Bonds, initially, the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar in Dallas, Texas.

**“Development Fund I”** means the Texas Water Development Fund as described in the Development Fund I Constitution Provisions.

**“Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions”** means Sections 49-c, 49-d, 49-d-1, 49-d-2, 49-d-5, 49-d-6 and 49-d-7 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Development Fund II”** has the meaning specified for that term in the preamble to this Resolution.

**“DTC”** means The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, and its successors and assigns.

**“DTC Participant”** means the securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations on whose behalf DTC was created to hold securities to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among DTC Participants.

**“Economically Distressed Areas Program Account”** means the account described in Section 17.958, Texas Water Code.

**“EDAP Project”** means any project found and determined by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Subchapter K.

**“Eligible Investments”** means those investments in which the Board is authorized by law and its investment policy to invest its funds.

**“Escrow Agent”** means the Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as escrow agent under the Escrow Agreement and any successor thereto as therein permitted.

**“Escrow Agreement”** means an escrow agreement, deposit agreement, escrow deposit letter, escrow instructions or other comparable document (including any amendments thereto) between the Board and the Escrow Agent providing for the payment of the Refunded Bonds, in substantially the form approved in the Approval Certificate.

**“Escrow Fund”** means each escrow fund or account created with respect to the Refunded Bonds pursuant to the Escrow Agreement.

**“Federal Securities”** means direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America.

**“Financial Assistance Account”** means the account described in Section 17.959, Texas Water Code.

**“Financial Assistance Bonds”** means the general obligation bonds of the State issued by the Board under authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, and Section 49-d-11 to provide funds for

the Financial Assistance Account of Development Fund II, including the Previously Issued Financial Assistance Bonds, the Series 2022B Bonds, and the Series 2022A Bonds.

**“Financial Obligation”** means a (a) debt obligation; (b) derivative instrument entered into in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation; or (c) guarantee of any such debt obligation or any such derivative instrument; provided that “Financial Obligation” shall not include municipal securities as to which a final official statement (as defined in the Rule) has been provided to the MSRB consistent with the Rule. The Board and the Comptroller intend the words used in this definition to have the same meanings as when they are used in the Rule, as evidenced by SEC Release No. 34-83885, dated August 20, 2018.

**“Fiscal Year”** means the period of time beginning in each calendar year on September 1 and ending on August 31 of the calendar year next following.

**“Form of Bond”** means the Form of Bond attached hereto as **Exhibit A**.

**“GASB”** means the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

**“Holder”** or **“Owner”** means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022B Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

**“Initial Bonds”** means the Series 2022B Bonds authorized, issued, sold and delivered hereunder and upon which the registration certificate, manually executed by or on behalf of the Comptroller, has been placed.

**“Interest Payment Date”** means each February 1 and August 1, beginning on the first such date occurring after the Date of Delivery.

**“Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds”** means:

- (1) the Board’s rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from the Financial Assistance Account, together with any evidence of such rights;
- (2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board’s rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance;
- (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance;
- (4) money and assets attributable to Financial Assistance Bonds, including money and assets transferred to the Financial Assistance Account from Development Fund I pursuant to Subsection (b) of Section 49-d-8; and
- (5) money deposited in the Financial Assistance Account pursuant to Subsection (c) of Section 49-d-8.

**“MSRB”** means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

**“Official Statement”** means the Official Statement pertaining to the Series 2022B Bonds, and authorized by Section 8.02 hereof.

**“Owner”** or **“Holder”** means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022B Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

**“Outstanding”** means, when used to modify the bonds issued, authenticated and delivered under this Resolution, the Series 2022B Bonds excluding (i) Series 2022B Bonds which have been exchanged or replaced or otherwise surrendered for cancellation, (ii) Series 2022B Bonds which have been paid, (iii) Series 2022B Bonds which have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided, and (iv) Series 2022B Bonds with respect to which this Resolution has been discharged pursuant to ARTICLE XIII.

**“Paying Agent/Registrar”** means the financial institution named in Section 2.06 or any successor thereto named in accordance with the provisions of Section 2.10.

**“Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement”** means the paying agent agreement between the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, relating to the performance of the duties and responsibilities of the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds.

**“Person”** means any natural person, firm, partnership, association, corporation, or public body.

**“Political Subdivision”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 17.001(6), Texas Water Code.

**“Previously Issued Financial Assistance Bonds”** means bonds previously issued to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account and any refunding bonds issued in replacement thereof.

**“Purchase Agreement”** means collectively one or more bond purchase agreements between the Board and the Underwriters relating to the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds.

**“Refundable Bonds”** means those bonds identified in “SCHEDULE I” to this Resolution.

**“Refunded Bonds”** means those Refundable Bonds selected by the Authorized Representative to be refunded with the proceeds of the Series 2022B Bonds, as identified in the Approval Certificate.

**“Registration Books”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.06.

**“Regulations”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 9.02.

**“Resolution”** means this Resolution authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds and all amendments hereto.

**“Rule”** means SEC Rule 15c2-12, as amended from time to time.

**“Rural Water Assistance Fund”** means the account within the general revenue fund of the State established pursuant to Subchapter R.

**“SEC”** means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

**“Section 49-d-8”** means Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Section 49-d-9**” means Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Section 49-d-11**” means Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution.

“**Series 2022A Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

“**Series 2022B Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of this Resolution and the terms and conditions set forth in the Approval Certificate relating thereto, including any subseries.

“**Series 2022C Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

“**Series 2022D Bonds**” means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

“**State**” means the State of Texas.

“**State Constitution**” means the Constitution of the State.

“**State Participation Account**” means the account described in Section 17.957, Texas Water Code.

“**State Participation Project**” means any project found by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Section 16.131, Texas Water Code.

“**State Treasury**” means the treasury of the State under the administration and supervision of the Comptroller.

“**Subchapter K**” means Subchapter K, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

“**Subchapter Q**” means Subchapter Q, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

“**Subchapter R**” means Subchapter R, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

“**Term Bonds**” means Series 2022B Bonds so designated by the Board herein or in the Approval Certificate.

“**Underwriters**” means the investment banking firms that contract to purchase the Series 2022B Bonds pursuant to the Purchase Agreement and in accordance with Section 8.01.

“**Water Assistance Project**” means any project for which the Board is authorized to provide financial assistance, in accordance with the purposes described by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions or Section 49-d-8, other than (i) an EDAP Project or (ii) a State Participation Project. The term “Water Assistance Project” includes, without limitation, transfers to or deposits to the credit of any state

revolving fund administered by the Board under the provisions of the Texas Water Code, specifically Chapter 15, Texas Water Code, and transfers to or deposits to the credit of the Rural Water Assistance Fund or the Water Infrastructure Fund.

“**Water Infrastructure Fund**” means the special fund in the State Treasury established pursuant to Subchapter Q and administered by the Board.

**Section 1.02 Rules of Construction.**

(a) Designation of Articles, Sections. For all purposes of this Resolution, unless the context requires otherwise, all references to designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions are to the Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this Resolution. The words “herein,” “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Resolution as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

(b) References. Except where the context otherwise requires, terms defined in this Resolution to impart the singular number shall be considered to include the plural number and vice versa. References to any named Person means that party and its successors and assigns. References to any constitutional, statutory or regulatory provision means such provision as it exists on the date this Resolution is adopted by the Board and any future amendments thereto or successor provisions thereof. Any reference to the payment of principal in this Resolution shall be deemed to include the payment of Amortization Installments. References in this Resolution to the FORM OF BOND refer to the form attached to this Resolution as Exhibit A.

**Section 1.03 Interpretations.** The titles and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Resolution have been inserted for convenience of reference only and are not to be considered a part hereof and shall not in any way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

**ARTICLE II**

**THE SERIES 2022B BONDS**

**Section 2.01 Authorization of Bonds.**

(a) Purpose; Maximum Amount. For the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8 and Section 49-d-9, the negotiable general obligation bonds of the State to be known and designated as **STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2022B**, are hereby authorized and may be issued from time to time for the purpose of conserving and developing the water resources of the State, to-wit, (i) by providing funds for the refunding of the Refunded Bonds to achieve debt service savings, and (ii) by providing funds for the payment of expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds. The combined principal amount of all Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022C Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds shall not exceed \$330,000,000.

(b) Delegation of Authority. As authorized by Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, each Authorized Representative, individually and not jointly, is hereby authorized, appointed and designated to act on behalf of the Board in selling and delivering, in one or more series or subseries, the Series 2022B Bonds and carrying out the procedures specified in this Resolution, including determining:

(i) the date for issuance and sale, and the Dated Date, of each series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds;

(ii) the selection of the specific maturities or series (whole or part) of the Refunded Bonds to be refunded;

(iii) the name and any special or additional series designation for each series or subseries of the Series 2022B Bonds;

(iv) the principal amount of each series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds to be sold (subject to the limitations set forth in Section 2.01(a)), as well as the principal amount of each stated maturity within a series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds;

(v) the price at which the Series 2022B Bonds shall be sold;

(vi) the principal amount of Series 2022B Bonds to be sold as current interest bonds, if any; the principal amount of Series 2022B Bonds to be sold as premium capital appreciation bonds, if any;

(vii) the principal amortization schedule for the Series 2022B Bonds (including, without limitation, the designation of any of the maturities of the Series 2022B Bonds as Term Bonds and any Amortization Installments to be deposited to the credit of the Bond Payment Account relating to any Term Bond so designated);

(viii) in accordance with the provisions of ARTICLE V hereof, the redemption features of the Series 2022B Bonds (including any associated premium);

(ix) the rate or rates of interest to be borne by the Series 2022B Bonds;

(x) whether to acquire a Bond Enhancement Agreement in support of all or any portion of the Series 2022B Bonds; and

(xi) any other matters relating to the issuance, sale and delivery of the Series 2022B Bonds; all of which shall be specified in one or more Approval Certificates executed in accordance with the terms hereof and within the parameters set forth in Section 2.01(c) below.

(c) Parameters. The Authorized Representative may exercise any authority granted under Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371 to effect the refunding of the Refundable Bonds so long as on the date the Purchase Agreement is executed:

(i) the net present value savings realized as a result of refunding the Refunded Bonds is not less than two percent (2.00%);

(ii) the maximum maturity of the Series 2022B Bonds issued hereunder shall not exceed the maximum maturity date of the Refunded Bonds being refunded by such series;

(iii) the true interest cost rate applicable to the Series 2022B Bonds shall not exceed 6.0%;

(iv) subject to the limitation specified in Section 2.01(a), the par amount of the Series 2022B Bonds shall not exceed the par amount of the Refunded Bonds being refunded by the Series 2022B Bonds; and

(v) the final series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds issued hereunder must be sold no later than six months after the date of adoption of this Resolution (though the closing of a particular series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds sold in accordance with this provision may occur after such date as long as such closing period is determined by an Authorized Representative to be of reasonable duration).

**Section 2.02 Denominations, Date and Interest Rates.** The Series 2022B Bonds shall be in any Authorized Denomination, shall be numbered consecutively from R-1 upward, shall be dated the date described in the Approval Certificate, and shall be in substantially the form attached hereto as **Exhibit A** with such changes and modifications as are set forth in the Approval Certificate. Interest on the Series 2022B Bonds shall be payable on the Interest Payment Dates. The Series 2022B Bonds shall bear interest at rates as specified in the Approval Certificate. Interest shall be payable in the manner and on the terms provided in this Resolution and the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed in accordance with the terms of the Approval Certificate to reflect the aggregate principal amount of the Series 2022B Bonds sold to the Underwriters.

**Section 2.03 Maturities and Amounts.** The Series 2022B Bonds shall mature on the dates and in the amounts as set forth in the principal amortization schedule contained in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 2.04 Execution of Bonds.** Each Series 2022B Bond shall be executed for and on behalf of the State as a general obligation of the State by having placed thereon the lithographed or printed facsimile or the manual signatures of the Chair of the Board and the Executive Administrator, and the manually impressed or lithographed or printed facsimile seal of the Board. Lithographed or printed facsimile signatures and seal shall have the same effect as if each Series 2022B Bond had been manually signed by such officers, and the seal had been manually impressed on each Series 2022B Bond.

In case any officer whose signature is on a Series 2022B Bond no longer holds such office at the time of authentication, or was the proper officer on the date of execution but not on the nominal date of action, the Series 2022B Bond shall nevertheless be valid.

**Section 2.05 Temporary Bonds.** Pending the preparation of definitive Series 2022B Bonds, the Board may execute and, upon the Board's request, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver, one or more temporary Series 2022B Bonds substantially of the tenor of the definitive Series 2022B Bonds in lieu of which they are delivered, with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations, as evidenced by the execution of such temporary Series 2022B Bonds, as such officers executing such temporary Series 2022B Bonds may determine.

Until exchanged for Series 2022B Bonds in definitive form, such Series 2022B Bonds in temporary form shall be entitled to the benefit and security of this Resolution. The Board, without unreasonable delay, shall prepare, execute and deliver to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and upon the presentation and surrender of the temporary Series 2022B Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor, definitive Series 2022B Bonds of the same maturity,

aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate as the temporary Series 2022B Bonds surrendered. The exchange shall be made without any charge to any owner of Series 2022B Bonds.

**Section 2.06 Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar.**

(a) Appointment. The Board hereby appoints The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as the initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds. The Board shall keep or cause to be kept at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar books or records of the registration and transfer of the Series 2022B Bonds (the “**Registration Books**”), and the Board hereby appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar as its registrar and transfer agent to keep such books or records and make such transfers and registrations under such reasonable regulations as the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe; and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall make such transfers and registrations as herein provided. It shall be the duty of the Paying Agent/Registrar to obtain from the registered owner and record in the Registration Books the address of such registered owner of each Series 2022B Bond to which payments with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds shall be mailed, as herein provided. The Board or its designee shall have the right to inspect the Registration Books during regular business hours of the Paying Agent/Registrar, but otherwise the Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep the Registration Books confidential and, unless otherwise required by law, shall not permit their inspection by any other entity. The Board hereby further appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar to act as the paying agent for paying the principal of and interest on the Series 2022B Bonds, and to act as its agent to convert and exchange or replace Series 2022B Bonds, all as provided in this Resolution. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep proper records of all payments made by the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds, and of all conversions and exchanges of such Series 2022B Bonds, and all replacements of such Series 2022B Bonds, as provided in this Resolution.

(b) Duties. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform such duties as are required of the Paying Agent/Registrar hereunder and under the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement. The Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is hereby authorized to execute and deliver for and on behalf of the Board the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement, which shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with Financial Assistance Bonds previously issued by the Board, with such changes as the Executive Administrator may approve, such approval to be conclusively evidenced by the execution and delivery of such agreement by the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof.

**Section 2.07 Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds.**

(a) Transfer. Registration of each Series 2022B Bond may be transferred on the Registration Books only upon presentation and surrender of such Series 2022B Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for transfer of registration and cancellation, together with proper written instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing the assignment of the Series 2022B Bond, or any portion thereof in any Authorized Denomination, to the assignee or assignees thereof, and the right of such assignee or assignees to have the Series 2022B Bond or any such portion thereof registered in the name of such assignee or assignees. Upon the assignment and transfer of any Series 2022B Bond or any portion thereof, a new substitute Series 2022B Bond or Series 2022B Bonds shall be issued in conversion and exchange therefor in the manner provided in this Section.

(b) Duty of Conversion, Exchange or Replacement. Pursuant to Chapter 1206, and particularly Subchapter B thereof, the duty of conversion and exchange or replacement of Series 2022B Bonds in the manner prescribed herein is hereby imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar. Each Series 2022B Bond may be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022B Bonds in the manner set forth herein. Each Series 2022B Bond issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, to the extent of the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount thereof, as the case may be, upon surrender of such Series 2022B Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with a written request therefor duly executed by the registered owner or the assignee or assignees thereof, or its or their duly authorized attorneys or representatives, with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, at the option of the registered owner or such assignee or assignees, as appropriate, shall be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022B Bonds in the form prescribed in the FORM OF BOND of like series or subseries, in any Authorized Denomination (subject to the requirement hereinafter stated that each substitute Series 2022B Bond shall have a single stated maturity date), as requested in writing by such registered owner or such assignee or assignees, in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount of any Series 2022B Bond or Series 2022B Bonds, as the case may be, so surrendered, and payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be. If a portion of any Series 2022B Bond shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity as provided herein, a substitute Series 2022B Bond or Series 2022B Bonds having the same maturity date, of like series or subseries and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon surrender thereof for cancellation. The Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall cancel all Series 2022B Bonds surrendered for conversion and exchange or replacement. If any Series 2022B Bond or portion thereof is assigned and transferred or converted, each Series 2022B Bond issued in exchange therefor shall have the same principal maturity date, be of like series or subseries and bear or accrue interest at the same rate, as the Series 2022B Bond for which it is being exchanged.

(c) No Additional Actions Necessary. No additional ordinances, orders, or resolutions need be passed or adopted by the Board or any other Person so as to accomplish the foregoing conversion and exchange or replacement of any Series 2022B Bond or portion thereof, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall provide for the printing, execution and delivery of the substitute Series 2022B Bonds in the manner prescribed herein. All Series 2022B Bonds issued in conversion and exchange or replacement of any other Series 2022B Bond or portion thereof (i) shall be issued in fully registered form with the principal of and interest on such Series 2022B Bonds to be payable only to the registered owners thereof, (ii) may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, (iii) may be transferred and assigned, (iv) may be converted and exchanged for other Series 2022B Bonds, shall have the characteristics, (vi) shall be signed and sealed, and (vii) the principal of and interest thereon shall be payable, all if and as provided with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds, and in the manner required or indicated, in ARTICLE II of this Resolution. Each substitute Series 2022B Bond shall bear a letter and/or number to distinguish it from each other Series 2022B Bond. Each fully registered Series 2022B Bond delivered in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022B Bond or portion thereof as permitted or required by any provision of this Resolution shall constitute one of the Series 2022B Bonds for all purposes of this Resolution, and may again be converted and exchanged or replaced.

(d) Authentication Certificate. On each substitute Series 2022B Bond issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022B Bond or Series 2022B Bonds issued under this

Resolution there shall be printed thereon a Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate (the "**Authentication Certificate**"), in the form set forth in the FORM OF BOND. An authorized representative of the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, before the delivery of any such Series 2022B Bond, date and manually sign the Authentication Certificate, and no such Series 2022B Bond shall be deemed to be issued or outstanding unless the Authentication Certificate is so executed. Upon the execution of the Authentication Certificate, the converted and exchanged or replaced Series 2022B Bond shall be valid, incontestable, and enforceable in the same manner and with the same effect as the Initial Bonds which originally were delivered pursuant to this Resolution, approved by the Attorney General, and registered by the Comptroller.

(e) Restrictions on Transfer or Exchange. Neither the Board, the State nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (i) to issue, transfer, or exchange any Series 2022B Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Series 2022B Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (ii) to transfer or exchange any Series 2022B Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; except that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of Series 2022B Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any such Series 2022B Bond which has been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon surrender thereof. In which event, the Paying Agent/Registrar may make such arrangements as it deems appropriate for notation on each new Series 2022B Bond issued in exchange for or upon transfer of the Series 2022B Bond so selected for redemption of an appropriate legend to the effect that such new Series 2022B Bond has been so selected for redemption.

(f) Payment of Fees. The registered owner of any Series 2022B Bond requesting any conversion and exchange shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges for converting and exchanging any such Series 2022B Bond or portion thereof, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, all as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange; except that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Series 2022B Bond or any portion or portions thereof in any Authorized Denomination, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of the unredeemed portion of a Series 2022B Bond which has been redeemed in part prior to maturity, as provided in this Resolution, such fees and charges will be paid by the Board. In addition, the Board hereby covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022B Bonds that it will pay the (i) reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for its services with respect to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Series 2022B Bonds, when due, and (ii) fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for services with respect to the transfer or registration of Series 2022B Bonds, and with respect to the conversion and exchange of Series 2022B Bonds solely to the extent above provided.

**Section 2.08 Owners of Bonds.** The Person in whose name any Series 2022B Bond shall be registered in the Registration Books at any time shall be treated as the absolute owner thereof for all purposes of this Resolution, whether such Series 2022B Bond shall be overdue, and the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary unless otherwise required by law; and payment of, or on account of, the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on any such Series 2022B Bond shall be made only to such registered owner. All such payments shall be valid and effectual to satisfy and discharge the liability upon such Series 2022B Bond to the extent of the sum or sums so paid.

**Section 2.09 Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.**

(a) Replacement. In the event any outstanding Series 2022B Bond is damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall cause to be printed, executed, and delivered, a new Series 2022B Bond of the same principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, maturity date, and interest rate, as the damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022B Bond, in replacement for such Series 2022B Bond in the manner hereinafter provided.

(b) Application for Replacement. Application for replacement of damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022B Bonds shall be made to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022B Bond, the applicant for a replacement Series 2022B Bond shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless from any loss or damage with respect thereto. Also, in every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022B Bond, the applicant shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence to their satisfaction of the loss, theft or destruction of such Series 2022B Bond, as the case may be. In every case of damage or mutilation of a Series 2022B Bond, the applicant shall surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation the Series 2022B Bond so damaged or mutilated.

(c) Payment in Lieu of Replacement. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, in the event any such Series 2022B Bond shall have matured, and no default has occurred which is then continuing in the payment of the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022B Bond, the Board may authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a damaged or mutilated Series 2022B Bond) instead of issuing a replacement Series 2022B Bond, provided security or indemnity is furnished as above provided in this Section.

(d) Payment of Costs. Prior to the issuance of any replacement Series 2022B Bond, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall charge the owner of such Series 2022B Bond with all legal, printing, and other expenses in connection therewith. Every replacement Series 2022B Bond issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section by virtue of the fact that any Series 2022B Bond is lost, stolen or destroyed shall constitute a contractual obligation of the Board whether the lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022B Bond shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Resolution equally and proportionately with any and all other Series 2022B Bonds duly issued under this Resolution.

(e) Legal Authority. In accordance with Chapter 1206, this Section shall constitute authority for the issuance of any such replacement Series 2022B Bond without necessity of further action by the Board of any other Person, and the duty of the replacement of such Series 2022B Bonds is hereby authorized and imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver such Series 2022B Bonds in the form and manner and with the effect, as provided in Section 2.07 for Series 2022B Bonds issued in conversion and exchange for other Series 2022B Bonds.

**Section 2.10 Successor Paying Agent/Registrars.** The Board covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022B Bonds that at all times while the Series 2022B Bonds are outstanding the Board will provide a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company to act as and perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds under this Resolution, and that the Paying Agent/Registrar will be one entity. The Board reserves the right to, and may, at its option, change the Paying Agent/Registrar upon not less than sixty (60) days' written notice to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In the event that the entity at any time acting as Paying Agent/Registrar (or its successor by merger,

acquisition, or other method) should resign or otherwise cease to act as such, the Board covenants that promptly it will appoint a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company which shall be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any state, authorized under such laws to exercise trust powers, subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority, to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Resolution. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the previous Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall transfer and deliver the Registration Books (or a copy thereof), along with all other pertinent books and records relating to the Series 2022B Bonds, to the new Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Board. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board promptly will cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar to each registered owner of the Series 2022B Bonds, by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice also shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar and the Designated Payment/Transfer Office. By accepting the position and performing as such, each Paying Agent/Registrar shall be deemed to have agreed to the provisions of this Resolution, and a certified copy of this Resolution shall be delivered to each Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 2.11 Book-Entry Only System.** The Initial Bonds shall be delivered to the Underwriters against payment received therefrom on the Date of Delivery. The senior managing underwriter named in Section 11.01 hereof, acting as the representative for the Underwriters, shall be required to promptly surrender the Initial Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar for exchange. Series 2022B Bonds issued in exchange therefor shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, as registered owner of the Series 2022B Bonds, and held in the custody of DTC. Unless otherwise requested by DTC, a single certificate will be issued and delivered to DTC for each maturity of the Series 2022B Bonds. Beneficial owners of Series 2022B Bonds will not receive physical delivery of Series 2022B Bond certificates except as provided hereinafter. For so long as DTC shall continue to serve as securities depository for the Series 2022B Bonds as provided herein, all transfers of beneficial ownership interests will be made by book-entry only, and no investor or other party purchasing, selling or otherwise transferring beneficial ownership of Series 2022B Bonds is to receive, hold or deliver any Series 2022B Bond certificate.

With respect to Series 2022B Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation to any DTC Participant or to any Person on whose behalf a DTC Participant holds an interest in the Series 2022B Bonds. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co. or any DTC Participant with respect to any ownership interest in the Series 2022B Bonds, (ii) the delivery to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022B Bonds, as shown on the Registration Books, of any notice with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds, including any notice of redemption, and (iii) the payment to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022B Bonds, as shown in the Registration Books, of any amount with respect to principal or premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022B Bonds.

Replacement Series 2022B Bonds may be issued directly to beneficial owners of Series 2022B Bonds other than DTC, or its nominee, but only in the event that: (i) DTC determines not to continue to act as securities depository for the Series 2022B Bonds (which determination shall become effective no less than ninety (90) days after written notice to such effect to the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar); (ii) the Board has advised DTC of its determination (which determination is conclusive as to DTC and beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds) that DTC is incapable of discharging its duties as securities depository for the Series 2022B Bonds; or (iii) the Board has determined (which determination is conclusive as to DTC

and the beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds) that the interests of the beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds might be adversely affected if such book-entry only system of transfer is continued. Upon occurrence of any of the foregoing events, the Board shall use its best efforts to attempt to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC. If the Board fails to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC, the Board shall cause to be authenticated and delivered replacement Series 2022B Bonds, in certificate form, to the beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds. In the event that the Board makes the determination noted in (ii) or (iii) above (provided that the Board undertakes no obligation to make any investigation to determine the occurrence of any events that would permit the Board to make any such determination), and has made provisions to notify the beneficial owners of Series 2022B Bonds of such determination by mailing an appropriate notice to DTC, it shall cause to be issued replacement Series 2022B Bonds in certificate form to beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds as shown on the records of DTC provided to the Board.

Whenever, during the term of the Series 2022B Bonds, the beneficial ownership thereof is determined by a book entry at DTC, the requirements in this Resolution of holding, delivering or transferring Series 2022B Bonds shall be deemed modified to require the appropriate Person or entity to meet the requirements of DTC as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

If at any time, DTC ceases to hold the Series 2022B Bonds as securities depository, all references herein to DTC shall be of no further force or effect.

**Section 2.12 All Bonds On Parity.** No Financial Assistance Bond shall be entitled to priority of payment over any other Financial Assistance Bond in the application of any moneys made available by law for the payment thereof, irrespective of the fact that some of the Financial Assistance Bonds may have been or may be delivered prior to the delivery of other Financial Assistance Bonds, it being the intent of this Resolution that all Financial Assistance Bonds shall rank equally on parity with each other.

### ARTICLE III

#### **REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY**

**Section 3.01 Limitation on Redemption.** Unless otherwise provided in the Approval Certificate, the Series 2022B Bonds shall be subject to redemption before scheduled maturity only as provided in this Article. Any provision of this Article, including, without limitation, any provisions relating to the method or selection of Series 2022B Bonds for redemption may be modified in an Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.02 Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.** The Series 2022B Bonds shall be subject to optional redemption and mandatory redemption by the Board on behalf of the State prior to maturity in the manner and at the redemption price as described in the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed upon the execution of the Approval Certificate to reflect the redemption provisions, if any, applicable to Bonds as provided for in the Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.03 Partial Redemption.**

(a) The Series 2022B Bonds redeemed in part shall be selected for redemption as described in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) A portion of a single Bond of a denomination greater than an Authorized Denomination may be redeemed but only in a principal amount equal to a minimum Authorized Denomination or any integral multiple thereof. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall treat each minimum Authorized Denomination of such Bond as though it were a single Bond for purposes of selection for redemption.

(c) Upon surrender of any Bond for redemption in part, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver an exchange Bond in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Bond so surrendered.

**Section 3.04 Notice of Redemption.**

(a) The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of the Series 2022B Bonds or any portion thereof. Notice of any redemption of the Series 2022B Bonds shall be given to the registered owners thereof by the Paying Agent/Registrar in the manner provided in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) In addition to the manner of providing notice of redemption of the Series 2022B Bonds as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice of redemption of the Series 2022B Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at least thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date to each registered securities depository and to the MSRB. In addition, in the event of a redemption caused by an advance refunding of the Series 2022B Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall send a second notice of redemption to the Persons specified in the immediately preceding sentence at least thirty (30) days but not more than ninety (90) days prior to the actual redemption date. Any notice sent to the registered securities depositories or the MSRB shall be sent so that they are received at least two (2) days prior to the general mailing, publication or electronic posting date of such notice. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall also send a notice of redemption to the registered owner of any Series 2022B Bonds who has not sent the Series 2022B Bonds in for redemption sixty (60) days after the redemption date. The failure to send, mail or receive any such notice described in this clause (b), or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Series 2022B Bond.

(c) The Board reserves the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022B Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of monies and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying/Agent Registrar instructing the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such monies and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Series 2022B Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

(d) Each redemption notice, whether required in the FORM OF BOND or otherwise by this Resolution, shall contain a description of the Series 2022B Bonds to be redeemed, including the complete name of the Series 2022B Bonds, the series, the date of issue, the interest rate, the maturity date, the CUSIP number, if any, the amounts called of each Series 2022B Bond, the publication and mailing date for

the notice, the date of redemption, the redemption price, the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar and the address at which the Series 2022B Bond may be redeemed including a contact person and telephone number.

(e) All redemption payments made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners of the Series 2022B Bonds shall include a CUSIP number relating to each amount paid to such registered owner.

(f) Should notice to call Series 2022B Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022B Bonds so called for redemption, no Series 2022B Bond shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Series 2022B Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022B Bonds as provided herein or in the Series 2022B Bonds.

**Section 3.05 Payment Upon Redemption.**

(a) By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

(b) Upon presentation and surrender of any Bond called for redemption at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar on or after the date fixed for redemption, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall pay the principal of and accrued interest on such Bond to the date of redemption from the money provided for that purpose.

**Section 3.06 Effect of Redemption.**

(a) Notice of redemption having been given, and due provision having been made for payment, Series 2022B Bonds or portions thereof called for redemption shall become due and payable on the date fixed for redemption; thereafter, such Series 2022B Bonds or portions thereof shall cease to bear interest from the date fixed for redemption, whether or not such Series 2022B are presented and surrendered for payment on such date.

(b) If the Board shall fail to make provision for the payment of all sums due on a redemption date, then any Series 2022B Bond or portion thereof called for redemption shall continue to bear interest until due provision is made for the payment of same by the Board.

**ARTICLE IV**

**FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES**

**Section 4.01 Form of Bond and Certificates.** The form of all Series 2022B Bonds, including the form of the Authentication Certificate and the form of Assignment to be printed on each of the Series 2022B Bonds, and the form of registration certificate of the Comptroller that shall accompany the Initial Bonds, shall be substantially in the form as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, with such appropriate variations, omissions or insertions as are permitted or required by this Resolution or the applicable Approval Certificate. The Series 2022B Bonds may have such letters, numbers or other identifying marks of

identification (including identifying numbers and letters of the Committee on Uniform Securities Identification Procedures of the American Bankers Association) and such legends and endorsements thereon as may, consistent herewith, be approved by the Chair of the Board or the Authorized Representative.

**Section 4.02 Opinion of Bond Counsel.** A copy of the approving opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, bond counsel to the Board in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds, in the form in which it is to be delivered upon payment for the Series 2022B Bonds, either will be printed on the reverse side of or otherwise attached to the Series 2022B Bonds or will be delivered to DTC if the Series 2022B Bonds are held in book-entry only form; and the use of the lithographed or printed facsimile signature of the Executive Administrator to certify to the correctness of such copy is hereby authorized.

**Section 4.03 Printing of Statement of Insurance.** The Board hereby authorizes the printer of the Series 2022B Bonds to print thereon any statement of insurance with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds furnished by any municipal bond insurance company insuring the Series 2022B Bonds.

## ARTICLE V

### **SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS; ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS**

**Section 5.01 General Obligations.** The Financial Assistance Bonds, including the Previously Issued Financial Assistance Bonds, the Series 2022B Bonds, and the Series 2022A Bonds, constitute general obligations of the State pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on each of the Financial Assistance Bonds when due, the full faith and credit of the State and, in the manner herein provided, the resources of the Board are hereby pledged.

**Section 5.02 Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.** It is found, determined and confirmed that Development Fund II has been established in the State Treasury. Pursuant to the Act, Development Fund II shall contain the State Participation Account, the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account and the Financial Assistance Account. In addition, Development Fund II may contain such additional accounts as the Board determines are necessary and convenient for the administration of Development Fund II.

### **Section 5.03 Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds.**

(a) **Section 49-d-8 and Legislative Powers.** All Bond proceeds (other than any proceeds to be used to refund outstanding bonds or other obligations) shall be deposited in the State Treasury to the credit of the Financial Assistance Account. Section 49-d-8 provides that accounts within Development Fund II shall consist of certain identified items, and Subsection (g) of Section 49-d-8 further states that:

“[Section 49-d-8] being intended only to establish a basic framework and not to be a comprehensive treatment of the Texas Water Development Fund II, there is hereby reposed in the legislature full power to implement and effectuate the design and objects of [Section 49-d-8], including the power to delegate such duties, responsibilities, functions, and authority to the Texas Water Development Board as it believes necessary.”

(b) Financial Assistance Account. Consistent with the Act and Section 49-d-8, the “Texas Water Development Fund II Water Financial Assistance Account” (the “**Financial Assistance Account**”) shall receive such moneys as described below, and the moneys therein shall be used as described below:

- (i) Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds designated by the Board as issued for Water Assistance Projects;
- (ii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to Financial Assistance Bonds designated by the Board as issued for Water Assistance Projects;
- (iii) investment income earned on money on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account; and
- (iv) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the credit of the Financial Assistance Account.

Except for those moneys that the Board determines are unavailable for such purpose, moneys on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account shall be used to pay principal and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds. The Board may use moneys on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects in any manner that the Board determines necessary for the administration of the Financial Assistance Account, consistent with the provisions of Section 49-d-8 and the laws of the State, including specifically the Act, and this Resolution. Moneys on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account may also be used for payment of the expenses of the Board incurred in connection with the issuance of the Financial Assistance Bonds and the administration of Development Fund II.

(c) Bond Payment Account. The Board has established in the State Treasury the “Texas Water Development Fund II Water Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account” (the “**Bond Payment Account**”), as a special account into which shall be deposited in the manner, within the time limits, and from sources as prescribed in Sections 5.04 and 5.05, amounts sufficient to pay when due the principal of and premium, if any, and interest payable on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds.

**Section 5.04 Flow of Funds For Debt Service**

(a) Transfers for Payments of Bonds. While and so long as any Financial Assistance Bond is outstanding, on or before the date interest or interest and principal on the Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board shall cause to be transferred, from the moneys available for such purpose in the Financial Assistance Account, to the Bond Payment Account an amount which shall be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for moneys currently on deposit in the Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

(b) Notice to Comptroller of Insufficient Funds. If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within fifteen (15) days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available

in the Financial Assistance Account for transfer to the Bond Payment Account, as described in subsection (a) of this Section, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, it is hereby made the duty of the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof to request the Comptroller to deposit in the Bond Payment Account out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, not later than three (3) days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money shall have been received in the State Treasury, an amount sufficient so that the total amount in the Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

(c) Use of Remaining Moneys. After making the transfers for the benefit of the Bond Payment Account as provided above in this Section, other available moneys remaining in the Financial Assistance Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for all of the purposes for which the Board may expend moneys in the Financial Assistance Account under Section 49-d-8.

(d) Bond Enhancement Agreement. Payments to be made by the Board under the terms of a Bond Enhancement Agreement shall be governed by the resolution adopted by the Board authorizing the execution and delivery of such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

(e) Transfers Upon Board Resolution. Anything contained in this Section to the contrary notwithstanding, money in the Financial Assistance Account representing proceeds from a series of Financial Assistance Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the Financial Assistance Account, or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance shall not be available for transfer to the Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the Bond Payment Account. Proceeds from the Series 2022B Bonds shall be deposited to the Bond Payment Account to the extent specified in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 5.05 Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment.** The Board recognizes the absolute and ultimate obligation of the State to provide during each Fiscal Year all money necessary for the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest become due, out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, in such Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, as set forth in Subsection (e) of Section 49-d-8, as follows:

“... If there is not enough money in any account available to pay the principal of and interest on the general obligation bonds issued for such account, including money to make payments by the Texas Water Development Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to principal of or interest on such bonds, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the state treasury in each fiscal year not otherwise appropriated by this constitution an amount that is sufficient to pay the principal

of and interest on such general obligation bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year or to make bond enhancement payments with respect to those bonds.”

**Section 5.06 Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller.** The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to make the deposits and transfers required under all provisions of the resolutions authorizing the Financial Assistance Bonds, including this Resolution. The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to do all things necessary or convenient to make current funds available at the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds) to pay principal of and interest on all Financial Assistance Bonds as they mature and come due and to provide such current funds as are required for the redemption thereof prior to maturity, or to make any payments under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, all in accordance with their respective authorizing resolutions. It is made the duty of the Comptroller to make such deposits and transfers as are required in instances wherein the Board exercises its option to call Financial Assistance Bonds for payment prior to maturity. Remittances to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds) of money for payment of principal and interest or for redemption of Financial Assistance Bonds must be made in accordance with the provisions hereof.

**Section 5.07 Payment of Bonds.** The Board hereby covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds) for the payment of interest on and principal of the Financial Assistance Bonds, and any premium thereon, becoming due on each interest or principal payment date. The Board further covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the payments, if any, to be made under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to the principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds. In addition, the Board covenants that such moneys shall be forwarded to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement, no later than each such interest or principal payment date.

**Section 5.08 Cooperation with State Officers.** It is the duty of the Board, its officers, employees and agents (who are hereby so authorized and directed) to cooperate with and aid the Comptroller in calculating the amounts to be deposited in, or transferred to, the appropriate accounts and in ascertaining the amounts to be remitted to the place of payment for the Financial Assistance Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

**Section 5.09 Investment of Funds.** All money in Development Fund II and the accounts created therein that is not immediately committed to the purposes thereof or the payment of the Financial Assistance Bonds issued for any such account may be invested by the Board in Eligible Investments, and the Board may sell any Eligible Investment at the governing market rate.

ARTICLE VI

**COVENANTS AND REMEDIES**

**Section 6.01 Special Covenant.** The Board covenants that it will faithfully and promptly deposit into the Financial Assistance Account all money received from the sale of obligations acquired from Political Subdivisions with moneys from the Financial Assistance Account.

**Section 6.02 Covenants to Maintain Tax-Exempt Status.**

(a) Definitions. When used in this Section, the following terms have the following meanings:

“**Closing Date**” means the date on which the Common Issue Bonds are first authenticated and delivered to the initial purchasers against payment therefor.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, effective on or before the Closing Date.

“**Computation Date**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Gross Proceeds**” means any proceeds as defined in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations, and any replacement proceeds as defined in Section 1.148-1(c) of the Regulations, of the Common Issue Bonds.

“**Investment**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Nonpurpose Investment**” means any investment property, as defined in section 148(b) of the Code, in which Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds are invested and which is not acquired to carry out the governmental purposes of the Common Issue Bonds.

“**Rebate Amount**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Regulations**” means any proposed, temporary, or final Income Tax Regulations issued pursuant to Sections 103 and 141 through 150 of the Code, and 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, which are applicable to the Common Issue Bonds. Any reference to any specific Regulation shall also mean, as appropriate, any proposed, temporary or final Income Tax Regulation designed to supplement, amend or replace the specific Regulation referenced.

“**Yield**” of

(i) any Investment has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-5 of the Regulations; and

(ii) the Common Issue Bonds has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-4 of the Regulations.

(b) Not to Cause Interest to Become Taxable. The Board shall not use, permit the use of, or omit to use Gross Proceeds or any other amounts (or any property the acquisition, construction or

improvement of which is to be financed directly or indirectly with Gross Proceeds) in a manner which if made or omitted, respectively, would cause the interest on any Common Issue Bond to become includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owner thereof for federal income tax purposes. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, unless and until the Board receives a written opinion of counsel nationally recognized in the field of municipal bond law to the effect that failure to comply with such covenant will not adversely affect the exemption from federal income tax of the interest on any Common Issue Bond, the Board shall comply with each of the specific covenants in this Section.

(c) No Private Use or Private Payments. Except as permitted by section 141 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall at all times prior to the last stated maturity of the Common Issue Bonds:

(1) take any action necessary to assure that state or local governments exclusively own, operate and possess all property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed or refinanced directly or indirectly with Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds (including property financed or refinanced with Gross Proceeds of the Refunded Bonds), and not use or permit the use of such Gross Proceeds (including all contractual arrangements with terms different than those applicable to the general public) or any property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds in any activity carried on by any person or entity (including the United States or any agency, department and instrumentality thereof) other than a state or local government, unless such use is solely as a member of the general public; and

(2) take any action necessary to assure that state or local governments do not directly or indirectly impose or accept any charge or other payment by any person or entity who is treated as using Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds or any property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed or refinanced directly or indirectly with such Gross Proceeds, unless either (i) such use is merely as a member of the general public on the same terms as all other members of the general public, except possibly any rate differences corresponding to amount of use or (ii) such charge or payment consists of taxes of general application within the state or local governments or interest earned on investments acquired with such Gross Proceeds pending application for their intended purposes.

(d) No Private Loan. Except to the extent permitted by section 141 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not use Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds and shall take any action necessary to assure that Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds are not used to make or finance loans to any person or entity other than a state or local government. For purposes of the foregoing covenant, such Gross Proceeds are considered to be "loaned" to a person or entity if: (1) property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds is sold or leased to such person or entity in a transaction which creates a debt for federal income tax purposes; (2) capacity in or service from such property is committed to such person or entity under a take-or-pay, output or similar contract or arrangement; or (3) indirect benefits, or burdens and benefits of ownership, of such Gross Proceeds or any property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds are otherwise transferred in a transaction which is the economic equivalent of a loan.

(e) Allocation of, and Limitation on, Expenditures for Loans to Political Subdivisions. The Board shall account for the expenditure of the proceeds from the sale of the Common Issue Bonds and any investment earnings thereon to be used for the purposes described in Section 2.01 on its books and records in accordance with the requirements of the Code. The Board agrees to obtain the advice of nationally-recognized bond counsel if such expenditure fails to comply with the foregoing to assure that such expenditure will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Common Issue Bonds.

(f) Disposition of Loans to Political Subdivisions. Loans to Political Subdivisions will not be sold or otherwise disposed in a transaction resulting in the receipt by the Board of cash or other compensation, unless the Board obtains an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel that such sale or other disposition will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Common Issue Bonds, the proceeds of which were used to make or refinance the making of such loans. The Board shall assure that Political Subdivisions, or any related persons thereto, will be prohibited from purchasing the Common Issue Bonds or a portion thereof in an amount related to the amount of the loan to be acquired by the Board from any such Political Subdivision.

(g) Not to Invest at Higher Yield. Except to the extent permitted by section 148 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not at any time prior to the final stated maturity of the Common Issue Bonds directly or indirectly invest Gross Proceeds in any Investment, if as a result of such investment the Yield of any Investment acquired with Gross Proceeds, whether then held or previously disposed of, exceeds the Yield of the Common Issue Bonds.

(h) Not Federally Guaranteed. Except to the extent permitted by section 149(b) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not take or omit to take any action which would cause the Common Issue Bonds to be federally guaranteed within the meaning of section 149(b) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder.

(i) Information Report. The Board shall timely file the information required by section 149(e) of the Code with the Secretary of the Treasury on Form 8038-G or such other form and in such place as the Secretary may prescribe.

(j) Rebate of Arbitrage Profits. Except to the extent otherwise provided in section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder:

(1) The Board shall account for all Gross Proceeds (including all receipts, expenditures and investments thereof) on its books of account separately and apart from all other funds (and receipts, expenditures and investments thereof) and shall retain all records of accounting for at least six years after the day on which the last outstanding Common Issue Bond is discharged. However, to the extent permitted by law, the Board may commingle Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds with other money of the Board, provided that the Board separately accounts for each receipt and expenditure of Gross Proceeds and the obligations acquired therewith.

(2) Not less frequently than each Computation Date, the Board shall calculate the Rebate Amount in accordance with rules set forth in section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder. The Board shall maintain such calculations with its official transcript of proceedings relating to the issuance of the Common Issue Bonds until six years after the final Computation Date.

(3) As additional consideration for the purchase of the Common Issue Bonds by the purchasers thereof and the loan of the money represented thereby and in order to induce such purchase by measures designed to insure the excludability of the interest thereon from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, the Board shall pay to the United States the amount that when added to the future value of previous rebate payments made for the Common Issue Bonds equals (i) in the case of a Final Computation Date as defined in Section 1.148-3(e)(2) of the Regulations, one hundred percent (100%) of the Rebate Amount on such date; and (ii) in the case of any other Computation Date, ninety percent (90%) of the Rebate Amount on such date. In all cases, the rebate payments shall be made at the times, in the installments, to the place and in the manner as is or may be required by section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, and shall be accompanied by Form 8038-T or such other forms and information as is or may be required by Section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder. In order to facilitate compliance with this covenant, a "Rebate Fund" is hereby established by the Board for the sole benefit of the United States of America, and such fund shall not be subject to the claim of any other Person, including, without limitation, any bondholder. The Rebate Fund is established for the additional purpose of compliance with section 148 of the Code.

(4) The Board shall exercise reasonable diligence to assure that no errors are made in the calculations and payments required by paragraphs (2) and (3), and if an error is made, to discover and promptly correct such error within a reasonable amount of time thereafter (and in all events within one hundred eighty (180) days after discovery of the error), including payment to the United States of any additional Rebate Amount owed to it, interest thereon, and any penalty imposed under Section 1.148-3(h) of the Regulations.

(k) Not to Divert Arbitrage Profits. Except to the extent permitted by section 148 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not, at any time prior to the earlier of the stated maturity or final payment of the Common Issue Bonds, enter into any transaction that reduces the amount required to be paid to the United States pursuant to Subsection (j) of this Section because such transaction results in a smaller profit or a larger loss than would have resulted if the transaction had been at arm's length and had the Yield of the Common Issue Bonds not been relevant to either party.

(l) Elections. The Board hereby directs and authorizes the Executive Administrator and the Chief Financial Officer of the Board, either or any combination of them, to make elections permitted or required pursuant to the provisions of the Code or the Regulations, as they deem necessary or appropriate in connection with the Common Issue Bonds, in the Certificate as to Tax Exemption or similar or other appropriate certificate, form or document.

(m) Common Issue Bonds Not Hedge Bonds.

(1) At the time the original bonds refunded by the Common Issue Bonds were issued, the Board reasonably expected that at least 85% of the spendable proceeds of such bonds would be spent within three years after such bonds were issued.

(2) Not more than 50% of the proceeds of the original bonds refunded by the Common Issue Bonds were invested in Nonpurpose Investments having a substantially guaranteed Yield for a period of 4 years or more.

(n) Current Refunding. The Series 2022B Bonds are being issued exclusively to pay and discharge in full the Refunded Bonds and such payment of the Refunded Bonds will occur within ninety (90) days after the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds.

**Section 6.03 Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts**. The Board covenants that it will maintain within the funds and accounts described in Section 5.03 such accounts and subaccounts as the Board, in cooperation with the Comptroller, determines necessary for the convenient and efficient administration of such funds and accounts so as not to commingle moneys derived from the issuance of or dedicated to the payment of bonds or other obligations issued by the Board, the interest on which is exempt from federal income taxation under the applicable provisions of the Code.

**Section 6.04 Remedies of Bondholders**. All rights available to the owners of the Financial Assistance Bonds under the Constitution and the laws of the State, including, without limitation, Section 17.970, Texas Water Code, to compel the performance of their official duties by the Board, its officers and employees, and by other officers of the State to the end that the principal of and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds may be paid promptly, are hereby recognized.

**Section 6.05 Bond Enhancement Agreements**. Pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 17.954, Texas Water Code, the Board reserves the right at any time and from time to time to enter into one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements that the Board hereafter determines to be necessary or appropriate to place the obligation of the Board, as represented by the Series 2022B Bonds, in whole or in part, on the interest rate, currency, cash flow, or other basis desired by the Board.

## ARTICLE VII

### SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

#### **Section 7.01 Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners**.

(a) Amendments Requiring Consent. The registered owners of Series 2022B Bonds aggregating in principal amount 51% of the aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of the Series 2022B Bonds at the time outstanding (but not including in any case Series 2022B Bonds which may then be held or owned by or for the account of the Board) shall have the right from time to time to approve an amendment of this Resolution which may be deemed necessary or desirable by the Board; *provided, however*, that nothing herein contained shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions contained in this Resolution or in the Series 2022B Bonds so as to:

- (i) make any change in the maturity of any of the Series 2022B Bonds;
- (ii) reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the Series 2022B Bonds;
- (iii) reduce the principal amount or maturity amount, as applicable, payable on any of the Series 2022B Bonds;

(iv) modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on or maturity amount of, as the case may be, any Series 2022B Bond, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;

(v) change the minimum percentage of the principal amount or maturity amount of the Series 2022B Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment; or

(vi) affect the rights of the registered owners of less than all of the Series 2022B Bonds then outstanding;

unless such amendment or amendments be approved by the registered owners of all of the Series 2022B Bonds at the time outstanding.

(b) Notice. If at any time the Board shall desire to amend this Resolution under this Section, the Board shall cause notice of the proposed amendment to be published in a financial newspaper or journal published in The City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas, once during each calendar week for at least four (4) successive calendar weeks. Such notice shall briefly set forth the nature of the proposed amendment and shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board and the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for inspection by all registered owners of Series 2022B Bonds. Such publication is not required, however, if notice in writing is given to each registered owner.

(c) Adoption of Amendatory Resolution. Whenever at any time, within one (1) year from the date of this publication of said notice or other service of written notice, the Board shall receive an instrument or instruments executed by the registered owners of at least 51% in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of Series 2022B Bonds then outstanding, which instrument or instruments shall refer to the proposed amendment described in said notice and which specifically consent to and approve such amendment in substantially the form of the copy thereof on file with the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board may adopt the amendatory resolution in substantially the same form.

(d) Effectiveness of Consents. Any consent given by the registered owner of a Series 2022B Bond pursuant to the provisions of this Resolution shall be irrevocable for a period of six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of the notice provided for in this Resolution, and shall be conclusive and binding upon all future registered owners of the same Series 2022B Bond during such period. Such consent may be revoked at any time after six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of such notice by the registered owner who gave such consent, or by a successor in title, by filing notice of such revocation with the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Board, but such revocation shall not be effective if the registered owners of 51% in aggregate principal amount and maturity amount, as applicable, of the Series 2022B Bonds outstanding as in this Section defined have, prior to the attempted revocation, consented to and approved the amendment.

(e) Proof of Ownership. For the purposes of this Section, proof of ownership of any Series 2022B Bond shall be established by the registration of any such Series 2022B Bond on the Registration Books kept and maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar.

#### **Section 7.02 Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners**

(a) Amendments Not Requiring Consent. The foregoing provisions of this Article notwithstanding, the Board may, without prior notice to or the consent of the registered owners, pursuant to an amendatory resolution, from time to time:

(i) impose conditions or restrictions additional to, but not in diminution of, those contained in this Resolution, respecting the issuance of Financial Assistance Bonds;

(ii) undertake covenants additional to but not inconsistent with those contained in this Resolution;

(iii) correct any ambiguity or correct or supplement any inconsistent or defective provision contained in this Resolution or any amendatory resolution;

(iv) adopt amendments to this Resolution that provide for the payment of principal of and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds or the payment of administrative expenses of the Board from Bond proceeds; or

(v) adopt amendments to this Resolution (including specifically, without limitation, amendments under authority of Section 7.02 and 9.04) that, in the opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board, do not adversely affect the registered owners.

(b) Specific Amendments not Requiring Consent. In addition to the foregoing, the Board expressly reserves the right, without prior notice to or consent from the registered owners of the Financial Assistance Bonds, to amend the provisions of ARTICLE VII of this Resolution to reflect subsequent amendments to the State Constitution and the Act, including, without limitation, amendments altering:

(i) the administration of Development Fund II; or

(ii) the accounts within Development Fund II; or

(iii) the deposit or application of moneys received by the Board as repayments of loans to Political Subdivisions and interest on those loans, or proceeds from the sale, transfer or lease of facilities held for any account within Development Fund II; or

(iv) the use of the proceeds of the Financial Assistance Bonds; or

(v) the rights, duties and obligations of the Comptroller as specified in ARTICLE VII;

or

(vi) the procedure for payment of the Financial Assistance Bonds; or

(vii) the payment of expenses of administering Development Fund II and other authorized expenses of the Board; or

(viii) the administration of the Water Infrastructure Fund;

*provided, however,* that such amendments to this Resolution can be made only if:

(1) the Board receives an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that such amendments comply with the Act, that the Financial Assistance Bonds continue to be general obligations of the State and the State Constitution provides for appropriation out of the first money coming into the State Treasury in each Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, of an amount

sufficient to pay the principal of or interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds that mature or become payable during that Fiscal Year, to the extent 'the same are not otherwise paid from funds pledged to their payment;

(2) bond counsel acceptable to the Board renders an opinion substantially to the effect that any such amendment will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on any tax-exempt Financial Assistance Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes; and

(3) each nationally-recognized securities rating agency that issued a rating at the time the Financial Assistance Bonds were initially delivered to the underwriters thereof and that has a then existing rating thereon confirms in writing that subsequent to any such amendment, the Financial Assistance Bonds will continue to be rated as general obligation bonds of the State.

(c) Notice. If the Board so amends this Resolution as provided in subsection (b) above, it shall cause notice of such amendment to be published one (1) time in a financial newspaper or journal of general circulation in the City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas. Such notice shall contain a summary of the amendatory language, recite that the conditions set forth in clauses (A), (B) and (C) of subsection (b) have been satisfied, and recite the effective date of such amendment. Such notice shall be published within thirty (30) days of the effective date of such amendment as set forth in such notice. Such notice shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board for inspection. Such publication is not required, however, if written notice is given to each registered owner of the Financial Assistance Bonds.

**Section 7.03 Effect of Amendatory Resolutions**. Upon the adoption of any amendatory resolution pursuant to the provisions of this Section, this Resolution shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with such amendatory resolution, and the respective rights, duties and obligations of the Board under this Resolution and all the registered owners of outstanding Series 2022B Bonds shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder, subject in all respects to such amendments.

**Section 7.04 Bonds May Bear Notation**. Series 2022B Bonds authenticated and delivered after the execution of any amendatory resolution pursuant to this Article may bear a notation in form approved by the Paying Agent/Registrar as to any matter provided for in such amendatory resolution. If the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar shall so determine, new Series 2022B Bonds so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, to any such amendatory resolution may be prepared and executed by the Board and authenticated and delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in exchange for the Series 2022B Bonds then outstanding.

## ARTICLE VIII

### **PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS**

#### **Section 8.01 Issuance and Sale of Bonds**

(a) Approval Certificate. Each Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall approve, execute and deliver one or more Approval Certificates, which completed and executed Approval Certificates shall evidence the sale (including the date of such sale) of a series or

subseries of Series 2022B Bonds by the Board to the Underwriters. The Approval Certificate shall contain a finding substantially to the effect that based on recommendations made to the Authorized Representative by the financial advisor to the Board, the terms of the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds were the most advantageous to the Board reasonably obtained, and the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds is in the best interests of the Board.

(b) Underwriters. Ramirez & Co., Inc. is hereby designated as the senior managing underwriter for the Underwriters. The Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall select such additional investment banking firms as deemed appropriate to assure that the Series 2022B Bonds are sold on terms advantageous to the Board.

(c) Purchase Agreement. The Purchase Agreement shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of Financial Assistance Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance Water Assistance Projects. A Purchase Agreement shall contain the terms of the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds, as negotiated by the Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof. At the direction of an Authorized Representative, Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022C Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds may be sold, but are not required to be sold, pursuant to the terms of a common Purchase Agreement. Each Authorized Representative is hereby authorized and directed to execute the Purchase Agreement for and on behalf of the Board. An Authorized Representative's approval of a Purchase Agreement shall be conclusively evidenced by the execution thereof. It is hereby officially found, determined, and declared that the terms of this sale were and are to be negotiated under authority granted by Section 17.955, Texas Water Code.

(d) Ratings. No Series 2022B Bonds shall be delivered unless prior to delivery, the particular series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds shall have been rated by a nationally recognized rating agency for municipal securities in one of the four highest rating categories for long term obligations, as required by Chapter 1371.

(e) Payment of Attorney General Fee. The Board hereby authorizes the payment of the fee of the Attorney General for the examination of the proceedings relating to the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds, in the amount determined in accordance with the provisions of Section 1202.004, Texas Government Code.

(f) Effect of Determination Made by Authorized Representative. A finding or determination made by an Authorized Representative acting under the authority delegated thereto by this Resolution with respect to all matters relating to the issuance and sale of the Series 2022B Bonds shall have the same force and effect as a finding or determination made by the Board.

**Section 8.02 Official Statement.** Prior to execution of a Purchase Agreement, the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a preliminary Official Statement to be prepared for distribution by the Underwriters to prospective purchasers of the Series 2022B Bonds sold under the terms of such Purchase Agreement, such document to be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of Financial Assistance Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance Water Assistance Projects, with such changes and completions as the Authorized Representative may deem necessary or appropriate to enable the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, to deem the preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, except for such omissions as are permitted by the Rule. Within seven (7) business days after the execution of a Purchase Agreement, the

Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a final Official Statement to be provided to the Underwriters in compliance with the Rule and the rules of the MSRB.

**Section 8.03 Custody of Bonds.** After the Initial Bonds have been executed, it shall be the duty of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, to deliver the Initial Bonds to the Attorney General for examination and approval. After the Initial Bonds shall have been approved by the Attorney General they shall be delivered to the Comptroller for registration. The Initial Bonds thus registered shall remain in the custody of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, or subject to the order of the Chair, until the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds to the Underwriters on the Date of Delivery.

**Section 8.04 Use of Bond Proceeds.** Proceeds from the sale of Series 2022B Bonds shall, promptly upon receipt by the Board, be deposited to the credit of the funds and accounts described in this Resolution and applied in the manner specified in the applicable Approval Certificate signed by an Authorized Representative.

## ARTICLE IX

### CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING

#### **Section 9.01 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller.**

(a) General. The Board and the legal and beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds are third-party beneficiaries of the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. The Comptroller is required to observe the Continuing Disclosure Agreement in respect of any issue of "Securities," as defined in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement (which include the Series 2022B Bonds), for so long as the State remains an "obligated person" as defined in the Rule. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the MSRB as described below.

(b) Annual Reports of the State. Pursuant to the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The Comptroller is not obligated to provide such financial and operating data more frequently than on an annual basis. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the State of the general type included in the Bond Appendix. The Comptroller will update and provide this information within 195 days after the end of each fiscal year of the State. The updated information provided by the Comptroller need not be audited, but the Comptroller will provide audited financial statements of the State prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for governmental entities when the State Auditor completes its statutorily required audit of such financial statements. The accounting principles pursuant to which such financial statements must be prepared may be changed from time to time to comply with State law.

(c) Event Notices of the Comptroller. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller has also agreed to provide notice to the MSRB of any of the following events, with respect, to the Series 2022B Bonds, in a timely manner and not more than ten (10) business days after occurrence of the event:

(i) incurrence of a Financial Obligation of the State, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which affect security holders, if material; and

(ii) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which reflect financial difficulties.

(d) Change in State Fiscal Year. The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. If the State changes its fiscal year, the Comptroller will notify the MSRB of the change prior to the next date by which the Comptroller otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as described above.

**Section 9.02 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board.**

(a) Annual Reports of the Board. The Board shall provide annually to the MSRB, within 195 days after the end of each Fiscal Year ending in or after 2022, financial information and operating data with respect to the Board and the State of the general type included in Tables 1 and 2 and Appendix B of the final Official Statement authorized by **Section 8.02** hereof, being the information described in **Exhibit B** hereto. Any financial statements so to be provided shall be (1) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in **Exhibit B** hereto and (2) audited, if the Board or the State, as appropriate, commissions an audit of such statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. If audited financial statements are not so provided, then the Board shall provide unaudited financial statements within the required time for the applicable Fiscal Year to the MSRB, and audited financial statements when and if audited financial statements become available.

(b) Event Notices of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner not in excess of ten (10) Business Days after the occurrence of any of the following events with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds:

- (1) Principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) Non-payment related defaults, if material;
- (3) Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
- (4) Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
- (5) Substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) Adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Series 2022B Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Series 2022B Bonds;
- (7) Modifications to rights of holders of the Series 2022B Bonds, if material;

- (8) Series 2022B Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
- (9) Defeasances;
- (10) Release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2022B Bonds, if material;
- (11) Rating changes;
- (12) Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Board;
- (13) The consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Board or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and
- (14) Appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or change in the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar, if material.

As used in clause 12 above, the phrase “bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event” means the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Board in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, or if jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the Board and officials or officers of the Board in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner, of any failure by the Board to provide financial information or operating data in accordance with Section 9.02(a) by the time required by such Section.

(c) Change in Board Fiscal Year. If the Board changes its Fiscal Year, it will notify the MSRB of the change (and of the date of the new Fiscal Year end) prior to the next date by which the Board otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data pursuant to this Section.

**Section 9.03 Incorporation by Reference.** The financial information and operating data to be provided pursuant to this Section may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document (including an official statement or other offering document, if it is available from the MSRB) that theretofore has been provided to the MSRB or filed with the SEC. All filings shall be made electronically, in the format specified by the MSRB.

**Section 9.04 Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments.** The Board shall be obligated to observe and perform the covenants specified in this this Article for so long as, but only for so long as, the Board or the State remains an “obligated person” with respect to the Series 2022B Bonds within the meaning of the Rule, except that the Board in any event will give the notice required by Section 9.02(b) of any Series 2022B Bond calls and defeasance that cause the Board and the State to be no longer “obligated persons”.

The provisions of this Article are for the sole benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds, and nothing in this Article, express or implied, shall give any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy, or claim hereunder to any other Person. The Board undertakes to provide only the financial information, operating data, financial statements, and notices which it has expressly agreed to provide pursuant to this Article and does not hereby undertake to provide any other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of the Board's or the State's financial results, condition, or prospects or hereby undertake to update any information provided in accordance with this Article or otherwise, except as expressly provided herein. The Board does not make any representation or warranty concerning such information or its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Series 2022B Bonds at any future date.

UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL THE BOARD BE LIABLE TO THE HOLDER OR BENEFICIAL OWNER OF ANY SERIES 2022B BOND OR ANY OTHER PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR DAMAGES RESULTING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM ANY BREACH BY THE BOARD, WHETHER NEGLIGENT OR WITHOUT FAULT ON ITS PART, OF ANY COVENANT SPECIFIED IN THIS ARTICLE, BUT EVERY RIGHT AND REMEDY OF ANY SUCH PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR OR ON ACCOUNT OF ANY SUCH BREACH SHALL BE LIMITED TO AN ACTION FOR MANDAMUS OR SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE.

All documents provided to the MSRB shall be accompanied by identifying information, as prescribed by the MSRB.

No default by the Board in observing or performing its obligations under this Article shall constitute a breach of or default under this Resolution for purposes of any other provision of this Resolution.

Nothing in this Article is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive, or otherwise limit the duties of the Board or the State under federal and State securities laws.

Should the Rule be amended to obligate the Board to make filings with or provide notices to entities other than the MSRB, the Board agrees to undertake such obligation in accordance with the Rule as amended.

The provisions of this Article may be amended by the Board from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the Board or the State, but only if (1) the provisions of this Article, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Series 2022B Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022B Bonds in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount (or any greater amount required by any other provision of this Resolution that authorizes such an amendment) of the outstanding Series 2022B Bonds consent to such amendment or (b) a Person that is unaffiliated with the Board and the State (such as nationally-recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022B Bonds. If the Board so amends the provisions of this Article, it shall include with any amended financial information or operating data next provided in accordance with Section 9.02(a) an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information or operating data so provided. The Board may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure

requirement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Series 2022B Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022B Bonds.

## ARTICLE X

### DEFEASANCE

**Section 10.01 Series 2022B Bonds Deemed Paid.** Any Series 2022B Bond and the interest thereon shall be deemed to be paid, retired and no longer outstanding (a “Defeased Bond”), except to the extent hereinafter provided in this Article, when payment of the principal of such Series 2022B Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date (whether such due date be by reason of maturity or otherwise) either (i) shall have been made or caused to be made in accordance with the terms thereof, or (ii) shall have been provided for on or before such due date by irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other similar instrument (the “**Future Escrow Agreement**”) for such payment (1) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such payment or (2) Defeasance Securities that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. At such time as a Series 2022B Bond shall be deemed to be a Defeased Bond hereunder, as aforesaid, such Series 2022B Bond and the interest thereon shall no longer be secured by, payable from, or entitled to the benefits of, the Financial Assistance Account, and such principal and interest shall be payable solely from such money or Defeasance Securities. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, it is hereby provided that any determination not to redeem Defeased Bonds that is made in conjunction with the payment arrangements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) above shall not be irrevocable; provided, that in the proceedings providing for such payment arrangements, the Board (1) expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (2) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the payment arrangements; and (3) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

**Section 10.02 Investment in Defeasance Securities.** Any moneys so deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar may at the written direction of the Board be invested in Defeasance Securities, maturing in the amounts and times as hereinbefore set forth, and all income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar that is not required for the payment of the Series 2022B Bonds and interest thereon, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be turned over to the Board, or deposited as directed in writing by the Board. Any Future Escrow Agreement pursuant to which the money and/or Defeasance Securities are held for the payment of Defeased Bonds may contain provisions permitting the investment or reinvestment of such moneys in Defeasance Securities or the substitution of other Defeasance Securities upon the satisfaction of the requirements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) of Section 10.01. All income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar which is not required for the payment of the Defeased Bonds, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be remitted to the Board or deposited as directed in writing by the Board.

**Section 10.03 Paying Agent/Registrar Services.** Until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for such

Defeased Bonds the same as if they had not been defeased, and the Board shall make proper arrangements to provide and pay for such services as required by this Resolution.

**Section 10.04 Selection of Series 2022B Bonds for Defeasance.** In the event that the Board elects to defease less than all of the principal amount of Series 2022B Bonds of a maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall select, or cause to be selected, such amount of Series 2022B Bonds by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate and consistent with the terms of this Resolution.

## ARTICLE XI

### **MATTERS RELATING TO THE REFUNDED BONDS**

**Section 11.01 Purpose for Refunding.** The Board hereby finds that the refunding of the Refunded Bonds is in the public interest as it enables the Board to produce a net present value savings. An Authorized Representative shall execute and deliver an Approval Certificate setting forth the amount of net present value savings realized as a result of the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, evidencing that the minimum savings threshold established in Section 2.01(c) of this Resolution has been met.

#### **Section 11.02 Escrow Agreement.**

The Escrow Agreement, in substantially the form attached to the Approval Certificate, is hereby approved by the Board, and the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is hereby authorized to execute and deliver the same on behalf of the Board. The redemption, discharge and defeasance of the Refunded Bonds shall be effected pursuant to the terms and provisions of the Escrow Agreement in substantially the form approved in the Approval Certificate, the terms and provisions of which are hereby approved, subject to such insertions, additions and modifications as shall be necessary (a) to provide that the sufficiency of the cash and/or escrowed securities deposited to be held pursuant to the Escrow Agreement shall be certified as to mathematical accuracy in a sufficiency certificate or a report prepared by a nationally recognized firm acceptable to the Board, its financial advisors and the Escrow Agent with respect to the adequacy of the escrowed securities referred to in the Escrow Agreement to pay, when due, the principal of, interest on, and any call premium requirements on the Refunded Bonds, (b) to comply with all applicable laws and regulations relating to the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, (c) to carry out the other intents and purposes of this Resolution, and (d) to comply with the terms set forth in the Approval Certificate.

#### **Section 11.03 Purchase of United States Treasury Obligations.**

In order to assure the purchase of any escrowed securities to be held pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is hereby authorized to make necessary arrangements for the subscription and purchase of, such obligations of the United States of America, or other securities or investments as may be permitted under State law and applicable federal tax law, in such amounts, maturities, and bearing interest at such rates as may be provided for in the sufficiency certificate or report referred to in Section 11.02, and the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is authorized, either prior to Closing or after the date thereof, to execute any and all subscriptions, purchase contracts, forward purchase contracts, commitments, letters of authorization, and other documents necessary or desirable, in the judgment of the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative, to effect the foregoing, and any actions heretofore taken by the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative for such purpose are hereby ratified and approved.

**Section 11.04 Redemption of Refunded Bonds.** Upon issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds, the Refunded Bonds identified in the Approval Certificate to be redeemed are hereby declared to be called for redemption on the redemption date or dates identified in the Approval Certificate, consistent with the provisions set forth in the respective proceedings authorizing their issuance with respect to the redemption of bonds at the option of the Board. In connection with the prior redemption of any of the Refunded Bonds as may be provided for in the Approval Certificate, the Authorized Representative is hereby directed to coordinate with the Escrow Agent to give notice of such redemption, in substantially the form attached to the Approval Certificate, in accordance with the applicable terms of the resolution that authorized such series of Refunded Bonds. In addition, the Authorized Representative is hereby directed to take such steps as may be necessary to provide registered owners of the Refunded Bonds notice that the obligations owned thereby have been escrowed to maturity or prior redemption.

**Section 11.05 Escrow Fund.**

An Escrow Fund may be established pursuant to an Approval Certificate to be maintained by the Escrow Agent for application as provided in the Escrow Agreement.

**Section 11.06 Transfer of Funds.**

The Board shall allocate remaining money in each of the interest and sinking funds and/or project funds for each series of Refunded Bonds to the series or subseries of Series 2022B Bonds which refund such bonds and transfer such funds to the applicable interest and sinking fund or the applicable Escrow Fund as may be determined by the Board pursuant to federal income tax law requirements.

**ARTICLE XII**

**MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**Section 12.01 Further Procedures.** The Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the General Counsel, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or any other officers of the Board and each of them, shall be and they are hereby expressly authorized, empowered and directed from time to time and at any time to do and perform all such acts and things and to execute, acknowledge and deliver in the name and under the seal of the Board and on behalf of the Board all agreements, instruments, or such other documents, whether mentioned herein or not, as may be necessary or desirable in order to carry out the terms and provisions of this Resolution, and the initial sale and delivery of the Series 2022B Bonds. In addition, prior to the initial delivery of the Series 2022B Bonds, the Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or the General Counsel of the Board and the Board's Bond Counsel are hereby authorized and directed to approve any technical changes or corrections to this Resolution or to any of the instruments authorized and approved by this Resolution: (i) in order to cure any technical ambiguity, formal defect, or omission in the Resolution or such other document; or (ii) as requested by the Attorney General or his representative to obtain the approval of the Series 2022B Bonds by the Attorney General and if such officer or counsel determines that such ministerial changes are consistent with the intent and purpose of the Resolution, which determination shall be final. In the event that any officer of the Board whose signature shall appear on any document shall cease to be such officer before the delivery of such document, such signature nevertheless shall be valid and sufficient for all purposes the same as if such officer had remained in office until such delivery.

**Section 12.02 Open Meeting; Notice.** It is hereby officially found and determined that the meeting at which this Resolution is adopted is open to the public as required by law at all times during which this Resolution and the subject matter thereof are discussed, considered and formally acted upon; and reasonable notice of this meeting was delivered to the Secretary of State of the State, as required by Chapter 551.

**Section 12.03 Prior Actions.** All actions taken by the Board authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds are in all things approved, ratified and confirmed, except that to the extent such actions conflict with any provision of this Resolution, the terms and provisions of this Resolution shall control and prevail.

**Section 12.04 Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge.** Chapter 1208 applies to the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds and the pledge of the credit of the State made pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and such pledge is therefore valid, effective, and perfected. If State law is amended at any time while the Series 2022B Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that such pledge is to be subject to the filing requirements of Chapter 9, then in order to preserve to the registered owners of the Series 2022B Bonds the perfection of the security interest in said pledge, the Board agrees to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under State law to comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9 and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

ADOPTED AND APPROVED this February 2, 2022.

---

Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

**SCHEDULE I**

**LIST OF REFUNDABLE BONDS**

State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2012G

**LIST OF EXHIBITS**

<b>Exhibit A</b>	Form of Bond
<b>Exhibit B</b>	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board

**EXHIBIT A**

**FORM OF BOND**

NO. \_\_\_\_\_

\$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
 STATE OF TEXAS  
 WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BOND  
 SERIES 2022B<sup>1</sup>

MATURITY DATE

INTEREST RATE  
 %

DATED DATE  
 \_\_\_\_\_, 2022

CUSIP

Registered Owner:

Principal Amount:

ON THE MATURITY DATE SPECIFIED ABOVE, THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), hereby promises to pay to the registered owner specified above, or to the registered assignees hereof (either being hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount specified above and to pay interest thereon, from the dated date of this Bond specified above, to the date of its scheduled maturity or date of redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the rate of interest per annum specified above, with said interest being payable on February 1, 20\_, and semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, except that if the Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate appearing on the face of this Bond is dated later than February 1, 20\_, such interest is payable semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 following such date of authentication.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") in Dallas, Texas (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof as shown on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the fifteenth day of the month next preceding such interest payment date (the "Record Date") by check drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Board required to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner of record on the Record Date at its address as it appears on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described. The Board covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that no later than each principal payment date and interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Series 2022B Bonds (as defined herein) when due.

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

INTEREST ON the Series 2022B Bonds shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ANY PAYMENTS required to be made hereunder on any day which is not a Business Day (as defined below) shall be made instead on the next succeeding Business Day and no interest shall accrue on such payments in the interim. "Business Day" means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close. Notwithstanding the foregoing, during any period in which ownership of the Series 2022B Bonds is determined only by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022B Bonds, any payment to the securities depository, or its nominee or registered assigns, shall be made in accordance with existing arrangements between the Board and the securities depository.

THIS BOND is one of a series of Bonds of like tenor and effect except as to number, maturity, interest rate and right of prior redemption, dated as of the dated date of this Bond specified above, aggregating \_\_\_\_\_ (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) (the "Series 2022B Bonds")<sup>1</sup>, issued pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-8"), Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-9") and Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code ("Subchapter L"), and a resolution authorizing the issuance of the series of Bonds of which this is one, adopted by the Board and duly of record in the minutes of the Board (hereinafter called the "Bond Resolution"), for the purpose of refunding the Refunded Bonds, and to pay expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds. In the Bond Resolution, the Board delegated to certain designated officials the authority to establish and approve the final terms of sale of the Series 2022B Bonds through the execution of one or more Approval Certificates (the Bond Resolution and applicable Approval Certificate are collectively referred to herein as the "Resolution"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Resolution.

THE SERIES 2022B BONDS having stated maturities on and after \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ shall be subject to redemption prior to maturity, at the option of the Board, in whole or in part, in Authorized Denominations, on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_, or on any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

THE SERIES 2022B BONDS maturing on August 1, in the years \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Term Bonds") are subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption annually, on August 1 of the years and in the principal amounts set forth below, plus accrued interest from the most recent interest payment date on which interest has been paid or fully provided for, to the redemption date:

**Term Bonds due August 1, 20**

Mandatory Redemption Date (August 1)	<u>Principal Amount</u>
---	-------------------------

† Final Maturity

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

THE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT of Term Bonds required to be redeemed shall be reduced, at the option of the Board, by the principal amount of Term Bonds which, at least 50 days prior to the mandatory sinking fund redemption date (1) shall have been defeased or acquired by the Board and delivered to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, (2) shall have been purchased and canceled by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the request of the Board with money in the Bond Fund, or (3) shall have been redeemed pursuant to the optional redemption provisions set forth above and not theretofore credited against a mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement. On or before August 1 of every year in which there are mandatory redemption requirements as defined above for the Term Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall determine the principal amount of Term Bonds that must be mandatorily redeemed on August 1 of such year, after taking into account deliveries for cancellation and prior redemption of Term Bonds as provided above.

IF FEWER THAN ALL OF THE SERIES 2022B BONDS are called for redemption, the maturities to be redeemed will be selected by the Board, and the Series 2022B Bonds to be redeemed within any one maturity will be selected by the Paying Agent/Registrar by lot (or in such other manner as the Paying Agent/Registrar may determine) in integral multiples of \$5,000; *provided, however*, that during any period in which ownership of such Series 2022B Bonds to be redeemed is determined only by a book-entry at DTC, or a successor securities depository, if fewer than all of such Series 2022B Bonds of the same maturity and bearing the same interest rate are to be redeemed, the particular Series 2022B Bonds of such maturity and bearing such interest rate will be selected in accordance with the arrangements between the Board and DTC or successor securities depository.

IF THE SERIES 2022B BONDS are no longer registered to DTC or its nominee, any redemption of less than all of a maturity of such Series 2022B Bonds shall be effected by the Paying Agent/Registrar among owners on a pro-rata basis subject to minimum Authorized Denominations. The Series 2022B Bonds or portions thereof to be redeemed shall be determined by the Paying Agent/Registrar, using such method as it shall deem fair and appropriate.

AT LEAST thirty (30) days prior to the date fixed for any redemption, (a) a written notice of such redemption shall be given to the registered owner of each Bond or a portion thereof being called for redemption by depositing such notice in the United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to each such registered owner at his address shown on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar, and (b) notice of such redemption either shall be published one (1) time in or posted electronically on the website of a financial journal or publication of general circulation in the United States of America or the State of Texas carrying as a regular feature notices of municipal bonds called for redemption; *provided, however*, that the failure to send, mail, or receive such notice described in clause (a) above, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond, and the Resolution provides that the provision of notice as described in clause (a) above shall be the only notice actually required in connection with or as a prerequisite to the redemption of any Bonds. By the date fixed for any such redemption due provision shall be made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for this Bond or the portion hereof which is to be so redeemed, plus accrued interest thereon to the date fixed for redemption. Should notice to call Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022B Bonds so called for redemption, no Bonds shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of

the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022B Bonds as provided herein or in the Resolution. By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

THE BOARD RESERVES the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022B Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of moneys and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying Agent/Registrar instruction the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such moneys and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

IF SUCH NOTICE of redemption is given, and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided in the paragraph above, this Bond, or the portion thereof which is to be so redeemed, thereby automatically shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity, and shall not bear interest after the date fixed for its redemption, and shall not be regarded as being Outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of this Bond or any portion hereof. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed, a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination, at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Board, all as provided in the Resolution

THIS BOND OR ANY PORTION OR PORTIONS HEREOF IN ANY AUTHORIZED DENOMINATION may be assigned and shall be transferred only in the registration books of the Board kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar acting in the capacity of registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds, upon the terms and conditions set forth in the Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any Authorized Denomination to the assignee or assignees. A new Bond or Bonds payable to such assignee, or to the previous registered owner in the case of the assignment and transfer of only a portion of this Bond, shall be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in conversion of and exchange for this Bond, all in the form and manner as provided in the next paragraph hereof for the conversion and exchange of other Bonds.

AS PROVIDED in the Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be, having the same maturity date and interest rate, in any Authorized Denomination, as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner or assignee, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office for cancellation.

NEITHER THE BOARD, the State of Texas, nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, transfer, exchange or make any conversion of any Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (b) to transfer or exchange any Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; provided, however, that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of the Series 2022B Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any Bonds which have been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon the surrender thereof. The registered owner requesting conversion and exchange of any Bond or portion thereof shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's customary fees and charges, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange, except, however, that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Bond or Bonds or portion thereof, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of a portion of a Bond which has been redeemed prior to maturity, as provided herein, the fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar will be paid by the Board.

WHENEVER the beneficial ownership of this Bond is determined by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022B Bonds, the foregoing requirements of holding, delivering or transferring this Bond shall be modified to require the appropriate person or entity to meet the requirements of the securities depository as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022B Bonds is changed by the Board, resigns or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Board has covenanted in the Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and promptly will cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Series 2022B Bonds.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the Board, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Board.

THE ISSUE of Bonds of which this is one shall be and is hereby made a general obligation of the State of Texas, pursuant to Section 49-d-8 and Subchapter L, and for the faithful performance of all covenants, recitals and stipulations herein contained, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and interest on this Bond when due, the resources of the Board and the full faith and credit of the State of Texas are hereby pledged.

PAYMENTS OF THE PRINCIPAL OF and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be made primarily from the "Texas Water Development Fund II Water Financial Assistance Account" (the "Financial Assistance Account") within the Texas Water Development Fund II ("Development Fund II") created by Section 49-d-8. The Financial Assistance Account shall be comprised of (1) the Board's rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from such account, together with any evidence of such rights; (2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance; (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance; (4) money and assets attributable to bonds issued and sold by the Board for such account, including money and assets transferred

from the Texas Water Development Fund pursuant to Section 49-d-8; (5) money deposited to such account from the sale, transfer, or lease, in whole or in part, of facilities held for such account; (6) payments received by the Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to bonds issued for such account; (7) interest and other income received from investment of money in such account; and (8) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the Financial Assistance Account. Proceeds from the sale of the bonds on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account shall not be available to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part unless specifically authorized by the Board. The Bonds and all other bonds or other obligations issued or incurred by the Board pursuant to Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, or Section 49-d-11 to provide funds for the Financial Assistance Account of Development Fund II or to refund any such bonds or obligations are referred to herein as "Financial Assistance Bonds". Section 49-d-8 provides that to the extent there is not money in any account available for payment of principal of and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds issued for such account, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the State Treasury (as defined in the Resolution) in each fiscal year, not otherwise appropriated by the Texas Constitution, an amount which is sufficient to pay the principal of and interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year.

IT IS HEREBY certified and recited that all acts, conditions and things required to be done precedent to and in the issuance of this Bond and the series of which it forms a part have been properly done, have happened and have been performed in regular and due time, form and manner as required by the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas and the Resolution, and that the series of Bonds of which this is a part does not exceed any constitutional or statutory limitation, and that provision has been made for the payment of the principal of and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part as such principal and interest become due by a continuing appropriation heretofore made by Section 49-d-8 and by a pledge of the credit of the State of Texas.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, this Bond is executed with the lithographed or printed facsimile or manual signatures of the Chairwoman of the Texas Water Development Board and the Executive Administrator, and the seal of said Board is lithographed, printed or manually impressed hereon.

THE STATE OF TEXAS

---

Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

[To accompany Definitive Bonds only]

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Resolution described on the face of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of a Bond, Bonds or a portion of a Bond or Bonds of an issue which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST  
COMPANY, N.A., Paying Agent/Registrar

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Representative

ASSIGNMENT

FOR VALUE RECEIVED the undersigned hereby sells, assigns, and transfers unto (Print or typewrite name, address, and zip code of transferee:)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_(Social Security or other identifying number  
\_\_\_\_\_) the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints \_\_\_\_\_ attorney to transfer the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

DATED:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature guaranteed:  
  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
NOTICE: The signature on this assignment must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears on the face of the within Bond in every particular.

[To accompany Initial Bond(s) only]

REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE OF  
TEXAS COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER	)	
OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS	)	REGISTER NO. _____
THE STATE OF TEXAS	)	

I HEREBY CERTIFY that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and duly registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

WITNESS my signature and seal of office this \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts

(SEAL)

The Initial Series 2022B Bond shall be in the form set forth therefor in this Exhibit, except as follows:

Heading and paragraphs one (1) through three (3) shall be replaced as follows:

NO. T-1 \$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
STATE OF TEXAS  
WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BOND  
SERIES 2022B<sup>1</sup>

Bond Date:

\_\_\_\_\_, 2021

Registered Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

Principal Amount: \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), for value received, acknowledges itself indebted to and hereby promises to pay to the registered owner named above, or the registered assigns thereof, the Principal Amount hereinabove stated on August 1 in the years and in principal installments in accordance with the following schedule:

<u>Year of Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Interest Rates (%)</u>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

(Information to be inserted from Approval Certificate).

(without right of prior redemption) and to pay interest on the unpaid principal installments hereof from the date of its delivery at the per annum rates of interest specified above computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months; such interest being payable on February 1, 20\_\_, and each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, until maturity. Principal installments of this Series 2022B Bond are payable in the year of maturity or on a redemption date to the registered owner hereof by The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender, at its designated offices in East Syracuse, New York (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). Interest is payable to the registered owner of this Bond whose name appears on the "Security Register" maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the "Record Date," which is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding each interest payment date, and interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar by check sent United States Mail, first class postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Security Register or by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. All payments of principal of, premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be without exchange or collection charges to the registered owner hereof and in any coin or currency of the United States of America, which at the time of payment is legal tender for the payment of public and private debts. If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to be closed, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to be closed; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

**EXHIBIT B**

**DESCRIPTION OF ANNUAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION  
OF THE BOARD**

The following information is referred to in Section 9.02 of this Resolution.

**Annual Financial Statements and Operating Data**

The financial information and operating data with respect to the Board to be provided annually in accordance with such Section is the quantitative financial information and operating data pertaining to the Board included in Tables 1 and 2 of the Official Statement and in Appendix B to the Official Statement relating to the Bonds.

**Accounting Principles**

The accounting principles referred to in such Section are generally accepted accounting principles for governmental units as prescribed by the Government Accounting Standards Board from time to time, as such principles may be changed from time to time to comply with state law or regulation.

**BOND RESOLUTION  
OF THE  
TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD  
AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF  
STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE  
REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2022C  
(ECONOMICALLY DISTRESSED AREAS PROGRAM)  
AND SUCH OTHER SUBSERIES  
AS MAY BE DESIGNATED PURSUANT TO THE TERMS HEREOF  
ADOPTED:  
FEBRUARY 2, 2022**

Table of Contents

Page

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Section 1.01	Definitions .....	2
Section 1.02	Rules of Construction.....	8
Section 1.03	Interpretations .....	9

ARTICLE II

THE SERIES 2022C BONDS

Section 2.01	Authorization of Bonds .....	9
Section 2.02	Denominations, Date and Interest Rates .....	10
Section 2.03	Maturities and Amounts .....	10
Section 2.04	Execution of Bonds .....	11
Section 2.05	Temporary Bonds.....	11
Section 2.06	Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar .....	11
Section 2.07	Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds .....	12
Section 2.08	Owners of Bonds.....	14
Section 2.09	Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.....	14
Section 2.10	Successor Paying Agent/Registrars .....	15
Section 2.11	Book-Entry Only System .....	15
Section 2.12	All Bonds On Parity .....	16

ARTICLE III

REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY

Section 3.01	Limitation on Redemption .....	17
Section 3.02	Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.....	17
Section 3.03	Partial Redemption.....	17
Section 3.04	Notice of Redemption .....	17
Section 3.05	Payment Upon Redemption.....	18
Section 3.06	Effect of Redemption.....	19

ARTICLE IV

FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES

Section 4.01	Form of Bond and Certificates .....	19
Section 4.02	Opinion of Bond Counsel .....	19
Section 4.03	Printing of Statement of Insurance.....	19

Table of Contents  
(continued)

Page

ARTICLE V

SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS;  
ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS

Section 5.01	General Obligations .....	19
Section 5.02	Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.....	20
Section 5.03	Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds .....	20
Section 5.04	Flow of Funds For Debt Service .....	21
Section 5.05	Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment .....	22
Section 5.06	Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller .....	22
Section 5.07	Payment of Bonds.....	23
Section 5.08	Cooperation with State Officers .....	23
Section 5.09	Investment of Funds.....	23

ARTICLE VI

COVENANTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.01	Special Covenant.....	23
Section 6.02	Covenants to Maintain Tax-Exempt Status .....	23
Section 6.03	Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.....	27
Section 6.04	Remedies of Bondholders.....	27
Section 6.05	Bond Enhancement Agreements .....	28

ARTICLE VII

SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

Section 7.01	Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.....	28
Section 7.02	Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners.....	29
Section 7.03	Effect of Amendatory Resolutions.....	31
Section 7.04	Bonds May Bear Notation .....	31

ARTICLE VIII

PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS

Section 8.01	Issuance and Sale of Bonds .....	31
Section 8.02	Official Statement.....	32
Section 8.03	Custody of Bonds.....	32
Section 8.04	Use of Bond Proceeds .....	32

ARTICLE IX

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING

Section 9.01	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller .....	33
--------------	--	----

Table of Contents  
(continued)

	Page
Section 9.02	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board..... 33
Section 9.03	Incorporation by Reference..... 35
Section 9.04	Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments..... 35
ARTICLE X	
DEFEASANCE	
Section 10.01	Series 2022C Bonds Deemed Paid ..... 36
Section 10.02	Investment in Defeasance Securities..... 37
Section 10.03	Paying Agent/Registrar Services ..... 37
Section 10.04	Selection of Series 2022C Bonds for Defeasance..... 37
ARTICLE XI	
MATTERS RELATING TO THE REFUNDED BONDS	
Section 11.01	Purpose for Refunding ..... 37
Section 11.02	Escrow Agreement..... 38
Section 11.03	Purchase of United States Treasury Obligations ..... 38
Section 11.04	Redemption of Refunded Bonds ..... 38
Section 11.05	Escrow Fund ..... 38
Section 11.06	Transfer of Funds ..... 39
ARTICLE XII	
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	
Section 12.01	Further Procedures ..... 39
Section 12.02	Open Meeting; Notice ..... 39
Section 12.03	Prior Actions..... 39
Section 12.04	Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge..... 39
SCHEDULE I	List of Refundable Bonds ..... I-1
Exhibit A	Form of Bond ..... A-1
Exhibit B	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board..... B-1

RESOLUTION

**OF THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2022C (ECONOMICALLY DISTRESSED AREAS PROGRAM), AND RESOLVING OTHER MATTERS RELATED THERETO**

WHEREAS, the Texas Water Development Board (the “**Board**”) has previously issued, sold, and delivered general obligation bonds of the State of Texas (the “**State**”), to fund one or more accounts of the Texas Water Development Fund II (referred to herein as “**Development Fund II**”) established pursuant to the provisions of Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Constitution of the State (the “**State Constitution**”), approved by the voters on November 4, 1997 (“**Section 49-d-8**”); and

WHEREAS, in furtherance of the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-9**”), and Subchapter L, Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code (the “**Act**”), the Board has heretofore issued and there are currently outstanding obligations of the State as described in “**SCHEDULE I**” attached to this Resolution and incorporated herein by reference (collectively referred to as the “**Refundable Bonds**”); and

WHEREAS, in addition to bonds authorized by other provisions of the State Constitution, Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-11**”) authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds of the State, at its determination and on a continuing basis, for one or more accounts of Development Fund II, in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of the bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6,000,000,000; and

WHEREAS, Section 49-d-11 states that (i) Section 49-d-8 applies to the bonds authorized by Section 49-d-11, (ii) the limitation in Section 49-d-8 that the Board may not issue bonds in excess of the aggregate principal amount of previously authorized bonds does not apply to the bonds authorized by and issued under Section 49-d-11, and (iii) a limitation on the percentage of state participation in any single project imposed by Article III of the State Constitution does not apply to a project funded with the proceeds of bonds issued under authority of Section 49-d-8 or Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, in addition to bonds authorized by other provisions of the State Constitution, Section 49-d-14 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-14**”) authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds of the State, at its determination and on a continuing basis, for the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account (as hereinafter defined) of Development Fund II, in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of the bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$200,000,000; and

WHEREAS, Section 49-d-14 states that (i) Section 49-d-8 applies to the bonds authorized by Section 49-d-14, and (ii) the limitation in Section 49-d-8 that the Board may not issue bonds in excess of the aggregate principal amount of previously authorized bonds does not apply to the bonds authorized by and issued under Section 49-d-14; and

WHEREAS, since the Refundable Bonds were not originally authorized by Section 49-d-11 or Section 49-d-14, bonds issued to refund the Refundable Bonds would not count against the authorization established by Section 49-d-11 or Section 49-d-14; and

WHEREAS, current market conditions are favorable to achieve some level of debt service savings if the Board were to refund some or all of the Refundable Bonds;

WHEREAS, the Board finds it advisable and determines that it is a public purpose and in the best interests of the State, in accordance with authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, Section 49-d-10, and the Act, to authorize issuance of the 2022C Bonds (as defined herein) to refund all or a portion of the Refundable Bonds in accordance with Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371 (hereinafter defined), subject to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, as hereinafter provided; and

WHEREAS, a portion of debt service on bonds authorized to be issued pursuant to this Resolution is reasonably expected by the Board to be paid from general revenues of the State;

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD:**

**ARTICLE I**

**DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS**

**Section 1.01 Definitions.** Throughout this Resolution (except in the FORM OF BOND attached as **Exhibit A** to this Resolution), in addition to the terms defined in the preamble to this Resolution the following terms and expressions used herein shall have the meanings specified in this Section.

**“Act”** means Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

**“Amortization Installment”** means the amount of money which is required for retirement of Term Bonds (whether at maturity or by mandatory redemption and including redemption premium, if any).

**“Approval Certificate”** means collectively one or more certificates executed by an Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof which finalize the pricing and terms of the Series 2022C Bonds pursuant to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, including specifying the issuance of one or more subseries.

**“Attorney General”** means the Attorney General of the State.

**“Authentication Certificate”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.07.

**“Authorized Denomination”** means \$5,000 principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and any integral multiple thereof.

**“Authorized Representative”** means each of the Executive Administrator, the Chief Financial Officer, the Development Fund Manager and the General Counsel of the Board, acting individually and not jointly.

**“Board”** means the Texas Water Development Board.

“**Bond**” or “**Bonds**” means a Series 2022C Bond or Series 2022C Bonds, as applicable.

“**Bond Appendix**” means the quarterly appendix prepared by the Comptroller which sets forth certain information regarding the State (including its government, finances, economic profile, and other matters) for use by State entities when issuing debt.

“**Bond Enhancement Agreement**” means any agreement of the nature described in Section 17.954(c), Texas Water Code.

“**Bond Payment Account**” has the meaning specified for that term in Section 5.03.

“**Book-Entry-Only System**” means the system maintained by the securities depository described in Section 2.11.

“**Business Day**” means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close.

“**Chapter 9**” means Chapter 9, Texas Business & Commerce Code.

“**Chapter 551**” means Chapter 551, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1206**” means Chapter 1206, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1207**” means Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1208**” means Chapter 1208, Texas Government Code.

“**Chapter 1371**” means Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, enacted on or before the Date of Delivery.

“**Common Issue Bonds**” means the Series 2022C Bonds and any other tax-exempt bonds sold within 15 days of the first day on which there is a binding written contract for the sale or exchange of the Series 2022C Bonds, which are part of the same “issue” as the Series 2022C Bonds, as defined in section 1.150-1(c) of the Regulations.

“**Comptroller**” means the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

“**Continuing Disclosure Agreement**” means the Amended and Restated Continuing Disclosure Agreement dated March 12, 2019, between the Comptroller and the Texas Bond Review Board, as may be further amended from time to time.

“**Date of Delivery**” means the date of delivery of the Series 2022C Bonds to the Underwriters.

“**Dated Date**” means the date designated in the Approval Certificate as such with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds.

**“Defeasance Securities”** means, unless otherwise specified in an Approval Certificate, (i) Federal Securities, (ii) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022C Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, (iii) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022C Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, and (iv) any other then authorized securities or obligations that may be used to defease obligations such as the Series 2022C Bonds under the then applicable laws of the State.

**“Designated Payment/Transfer Office”** means the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar designated as the place for payment, transfer and exchange of the Series 2022C Bonds, initially, the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar in Dallas, Texas.

**“Development Fund I”** means the Texas Water Development Fund as described in the Development Fund I Constitution Provisions.

**“Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions”** means Sections 49-c, 49-d, 49-d-1, 49-d-2, 49-d-5, 49-d-6 and 49-d-7 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Development Fund II”** has the meaning specified for that term in the preamble to this Resolution.

**“DTC”** means The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, and its successors and assigns.

**“DTC Participant”** means the securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations on whose behalf DTC was created to hold securities to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among DTC Participants.

**“Economically Distressed Areas Program Account”** means the account described in Section 17.958, Texas Water Code.

**“EDAP Bonds”** means the general obligation bonds of the State issued by the Board under authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, Section 49-d-10, Section 49-d-11 or Section 49-d-14 to provide funds for the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account of Development Fund II, including the Previously Issued EDAP Bonds and the Series 2022C Bonds.

**“EDAP Project”** means any project found and determined by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Subchapter K.

**“Eligible Investments”** means those investments in which the Board is authorized by law and its investment policy to invest its funds.

**“Escrow Agent”** means the Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as escrow agent under the Escrow Agreement and any successor thereto as therein permitted.

**“Escrow Agreement”** means an escrow agreement, deposit agreement, escrow deposit letter, escrow instructions or other comparable document (including any amendments thereto) between the Board and the Escrow Agent providing for the payment of the Refunded Bonds, in substantially the form approved in the Approval Certificate.

**“Escrow Fund”** means each escrow fund or account created with respect to the Refunded Bonds pursuant to the Escrow Agreement.

**“Federal Securities”** means direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America.

**“Financial Assistance Account”** means the account described in Section 17.959, Texas Water Code.

**“Financial Obligation”** means a (a) debt obligation; (b) derivative instrument entered into in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation; or (c) guarantee of any such debt obligation or any such derivative instrument; provided that “Financial Obligation” shall not include municipal securities as to which a final official statement (as defined in the Rule) has been provided to the MSRB consistent with the Rule. The Board and the Comptroller intend the words used in this definition to have the same meanings as when they are used in the Rule, as evidenced by SEC Release No. 34-83885, dated August 20, 2018.

**“Fiscal Year”** means the period of time beginning in each calendar year on September 1 and ending on August 31 of the calendar year next following.

**“Form of Bond”** means the Form of Bond attached hereto as **Exhibit A**.

**“GASB”** means the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

**“Holder”** or **“Owner”** means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022C Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

**“Initial Bonds”** means the Series 2022C Bonds authorized, issued, sold and delivered hereunder and upon which the registration certificate, manually executed by or on behalf of the Comptroller, has been placed.

**“Interest Payment Date”** means each February 1 and August 1, beginning on the first such date occurring after the Date of Delivery.

**“Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds”** means:

- (1) the Board's rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account, together with any evidence of such rights;

(2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance;

(3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance;

(4) money and assets attributable to EDAP Bonds, including money and assets transferred to the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account from Development Fund I pursuant to Subsection (b) of Section 49-d-8; and

(5) money deposited in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account pursuant to Subsection (c) of Section 49-d-8.

**"MSRB"** means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

**"Official Statement"** means the Official Statement pertaining to the Series 2022C Bonds, and authorized by Section 8.02 hereof.

**"Owner"** or **"Holder"** means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022C Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

**"Outstanding"** means, when used to modify EDAP Bonds, all of such EDAP Bonds issued, authenticated and delivered under their respective authorizing resolutions, except (i) any EDAP Bonds which have been exchanged or replaced or otherwise surrendered for cancellation, (ii) any EDAP Bonds which have been paid, (iii) any EDAP Bonds which have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided, and (iv) any EDAP Bonds which have been legally defeased and discharged in accordance with the terms of the respective authorizing resolution.

**"Paying Agent/Registrar"** means the financial institution named in Section 2.06 or any successor thereto named in accordance with the provisions of Section 2.10.

**"Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement"** means the paying agent agreement between the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, relating to the performance of the duties and responsibilities of the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds.

**"Person"** means any natural person, firm, partnership, association, corporation, or public body.

**"Political Subdivision"** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 17.001(6), Texas Water Code.

**"Previously Issued EDAP Bonds"** means bonds previously issued to provide funds for the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account and any refunding bonds issued in replacement thereof.

**"Purchase Agreement"** means collectively one or more bond purchase agreements between the Board and the Underwriters relating to the sale of the Series 2022C Bonds.

**"Refundable Bonds"** means those bonds identified in "SCHEDULE I" to this Resolution.

**"Refunded Bonds"** means those Refundable Bonds selected by the Authorized Representative to be refunded with the proceeds of the Series 2022C Bonds, as identified in the Approval Certificate.

**“Registration Books”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.06.

**“Regulations”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 9.02.

**“Resolution”** means this Resolution authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds and all amendments hereto.

**“Rule”** means SEC Rule 15c2-12, as amended from time to time.

**“Rural Water Assistance Fund”** means the account within the general revenue fund of the State established pursuant to Subchapter R.

**“SEC”** means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

**“Section 49-d-8”** means Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Section 49-d-9”** means Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Section 49-d-10”** means Section 49-d-10 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Section 49-d-11”** means Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Section 49-d-14”** means Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Series 2022A Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

**“Series 2022B Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

**“Series 2022C Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of this Resolution and the terms and conditions set forth in the Approval Certificate relating thereto, including any subseries.

**“Series 2022D Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

**“State”** means the State of Texas.

**“State Constitution”** means the Constitution of the State.

**“State Participation Account”** means the account described in Section 17.957, Texas Water Code.

**“State Participation Project”** means any project found by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Section 16.131, Texas Water Code.

**“State Treasury”** means the treasury of the State under the administration and supervision of the Comptroller.

**“Subchapter K”** means Subchapter K, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

**“Subchapter Q”** means Subchapter Q, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

**“Subchapter R”** means Subchapter R, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

**“Term Bonds”** means Series 2022C Bonds so designated by the Board herein or in the Approval Certificate.

**“Underwriters”** means the investment banking firms that contract to purchase the Series 2022C Bonds pursuant to the Purchase Agreement and in accordance with Section 8.01.

**“Water Assistance Project”** means any project for which the Board is authorized to provide financial assistance, in accordance with the purposes described by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions or Section 49-d-8, other than (i) an EDAP Project or (ii) a State Participation Project. The term “Water Assistance Project” includes, without limitation, transfers to or deposits to the credit of any state revolving fund administered by the Board under the provisions of the Texas Water Code, specifically Chapter 15, Texas Water Code, and transfers to or deposits to the credit of the Rural Water Assistance Fund or the Water Infrastructure Fund.

**“Water Infrastructure Fund”** means the special fund in the State Treasury established pursuant to Subchapter Q and administered by the Board.

**Section 1.02 Rules of Construction.**

(a) Designation of Articles, Sections. For all purposes of this Resolution, unless the context requires otherwise, all references to designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions are to the Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this Resolution. The words “herein,” “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Resolution as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

(b) References. Except where the context otherwise requires, terms defined in this Resolution to impart the singular number shall be considered to include the plural number and vice versa. References to any named Person means that party and its successors and assigns. References to any constitutional, statutory or regulatory provision means such provision as it exists on the date this Resolution is adopted by the Board and any future amendments thereto or successor provisions thereof. Any reference to the payment of principal in this Resolution shall be deemed to include the payment of Amortization Installments. References in this Resolution to the FORM OF BOND refer to the form attached to this Resolution as Exhibit A.

**Section 1.03 Interpretations.** The titles and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Resolution have been inserted for convenience of reference only and are not to be considered a part hereof and shall not in any way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

**ARTICLE II**

**THE SERIES 2022C BONDS**

**Section 2.01 Authorization of Bonds.**

(a) **Purpose; Maximum Amount.** For the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, and Section 49-d-10, the negotiable general obligation bonds of the State to be known and designated as **STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2022C (ECONOMICALLY DISTRESSED AREAS PROGRAM)**, are hereby authorized and may be issued from time to time for the purpose of conserving and developing the water resources of the State, to-wit, by providing funds for the refunding of the Refunded Bonds to achieve debt service savings and paying expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds. The combined principal amount of all Series 2022C Bonds, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds shall not exceed \$330,000,000.

(b) **Delegation of Authority.** As authorized by Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, each Authorized Representative, individually and not jointly, is hereby authorized, appointed and designated to act on behalf of the Board in selling and delivering, in one or more series or subseries, the Series 2022C Bonds and carrying out the procedures specified in this Resolution, including determining:

(i) the date for issuance and sale, and the Dated Date, of each series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds;

(ii) the selection of the specific maturities or series (whole or part) of the Refunded Bonds to be refunded;

(iii) the name and any special or additional series designation for each series or subseries of the Series 2022C Bonds;

(iv) the principal amount of each series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds to be sold (subject to the limitations set forth in Section 2.01(a)), as well as the principal amount of each stated maturity within a series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds;

(v) the price at which the Series 2022C Bonds shall be sold;

(vi) the principal amount of Series 2022C Bonds to be sold as current interest bonds, if any; the principal amount of Series 2022C Bonds to be sold as premium capital appreciation bonds, if any;

(vii) the principal amortization schedule for the Series 2022C Bonds (including, without limitation, the designation of any of the maturities of the Series 2022C Bonds as Term Bonds and any Amortization Installments to be deposited to the credit of the Bond Payment Account relating to any Term Bond so designated);

(viii) in accordance with the provisions of ARTICLE V hereof, the redemption features of the Series 2022C Bonds (including any associated premium);

(ix) the rate or rates of interest to be borne by the Series 2022C Bonds;

(x) whether to acquire a Bond Enhancement Agreement in support of all or any portion of the Series 2022C Bonds; and

(xi) any other matters relating to the issuance, sale and delivery of the Series 2022C Bonds; all of which shall be specified in one or more Approval Certificates executed in accordance with the terms hereof and within the parameters set forth in Section 2.01(c) below.

(c) Parameters. The Authorized Representative may exercise any authority granted under Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371 to effect the refunding of the Refundable Bonds so long as on the date the Purchase Agreement is executed:

(i) the net present value savings realized as a result of refunding the Refunded Bonds is not less than two percent (2.00%);

(ii) the maximum maturity of the Series 2022C Bonds issued hereunder shall not exceed the maximum maturity date of the Refunded Bonds being refunded by such series;

(iii) the true interest cost rate applicable to the Series 2022C Bonds shall not exceed 6.0%;

(iv) subject to the limitation specified in Section 2.01(a), the par amount of the Series 2022C Bonds shall not exceed the par amount of the Refunded Bonds being refunded by the Series 2022C Bonds; and

(v) the final series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds issued hereunder must be sold no later than six months after the date of adoption of this Resolution (though the closing of a particular series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds sold in accordance with this provision may occur after such date as long as such closing period is determined by an Authorized Representative to be of reasonable duration).

**Section 2.02 Denominations, Date and Interest Rates.** The Series 2022C Bonds shall be in any Authorized Denomination, shall be numbered consecutively from R-1 upward, shall be dated the date described in the Approval Certificate, and shall be in substantially the form attached hereto as **Exhibit A** with such changes and modifications as are set forth in the Approval Certificate. Interest on the Series 2022C Bonds shall be payable on the Interest Payment Dates. The Series 2022C Bonds shall bear interest at rates as specified in the Approval Certificate. Interest shall be payable in the manner and on the terms provided in this Resolution and the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed in accordance with the terms of the Approval Certificate to reflect the aggregate principal amount of the Series 2022C Bonds sold to the Underwriters.

**Section 2.03 Maturities and Amounts.** The Series 2022C Bonds shall mature on the dates and in the amounts as set forth in the principal amortization schedule contained in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 2.04 Execution of Bonds.** Each Series 2022C Bond shall be executed for and on behalf of the State as a general obligation of the State by having placed thereon the lithographed or printed facsimile or the manual signatures of the Chair of the Board and the Executive Administrator, and the manually impressed or lithographed or printed facsimile seal of the Board. Lithographed or printed facsimile signatures and seal shall have the same effect as if each Series 2022C Bond had been manually signed by such officers, and the seal had been manually impressed on each Series 2022C Bond.

In case any officer whose signature is on a Series 2022C Bond no longer holds such office at the time of authentication, or was the proper officer on the date of execution but not on the nominal date of action, the Series 2022C Bond shall nevertheless be valid.

**Section 2.05 Temporary Bonds.** Pending the preparation of definitive Series 2022C Bonds, the Board may execute and, upon the Board's request, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver, one or more temporary Series 2022C Bonds substantially of the tenor of the definitive Series 2022C Bonds in lieu of which they are delivered, with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations, as evidenced by the execution of such temporary Series 2022C Bonds, as such officers executing such temporary Series 2022C Bonds may determine.

Until exchanged for Series 2022C Bonds in definitive form, such Series 2022C Bonds in temporary form shall be entitled to the benefit and security of this Resolution. The Board, without unreasonable delay, shall prepare, execute and deliver to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and upon the presentation and surrender of the temporary Series 2022C Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor, definitive Series 2022C Bonds of the same maturity, aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate as the temporary Series 2022C Bonds surrendered. The exchange shall be made without any charge to any owner of Series 2022C Bonds.

**Section 2.06 Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar.**

(a) **Appointment.** The Board hereby appoints The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as the initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds. The Board shall keep or cause to be kept at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar books or records of the registration and transfer of the Series 2022C Bonds (the "**Registration Books**"), and the Board hereby appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar as its registrar and transfer agent to keep such books or records and make such transfers and registrations under such reasonable regulations as the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe; and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall make such transfers and registrations as herein provided. It shall be the duty of the Paying Agent/Registrar to obtain from the registered owner and record in the Registration Books the address of such registered owner of each Series 2022C Bond to which payments with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds shall be mailed, as herein provided. The Board or its designee shall have the right to inspect the Registration Books during regular business hours of the Paying Agent/Registrar, but otherwise the Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep the Registration Books confidential and, unless otherwise required by law, shall not permit their inspection by any other entity. The Board hereby further appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar to act as the paying agent for paying the principal of and interest on the Series 2022C Bonds, and to act as its agent to convert and exchange or replace Series 2022C Bonds, all as provided in this Resolution. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep proper records of all payments made by the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series

2022C Bonds, and of all conversions and exchanges of such Series 2022C Bonds, and all replacements of such Series 2022C Bonds, as provided in this Resolution.

(b) Duties. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform such duties as are required of the Paying Agent/Registrar hereunder and under the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement. The Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is hereby authorized to execute and deliver for and on behalf of the Board the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement, which shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with EDAP Bonds previously issued by the Board, with such changes as the Executive Administrator may approve, such approval to be conclusively evidenced by the execution and delivery of such agreement by the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof.

**Section 2.07 Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds.**

(a) Transfer. Registration of each Series 2022C Bond may be transferred on the Registration Books only upon presentation and surrender of such Series 2022C Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for transfer of registration and cancellation, together with proper written instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing the assignment of the Series 2022C Bond, or any portion thereof in any Authorized Denomination, to the assignee or assignees thereof, and the right of such assignee or assignees to have the Series 2022C Bond or any such portion thereof registered in the name of such assignee or assignees. Upon the assignment and transfer of any Series 2022C Bond or any portion thereof, a new substitute Series 2022C Bond or Series 2022C Bonds shall be issued in conversion and exchange therefor in the manner provided in this Section.

(b) Duty of Conversion, Exchange or Replacement. Pursuant to Chapter 1206, and particularly Subchapter B thereof, the duty of conversion and exchange or replacement of Series 2022C Bonds in the manner prescribed herein is hereby imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar. Each Series 2022C Bond may be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022C Bonds in the manner set forth herein. Each Series 2022C Bond issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, to the extent of the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount thereof, as the case may be, upon surrender of such Series 2022C Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with a written request therefor duly executed by the registered owner or the assignee or assignees thereof, or its or their duly authorized attorneys or representatives, with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, at the option of the registered owner or such assignee or assignees, as appropriate, shall be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022C Bonds in the form prescribed in the FORM OF BOND of like series or subseries, in any Authorized Denomination (subject to the requirement hereinafter stated that each substitute Series 2022C Bond shall have a single stated maturity date), as requested in writing by such registered owner or such assignee or assignees, in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount of any Series 2022C Bond or Series 2022C Bonds, as the case may be, so surrendered, and payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be. If a portion of any Series 2022C Bond shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity as provided herein, a substitute Series 2022C Bond or Series 2022C Bonds having the same maturity date, of like series or subseries and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon surrender thereof for cancellation. The Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall cancel all Series 2022C

Bonds surrendered for conversion and exchange or replacement. If any Series 2022C Bond or portion thereof is assigned and transferred or converted, each Series 2022C Bond issued in exchange therefor shall have the same principal maturity date, be of like series or subseries and bear or accrue interest at the same rate, as the Series 2022C Bond for which it is being exchanged.

(c) No Additional Actions Necessary. No additional ordinances, orders, or resolutions need be passed or adopted by the Board or any other Person so as to accomplish the foregoing conversion and exchange or replacement of any Series 2022C Bond or portion thereof, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall provide for the printing, execution and delivery of the substitute Series 2022C Bonds in the manner prescribed herein. All Series 2022C Bonds issued in conversion and exchange or replacement of any other Series 2022C Bond or portion thereof (i) shall be issued in fully registered form with the principal of and interest on such Series 2022C Bonds to be payable only to the registered owners thereof, (ii) may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, (iii) may be transferred and assigned, (iv) may be converted and exchanged for other Series 2022C Bonds, shall have the characteristics, (v) shall be signed and sealed, and (vi) the principal of and interest thereon shall be payable, all if and as provided with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds, and in the manner required or indicated, in ARTICLE II of this Resolution. Each substitute Series 2022C Bond shall bear a letter and/or number to distinguish it from each other Series 2022C Bond. Each fully registered Series 2022C Bond delivered in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022C Bond or portion thereof as permitted or required by any provision of this Resolution shall constitute one of the Series 2022C Bonds for all purposes of this Resolution, and may again be converted and exchanged or replaced.

(d) Authentication Certificate. On each substitute Series 2022C Bond issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022C Bond or Series 2022C Bonds issued under this Resolution there shall be printed thereon a Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate (the "**Authentication Certificate**"), in the form set forth in the FORM OF BOND. An authorized representative of the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, before the delivery of any such Series 2022C Bond, date and manually sign the Authentication Certificate, and no such Series 2022C Bond shall be deemed to be issued or outstanding unless the Authentication Certificate is so executed. Upon the execution of the Authentication Certificate, the converted and exchanged or replaced Series 2022C Bond shall be valid, incontestable, and enforceable in the same manner and with the same effect as the Initial Bonds which originally were delivered pursuant to this Resolution, approved by the Attorney General, and registered by the Comptroller.

(e) Restrictions on Transfer or Exchange. Neither the Board, the State nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (i) to issue, transfer, or exchange any Series 2022C Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Series 2022C Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (ii) to transfer or exchange any Series 2022C Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; except that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of Series 2022C Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any such Series 2022C Bond which has been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon surrender thereof. In which event, the Paying Agent/Registrar may make such arrangements as it deems appropriate for notation on each new Series 2022C Bond issued in exchange for or upon transfer of the Series 2022C Bond so selected for redemption of an appropriate legend to the effect that such new Series 2022C Bond has been so selected for redemption.

(f) Payment of Fees. The registered owner of any Series 2022C Bond requesting any conversion and exchange shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges for converting and exchanging any such Series 2022C Bond or portion thereof, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, all as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange; except that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Series 2022C Bond or any portion or portions thereof in any Authorized Denomination, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of the unredeemed portion of a Series 2022C Bond which has been redeemed in part prior to maturity, as provided in this Resolution, such fees and charges will be paid by the Board. In addition, the Board hereby covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022C Bonds that it will pay the (i) reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for its services with respect to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Series 2022C Bonds, when due, and (ii) fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for services with respect to the transfer or registration of Series 2022C Bonds, and with respect to the conversion and exchange of Series 2022C Bonds solely to the extent above provided.

**Section 2.08 Owners of Bonds.** The Person in whose name any Series 2022C Bond shall be registered in the Registration Books at any time shall be treated as the absolute owner thereof for all purposes of this Resolution, whether such Series 2022C Bond shall be overdue, and the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary unless otherwise required by law; and payment of, or on account of, the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on any such Series 2022C Bond shall be made only to such registered owner. All such payments shall be valid and effectual to satisfy and discharge the liability upon such Series 2022C Bond to the extent of the sum or sums so paid.

**Section 2.09 Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.**

(a) Replacement. In the event any outstanding Series 2022C Bond is damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall cause to be printed, executed, and delivered, a new Series 2022C Bond of the same principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, maturity date, and interest rate, as the damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022C Bond, in replacement for such Series 2022C Bond in the manner hereinafter provided.

(b) Application for Replacement. Application for replacement of damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022C Bonds shall be made to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022C Bond, the applicant for a replacement Series 2022C Bond shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless from any loss or damage with respect thereto. Also, in every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022C Bond, the applicant shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence to their satisfaction of the loss, theft or destruction of such Series 2022C Bond, as the case may be. In every case of damage or mutilation of a Series 2022C Bond, the applicant shall surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation the Series 2022C Bond so damaged or mutilated.

(c) Payment in Lieu of Replacement. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, in the event any such Series 2022C Bond shall have matured, and no default has occurred which is then continuing in the payment of the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022C Bond, the Board may authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a damaged or mutilated Series 2022C Bond) instead of issuing a replacement Series 2022C Bond, provided security or indemnity is furnished as above provided in this Section.

(d) Payment of Costs. Prior to the issuance of any replacement Series 2022C Bond, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall charge the owner of such Series 2022C Bond with all legal, printing, and other expenses in connection therewith. Every replacement Series 2022C Bond issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section by virtue of the fact that any Series 2022C Bond is lost, stolen or destroyed shall constitute a contractual obligation of the Board whether the lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022C Bond shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Resolution equally and proportionately with any and all other Series 2022C Bonds duly issued under this Resolution.

(e) Legal Authority. In accordance with Chapter 1206, this Section shall constitute authority for the issuance of any such replacement Series 2022C Bond without necessity of further action by the Board of any other Person, and the duty of the replacement of such Series 2022C Bonds is hereby authorized and imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver such Series 2022C Bonds in the form and manner and with the effect, as provided in Section 2.07 for Series 2022C Bonds issued in conversion and exchange for other Series 2022C Bonds.

**Section 2.10 Successor Paying Agent/Registrars.** The Board covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022C Bonds that at all times while the Series 2022C Bonds are outstanding the Board will provide a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company to act as and perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds under this Resolution, and that the Paying Agent/Registrar will be one entity. The Board reserves the right to, and may, at its option, change the Paying Agent/Registrar upon not less than sixty (60) days' written notice to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In the event that the entity at any time acting as Paying Agent/Registrar (or its successor by merger, acquisition, or other method) should resign or otherwise cease to act as such, the Board covenants that promptly it will appoint a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company which shall be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any state, authorized under such laws to exercise trust powers, subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority, to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Resolution. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the previous Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall transfer and deliver the Registration Books (or a copy thereof), along with all other pertinent books and records relating to the Series 2022C Bonds, to the new Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Board. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board promptly will cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar to each registered owner of the Series 2022C Bonds, by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice also shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar and the Designated Payment/Transfer Office. By accepting the position and performing as such, each Paying Agent/Registrar shall be deemed to have agreed to the provisions of this Resolution, and a certified copy of this Resolution shall be delivered to each Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 2.11 Book-Entry Only System.** The Initial Bonds shall be delivered to the Underwriters against payment received therefrom on the Date of Delivery. The senior managing underwriter named in Section 11.01 hereof, acting as the representative for the Underwriters, shall be required to promptly surrender the Initial Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar for exchange. Series 2022C Bonds issued in exchange therefor shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, as registered owner of the Series 2022C Bonds, and held in the custody of DTC. Unless otherwise requested by DTC, a single certificate will be issued and delivered to DTC for each maturity of the Series 2022C Bonds. Beneficial owners of Series 2022C Bonds will not receive physical delivery of Series 2022C Bond certificates except as provided hereinafter. For so long as DTC shall continue to serve as securities depository for the Series

2022C Bonds as provided herein, all transfers of beneficial ownership interests will be made by book-entry only, and no investor or other party purchasing, selling or otherwise transferring beneficial ownership of Series 2022C Bonds is to receive, hold or deliver any Series 2022C Bond certificate.

With respect to Series 2022C Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation to any DTC Participant or to any Person on whose behalf a DTC Participant holds an interest in the Series 2022C Bonds. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co. or any DTC Participant with respect to any ownership interest in the Series 2022C Bonds, (ii) the delivery to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022C Bonds, as shown on the Registration Books, of any notice with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds, including any notice of redemption, and (iii) the payment to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022C Bonds, as shown in the Registration Books, of any amount with respect to principal of or premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022C Bonds.

Replacement Series 2022C Bonds may be issued directly to beneficial owners of Series 2022C Bonds other than DTC, or its nominee, but only in the event that: (i) DTC determines not to continue to act as securities depository for the Series 2022C Bonds (which determination shall become effective no less than ninety (90) days after written notice to such effect to the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar); (ii) the Board has advised DTC of its determination (which determination is conclusive as to DTC and beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds) that DTC is incapable of discharging its duties as securities depository for the Series 2022C Bonds; or (iii) the Board has determined (which determination is conclusive as to DTC and the beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds) that the interests of the beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds might be adversely affected if such book-entry only system of transfer is continued. Upon occurrence of any of the foregoing events, the Board shall use its best efforts to attempt to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC. If the Board fails to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC, the Board shall cause to be authenticated and delivered replacement Series 2022C Bonds, in certificate form, to the beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds. In the event that the Board makes the determination noted in (ii) or (iii) above (provided that the Board undertakes no obligation to make any investigation to determine the occurrence of any events that would permit the Board to make any such determination), and has made provisions to notify the beneficial owners of Series 2022C Bonds of such determination by mailing an appropriate notice to DTC, it shall cause to be issued replacement Series 2022C Bonds in certificate form to beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds as shown on the records of DTC provided to the Board.

Whenever, during the term of the Series 2022C Bonds, the beneficial ownership thereof is determined by a book entry at DTC, the requirements in this Resolution of holding, delivering or transferring Series 2022C Bonds shall be deemed modified to require the appropriate Person or entity to meet the requirements of DTC as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

If at any time, DTC ceases to hold the Series 2022C Bonds as securities depository, all references herein to DTC shall be of no further force or effect.

**Section 2.12 All Bonds On Parity.** No EDAP Bond shall be entitled to priority of payment over any other EDAP Bond in the application of any moneys made available by law for the payment thereof, irrespective of the fact that some of the EDAP Bonds may have been or may be delivered prior to the

delivery of other EDAP Bonds, it being the intent of this Resolution that all EDAP Bonds shall rank equally on parity with each other.

### ARTICLE III

#### **REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY**

**Section 3.01 Limitation on Redemption.** Unless otherwise provided in the Approval Certificate, the Series 2022C Bonds shall be subject to redemption before scheduled maturity only as provided in this Article. Any provision of this Article, including, without limitation, any provisions relating to the method or selection of Series 2022C Bonds for redemption may be modified in an Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.02 Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.** The Series 2022C Bonds shall be subject to optional redemption and mandatory redemption by the Board on behalf of the State prior to maturity in the manner and at the redemption price as described in the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed upon the execution of the Approval Certificate to reflect the redemption provisions, if any, applicable to Bonds as provided for in the Approval Certificate.

#### **Section 3.03 Partial Redemption.**

(a) The Series 2022C Bonds redeemed in part shall be selected for redemption as described in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) A portion of a single Bond of a denomination greater than an Authorized Denomination may be redeemed but only in a principal amount equal to a minimum Authorized Denomination or any integral multiple thereof. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall treat each minimum Authorized Denomination of such Bond as though it were a single Bond for purposes of selection for redemption.

(c) Upon surrender of any Bond for redemption in part, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver an exchange Bond in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Bond so surrendered.

#### **Section 3.04 Notice of Redemption.**

(a) The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of the Series 2022C Bonds or any portion thereof. Notice of any redemption of the Series 2022C Bonds shall be given to the registered owners thereof by the Paying Agent/Registrar in the manner provided in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) In addition to the manner of providing notice of redemption of the Series 2022C Bonds as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice of redemption of the Series 2022C Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at least thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date to each registered securities depository and to the MSRB. In addition, in the event of a redemption caused by an advance refunding of the Series 2022C Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall send a second notice of redemption to the Persons specified in the immediately preceding sentence at least thirty (30) days but not more than ninety (90) days prior to the actual redemption date. Any notice sent to the registered securities depositories or the MSRB shall be sent so that they are received at least two (2) days prior to the general mailing, publication or electronic posting date of such notice. The Paying

Agent/Registrar shall also send a notice of redemption to the registered owner of any Series 2022C Bonds who has not sent the Series 2022C Bonds in for redemption sixty (60) days after the redemption date. The failure to send, mail or receive any such notice described in this clause (b), or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Series 2022C Bond.

(c) The Board reserves the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022C Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of monies and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying/Agent Registrar instructing the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such monies and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Series 2022C Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

(d) Each redemption notice, whether required in the FORM OF BOND or otherwise by this Resolution, shall contain a description of the Series 2022C Bonds to be redeemed, including the complete name of the Series 2022C Bonds, the series, the date of issue, the interest rate, the maturity date, the CUSIP number, if any, the amounts called of each Series 2022C Bond, the publication and mailing date for the notice, the date of redemption, the redemption price, the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar and the address at which the Series 2022C Bond may be redeemed including a contact person and telephone number.

(e) All redemption payments made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners of the Series 2022C Bonds shall include a CUSIP number relating to each amount paid to such registered owner.

(f) Should notice to call Series 2022C Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022C Bonds so called for redemption, no Series 2022C Bond shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Series 2022C Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022C Bonds as provided herein or in the Series 2022C Bonds.

**Section 3.05 Payment Upon Redemption.**

(a) By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

(b) Upon presentation and surrender of any Bond called for redemption at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar on or after the date fixed for redemption, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall pay the principal of and accrued interest on such Bond to the date of redemption from the money provided for that purpose.

**Section 3.06 Effect of Redemption.**

(a) Notice of redemption having been given, and due provision having been made for payment, Series 2022C Bonds or portions thereof called for redemption shall become due and payable on the date fixed for redemption; thereafter, such Series 2022C Bonds or portions thereof shall cease to bear interest from the date fixed for redemption, whether or not such Series 2022C are presented and surrendered for payment on such date.

(b) If the Board shall fail to make provision for the payment of all sums due on a redemption date, then any Series 2022C Bond or portion thereof called for redemption shall continue to bear interest until due provision is made for the payment of same by the Board.

**ARTICLE IV**

**FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES**

**Section 4.01 Form of Bond and Certificates.** The form of all Series 2022C Bonds, including the form of the Authentication Certificate and the form of Assignment to be printed on each of the Series 2022C Bonds, and the form of registration certificate of the Comptroller that shall accompany the Initial Bonds, shall be substantially in the form as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, with such appropriate variations, omissions or insertions as are permitted or required by this Resolution or the applicable Approval Certificate. The Series 2022C Bonds may have such letters, numbers or other identifying marks of identification (including identifying numbers and letters of the Committee on Uniform Securities Identification Procedures of the American Bankers Association) and such legends and endorsements thereon as may, consistent herewith, be approved by the Chair of the Board or the Authorized Representative.

**Section 4.02 Opinion of Bond Counsel.** A copy of the approving opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, bond counsel to the Board in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds, in the form in which it is to be delivered upon payment for the Series 2022C Bonds, either will be printed on the reverse side of or otherwise attached to the Series 2022C Bonds or will be delivered to DTC if the Series 2022C Bonds are held in book-entry only form; and the use of the lithographed or printed facsimile signature of the Executive Administrator to certify to the correctness of such copy is hereby authorized.

**Section 4.03 Printing of Statement of Insurance.** The Board hereby authorizes the printer of the Series 2022C Bonds to print thereon any statement of insurance with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds furnished by any municipal bond insurance company insuring the Series 2022C Bonds.

**ARTICLE V**

**SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS;  
ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS**

**Section 5.01 General Obligations.** The EDAP Bonds, including the Previously Issued EDAP Bonds and the Series 2022C Bonds, constitute general obligations of the State pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on each of

the EDAP Bonds when due, the full faith and credit of the State and, in the manner herein provided, the resources of the Board are hereby pledged.

**Section 5.02 Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.** It is found, determined and confirmed that Development Fund II has been established in the State Treasury. Pursuant to the Act, Development Fund II shall contain the State Participation Account, the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account and the Financial Assistance Account. In addition, Development Fund II may contain such additional accounts as the Board determines are necessary and convenient for the administration of Development Fund II.

**Section 5.03 Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds.**

(a) Section 49-d-8 and Legislative Powers. All Bond proceeds (other than any proceeds to be used to refund outstanding bonds or other obligations) shall be deposited in the State Treasury to the credit of the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account. Section 49-d-8 provides that accounts within Development Fund II shall consist of certain identified items, and Subsection (g) of Section 49-d-8 further states that:

“[Section 49-d-8] being intended only to establish a basic framework and not to be a comprehensive treatment of the Texas Water Development Fund II, there is hereby reposed in the legislature full power to implement and effectuate the design and objects of [Section 49-d-8], including the power to delegate such duties, responsibilities, functions, and authority to the Texas Water Development Board as it believes necessary.”

(b) Economically Distressed Areas Program Account. Consistent with the Act and Section 49-d-8, the “Texas Water Development Fund II Economically Distressed Areas Program Account” (the “**Economically Distressed Areas Program Account**”) shall receive such moneys as described below, and the moneys therein shall be used as described below:

- (i) Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds designated by the Board as issued for EDAP Projects;
- (ii) money from the sale, transfer, or lease of a EDAP Project that was acquired, constructed, reconstructed, developed, or enlarged with money from the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account;
- (iii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to EDAP Bonds designated by the Board as issued for EDAP Projects;
- (iv) investment income earned on money on deposit in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account; and
- (v) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the credit of the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account.

Except for those moneys that the Board determines are unavailable for such purpose, moneys on deposit in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account shall be used to pay principal and interest on the EDAP Bonds. The Board may use moneys on deposit in the Economically Distressed Areas Program

Account for EDAP Projects in any manner that the Board determines necessary for the administration of the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account, consistent with the provisions of Section 49-d-8 and the laws of the State, including specifically the Act, and this Resolution. Moneys on deposit in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account also be used for payment of the expenses of the Board incurred in connection with the issuance of the EDAP Bonds and the administration of Development Fund II.

(c) Bond Payment Account. The Board has established in the State Treasury the "Texas Water Development Fund II Economically Distressed Areas Program Bond Payment Account" (the "Bond Payment Account"), as a special account into which shall be deposited in the manner, within the time limits, and from sources as prescribed in Sections 5.04 and 5.05, amounts sufficient to pay when due the principal of and premium, if any, and interest payable on the EDAP Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds.

#### **Section 5.04 Flow of Funds For Debt Service.**

(a) Transfers for Payments of Bonds. While and so long as any EDAP Bond is outstanding, on or before the date interest or interest and principal on the Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board shall cause to be transferred, from the moneys available for such purpose in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account, to the Bond Payment Account an amount which shall be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the EDAP Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for moneys currently on deposit in the Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

(b) Notice to Comptroller of Insufficient Funds. If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within fifteen (15) days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account for transfer to the Bond Payment Account, as described in subsection (a) of this Section, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the EDAP Bonds which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, it is hereby made the duty of the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof to request the Comptroller to deposit in the Bond Payment Account out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, not later than three (3) days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money shall have been received in the State Treasury, an amount sufficient so that the total amount in the Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

(c) Use of Remaining Moneys. After making the transfers for the benefit of the Bond Payment Account as provided above in this Section, other available moneys remaining in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for all of the purposes for

which the Board may expend moneys in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account under Section 49-d-8.

(d) Bond Enhancement Agreement. Payments to be made by the Board under the terms of a Bond Enhancement Agreement shall be governed by the resolution adopted by the Board authorizing the execution and delivery of such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

(e) Transfers Upon Board Resolution. Anything contained in this Section to the contrary notwithstanding, money in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account representing proceeds from a series of EDAP Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance shall not be available for transfer to the Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the Bond Payment Account. Proceeds from the Series 2022C Bonds shall be deposited to the Bond Payment Account to the extent specified in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 5.05 Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment.** The Board recognizes the absolute and ultimate obligation of the State to provide during each Fiscal Year all money necessary for the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the EDAP Bonds, including payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest become due, out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, in such Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, as set forth in Subsection (e) of Section 49-d-8, as follows:

“... If there is not enough money in any account available to pay the principal of and interest on the general obligation bonds issued for such account, including money to make payments by the Texas Water Development Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to principal of or interest on such bonds, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the state treasury in each fiscal year not otherwise appropriated by this constitution an amount that is sufficient to pay the principal of and interest on such general obligation bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year or to make bond enhancement payments with respect to those bonds.”

**Section 5.06 Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller.** The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to make the deposits and transfers required under all provisions of the resolutions authorizing the EDAP Bonds, including this Resolution. The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to do all things necessary or convenient to make current funds available at the place of payment for the EDAP Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds) to pay principal of and interest on all EDAP Bonds as they mature and come due and to provide such current funds as are required for the redemption thereof prior to maturity, or to make any payments under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, all in accordance with their respective authorizing resolutions. It is made the duty of the Comptroller to make such deposits and transfers as are required in instances wherein the Board exercises its option to call EDAP Bonds for payment prior to maturity. Remittances to the place of payment for the EDAP Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying

Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds) of money for payment of principal and interest or for redemption of EDAP Bonds must be made in accordance with the provisions hereof.

**Section 5.07 Payment of Bonds.** The Board hereby covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the EDAP Bonds (including the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds) for the payment of interest on and principal of the EDAP Bonds, and any premium thereon, becoming due on each interest or principal payment date. The Board further covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the payments, if any, to be made under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to the principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds. In addition, the Board covenants that such moneys shall be forwarded to the place of payment for the EDAP Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement, no later than each such interest or principal payment date.

**Section 5.08 Cooperation with State Officers.** It is the duty of the Board, its officers, employees and agents (who are hereby so authorized and directed) to cooperate with and aid the Comptroller in calculating the amounts to be deposited in, or transferred to, the appropriate accounts and in ascertaining the amounts to be remitted to the place of payment for the EDAP Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

**Section 5.09 Investment of Funds.** All money in Development Fund II and the accounts created therein that is not immediately committed to the purposes thereof or the payment of the EDAP Bonds issued for any such account may be invested by the Board in Eligible Investments, and the Board may sell any Eligible Investment at the governing market rate.

## ARTICLE VI

### COVENANTS AND REMEDIES

**Section 6.01 Special Covenant.** The Board covenants that it will faithfully and promptly deposit into the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account all money received from the sale of obligations acquired from Political Subdivisions with moneys from the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account.

**Section 6.02 Covenants to Maintain Tax-Exempt Status.**

(a) Definitions. When used in this Section, the following terms have the following meanings:

“**Closing Date**” means the date on which the Common Issue Bonds are first authenticated and delivered to the initial purchasers against payment therefor.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, effective on or before the Closing Date.

“**Computation Date**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Gross Proceeds**” means any proceeds as defined in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations, and any replacement proceeds as defined in Section 1.148-1(c) of the Regulations, of the Common Issue Bonds.

“**Investment**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Nonpurpose Investment**” means any investment property, as defined in section 148(b) of the Code, in which Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds are invested and which is not acquired to carry out the governmental purposes of the Common Issue Bonds.

“**Rebate Amount**” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-1(b) of the Regulations.

“**Regulations**” means any proposed, temporary, or final Income Tax Regulations issued pursuant to Sections 103 and 141 through 150 of the Code, and 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, which are applicable to the Common Issue Bonds. Any reference to any specific Regulation shall also mean, as appropriate, any proposed, temporary or final Income Tax Regulation designed to supplement, amend or replace the specific Regulation referenced.

“**Yield**” of

(i) any Investment has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-5 of the Regulations;  
and

(ii) the Common Issue Bonds has the meaning set forth in Section 1.148-4 of the Regulations.

(b) Not to Cause Interest to Become Taxable. The Board shall not use, permit the use of, or omit to use Gross Proceeds or any other amounts (or any property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed directly or indirectly with Gross Proceeds) in a manner which if made or omitted, respectively, would cause the interest on any Common Issue Bond to become includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owner thereof for federal income tax purposes. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, unless and until the Board receives a written opinion of counsel nationally recognized in the field of municipal bond law to the effect that failure to comply with such covenant will not adversely affect the exemption from federal income tax of the interest on any Common Issue Bond, the Board shall comply with each of the specific covenants in this Section.

(c) No Private Use or Private Payments. Except as permitted by section 141 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall at all times prior to the last stated maturity of the Common Issue Bonds:

(1) take any action necessary to assure that state or local governments exclusively own, operate and possess all property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed or refinanced directly or indirectly with Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds (including property financed or refinanced with Gross Proceeds of the Refunded Bonds), and not use or permit the use of such Gross Proceeds (including all contractual arrangements with terms different than those applicable

to the general public) or any property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds in any activity carried on by any person or entity (including the United States or any agency, department and instrumentality thereof) other than a state or local government, unless such use is solely as a member of the general public; and

(2) take any action necessary to assure that state or local governments do not directly or indirectly impose or accept any charge or other payment by any person or entity who is treated as using Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds or any property the acquisition, construction or improvement of which is to be financed or refinanced directly or indirectly with such Gross Proceeds, unless either (i) such use is merely as a member of the general public on the same terms as all other members of the general public, except possibly any rate differences corresponding to amount of use or (ii) such charge or payment consists of taxes of general application within the state or local governments or interest earned on investments acquired with such Gross Proceeds pending application for their intended purposes.

(d) No Private Loan. Except to the extent permitted by section 141 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not use Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds and shall take any action necessary to assure that Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds are not used to make or finance loans to any person or entity other than a state or local government. For purposes of the foregoing covenant, such Gross Proceeds are considered to be “loaned” to a person or entity if: (1) property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds is sold or leased to such person or entity in a transaction which creates a debt for federal income tax purposes; (2) capacity in or service from such property is committed to such person or entity under a take-or-pay, output or similar contract or arrangement; or (3) indirect benefits, or burdens and benefits of ownership, of such Gross Proceeds or any property acquired, constructed or improved with such Gross Proceeds are otherwise transferred in a transaction which is the economic equivalent of a loan.

(e) Allocation of, and Limitation on, Expenditures for Loans to Political Subdivisions. The Board shall account for the expenditure of the proceeds from the sale of the Common Issue Bonds and any investment earnings thereon to be used for the purposes described in Section 2.01 on its books and records in accordance with the requirements of the Code. The Board agrees to obtain the advice of nationally-recognized bond counsel if such expenditure fails to comply with the foregoing to assure that such expenditure will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Common Issue Bonds.

(f) Disposition of Loans to Political Subdivisions. Loans to Political Subdivisions will not be sold or otherwise disposed in a transaction resulting in the receipt by the Board of cash or other compensation, unless the Board obtains an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel that such sale or other disposition will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Common Issue Bonds, the proceeds of which were used to make or refinance the making of such loans. The Board shall assure that Political Subdivisions, or any related persons thereto, will be prohibited from purchasing the Common Issue Bonds or a portion thereof in an amount related to the amount of the loan to be acquired by the Board from any such Political Subdivision.

(g) Not to Invest at Higher Yield. Except to the extent permitted by section 148 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not at any time prior to the final stated maturity of the Common Issue Bonds directly or indirectly invest Gross Proceeds in any Investment, if as a result of

such investment the Yield of any Investment acquired with Gross Proceeds, whether then held or previously disposed of, exceeds the Yield of the Common Issue Bonds.

(h) Not Federally Guaranteed. Except to the extent permitted by section 149(b) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not take or omit to take any action which would cause the Common Issue Bonds to be federally guaranteed within the meaning of section 149(b) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder.

(i) Information Report. The Board shall timely file the information required by section 149(e) of the Code with the Secretary of the Treasury on Form 8038-G or such other form and in such place as the Secretary may prescribe.

(j) Rebate of Arbitrage Profits. Except to the extent otherwise provided in section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder:

(1) The Board shall account for all Gross Proceeds (including all receipts, expenditures and investments thereof) on its books of account separately and apart from all other funds (and receipts, expenditures and investments thereof) and shall retain all records of accounting for at least six years after the day on which the last outstanding Common Issue Bond is discharged. However, to the extent permitted by law, the Board may commingle Gross Proceeds of the Common Issue Bonds with other money of the Board, provided that the Board separately accounts for each receipt and expenditure of Gross Proceeds and the obligations acquired therewith.

(2) Not less frequently than each Computation Date, the Board shall calculate the Rebate Amount in accordance with rules set forth in section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder. The Board shall maintain such calculations with its official transcript of proceedings relating to the issuance of the Common Issue Bonds until six years after the final Computation Date.

(3) As additional consideration for the purchase of the Common Issue Bonds by the purchasers thereof and the loan of the money represented thereby and in order to induce such purchase by measures designed to insure the excludability of the interest thereon from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, the Board shall pay to the United States the amount that when added to the future value of previous rebate payments made for the Common Issue Bonds equals (i) in the case of a Final Computation Date as defined in Section 1.148-3(e)(2) of the Regulations, one hundred percent (100%) of the Rebate Amount on such date; and (ii) in the case of any other Computation Date, ninety percent (90%) of the Rebate Amount on such date. In all cases, the rebate payments shall be made at the times, in the installments, to the place and in the manner as is or may be required by section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, and shall be accompanied by Form 8038-T or such other forms and information as is or may be required by Section 148(f) of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder. In order to facilitate compliance with this covenant, a "Rebate Fund" is hereby established by the Board for the sole benefit of the United States of America, and such fund shall not be subject to the claim of any other Person, including,

without limitation, any bondholder. The Rebate Fund is established for the additional purpose of compliance with section 148 of the Code.

(4) The Board shall exercise reasonable diligence to assure that no errors are made in the calculations and payments required by paragraphs (2) and (3), and if an error is made, to discover and promptly correct such error within a reasonable amount of time thereafter (and in all events within one hundred eighty (180) days after discovery of the error), including payment to the United States of any additional Rebate Amount owed to it, interest thereon, and any penalty imposed under Section 1.148-3(h) of the Regulations.

(k) Not to Divert Arbitrage Profits. Except to the extent permitted by section 148 of the Code and the Regulations and rulings thereunder, the Board shall not, at any time prior to the earlier of the stated maturity or final payment of the Common Issue Bonds, enter into any transaction that reduces the amount required to be paid to the United States pursuant to Subsection (j) of this Section because such transaction results in a smaller profit or a larger loss than would have resulted if the transaction had been at arm's length and had the Yield of the Common Issue Bonds not been relevant to either party.

(l) Elections. The Board hereby directs and authorizes the Executive Administrator and the Chief Financial Officer of the Board, either or any combination of them, to make elections permitted or required pursuant to the provisions of the Code or the Regulations, as they deem necessary or appropriate in connection with the Common Issue Bonds, in the Certificate as to Tax Exemption or similar or other appropriate certificate, form or document.

(m) Common Issue Bonds Not Hedge Bonds.

(1) At the time the original bonds refunded by the Common Issue Bonds were issued, the Board reasonably expected that at least 85% of the spendable proceeds of such bonds would be spent within three years after such bonds were issued.

(2) Not more than 50% of the proceeds of the original bonds refunded by the Common Issue Bonds were invested in Nonpurpose Investments having a substantially guaranteed Yield for a period of 4 years or more.

(n) Current Refunding. The Series 2022C Bonds are being issued exclusively to pay and discharge in full the Refunded Bonds and such payment of the Refunded Bonds will occur within ninety (90) days after the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds.

**Section 6.03 Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.** The Board covenants that it will maintain within the funds and accounts described in Section 5.03 such accounts and subaccounts as the Board, in cooperation with the Comptroller, determines necessary for the convenient and efficient administration of such funds and accounts so as not to commingle moneys derived from the issuance of or dedicated to the payment of bonds or other obligations issued by the Board, the interest on which is exempt from federal income taxation under the applicable provisions of the Code.

**Section 6.04 Remedies of Bondholders.** All rights available to the owners of the EDAP Bonds under the Constitution and the laws of the State, including, without limitation, Section 17.970, Texas Water Code, to compel the performance of their official duties by the Board, its officers and employees, and by

other officers of the State to the end that the principal of and interest on the EDAP Bonds may be paid promptly, are hereby recognized.

**Section 6.05 Bond Enhancement Agreements.** Pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 17.954, Texas Water Code, the Board reserves the right at any time and from time to time to enter into one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements that the Board hereafter determines to be necessary or appropriate to place the obligation of the Board, as represented by the Series 2022C Bonds, in whole or in part, on the interest rate, currency, cash flow, or other basis desired by the Board.

## ARTICLE VII

### SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

#### **Section 7.01 Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.**

(a) Amendments Requiring Consent. The registered owners of Series 2022C Bonds aggregating in principal amount 51% of the aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of the Series 2022C Bonds at the time outstanding (but not including in any case Series 2022C Bonds which may then be held or owned by or for the account of the Board) shall have the right from time to time to approve an amendment of this Resolution which may be deemed necessary or desirable by the Board; *provided, however*, that nothing herein contained shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions contained in this Resolution or in the Series 2022C Bonds so as to:

- (i) make any change in the maturity of any of the Series 2022C Bonds;
- (ii) reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the Series 2022C Bonds;
- (iii) reduce the principal amount or maturity amount, as applicable, payable on any of the Series 2022C Bonds;
- (iv) modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on or maturity amount of, as the case may be, any Series 2022C Bond, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;
- (v) change the minimum percentage of the principal amount or maturity amount of the Series 2022C Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment; or
- (vi) affect the rights of the registered owners of less than all of the Series 2022C Bonds then outstanding;

unless such amendment or amendments be approved by the registered owners of all of the Series 2022C Bonds at the time outstanding.

(b) Notice. If at any time the Board shall desire to amend this Resolution under this Section, the Board shall cause notice of the proposed amendment to be published in a financial newspaper or journal published in The City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas, once during each calendar week for at least four (4) successive calendar weeks. Such notice shall briefly set forth the nature of the proposed amendment and shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board and the

designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for inspection by all registered owners of Series 2022C Bonds. Such publication is not required, however, if notice in writing is given to each registered owner.

(c) Adoption of Amendatory Resolution. Whenever at any time, within one (1) year from the date of this publication of said notice or other service of written notice, the Board shall receive an instrument or instruments executed by the registered owners of at least 51% in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of Series 2022C Bonds then outstanding, which instrument or instruments shall refer to the proposed amendment described in said notice and which specifically consent to and approve such amendment in substantially the form of the copy thereof on file with the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board may adopt the amendatory resolution in substantially the same form.

(d) Effectiveness of Consents. Any consent given by the registered owner of a Series 2022C Bond pursuant to the provisions of this Resolution shall be irrevocable for a period of six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of the notice provided for in this Resolution, and shall be conclusive and binding upon all future registered owners of the same Series 2022C Bond during such period. Such consent may be revoked at any time after six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of such notice by the registered owner who gave such consent, or by a successor in title, by filing notice of such revocation with the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Board, but such revocation shall not be effective if the registered owners of 51% in aggregate principal amount and maturity amount, as applicable, of the Series 2022C Bonds outstanding as in this Section defined have, prior to the attempted revocation, consented to and approved the amendment.

(e) Proof of Ownership. For the purposes of this Section, proof of ownership of any Series 2022C Bond shall be established by the registration of any such Series 2022C Bond on the Registration Books kept and maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 7.02 Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners.**

(a) Amendments Not Requiring Consent. The foregoing provisions of this Article notwithstanding, the Board may, without prior notice to or the consent of the registered owners, pursuant to an amendatory resolution, from time to time:

(i) impose conditions or restrictions additional to, but not in diminution of, those contained in this Resolution, respecting the issuance of EDAP Bonds;

(ii) undertake covenants additional to but not inconsistent with those contained in this Resolution;

(iii) correct any ambiguity or correct or supplement any inconsistent or defective provision contained in this Resolution or any amendatory resolution;

(iv) adopt amendments to this Resolution that provide for the payment of principal of and interest on the EDAP Bonds or the payment of administrative expenses of the Board from Bond proceeds; or

(v) adopt amendments to this Resolution (including specifically, without limitation, amendments under authority of Section 7.02 and 9.04) that, in the opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board, do not adversely affect the registered owners.

(b) Specific Amendments not Requiring Consent. In addition to the foregoing, the Board expressly reserves the right, without prior notice to or consent from the registered owners of the EDAP Bonds, to amend the provisions of ARTICLE VII of this Resolution to reflect subsequent amendments to the State Constitution and the Act, including, without limitation, amendments altering:

- (i) the administration of Development Fund II; or
  - (ii) the accounts within Development Fund II; or
  - (iii) the deposit or application of moneys received by the Board as repayments of loans to Political Subdivisions and interest on those loans, or proceeds from the sale, transfer or lease of facilities held for any account within Development Fund II; or
  - (iv) the use of the proceeds of the EDAP Bonds; or
  - (v) the rights, duties and obligations of the Comptroller as specified in ARTICLE VII;
- or
- (vi) the procedure for payment of the EDAP Bonds; or
  - (vii) the payment of expenses of administering Development Fund II and other authorized expenses of the Board; or
  - (viii) the administration of the Water Infrastructure Fund;

*provided, however,* that such amendments to this Resolution can be made only if:

(1) the Board receives an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that such amendments comply with the Act, that the EDAP Bonds continue to be general obligations of the State and the State Constitution provides for appropriation out of the first money coming into the State Treasury in each Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, of an amount sufficient to pay the principal of or interest on the EDAP Bonds that mature or become payable during that Fiscal Year, to the extent the same are not otherwise paid from funds pledged to their payment;

(2) bond counsel acceptable to the Board renders an opinion substantially to the effect that any such amendment will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on any tax-exempt EDAP Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes; and

(3) each nationally-recognized securities rating agency that issued a rating at the time the EDAP Bonds were initially delivered to the underwriters thereof and that has a then existing rating thereon confirms in writing that subsequent to any such amendment, the EDAP Bonds will continue to be rated as general obligation bonds of the State.

(c) Notice. If the Board so amends this Resolution as provided in subsection (b) above, it shall cause notice of such amendment to be published one (1) time in a financial newspaper or journal of general circulation in the City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas. Such notice shall contain a

summary of the amendatory language, recite that the conditions set forth in clauses (A), (B) and (C) of subsection (b) have been satisfied, and recite the effective date of such amendment. Such notice shall be published within thirty (30) days of the effective date of such amendment as set forth in such notice. Such notice shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board for inspection. Such publication is not required, however, if written notice is given to each registered owner of the EDAP Assistance Bonds.

**Section 7.03 Effect of Amendatory Resolutions.** Upon the adoption of any amendatory resolution pursuant to the provisions of this Section, this Resolution shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with such amendatory resolution, and the respective rights, duties and obligations of the Board under this Resolution and all the registered owners of outstanding Series 2022C Bonds shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder, subject in all respects to such amendments.

**Section 7.04 Bonds May Bear Notation.** Series 2022C Bonds authenticated and delivered after the execution of any amendatory resolution pursuant to this Article may bear a notation in form approved by the Paying Agent/Registrar as to any matter provided for in such amendatory resolution. If the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar shall so determine, new Series 2022C Bonds so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, to any such amendatory resolution may be prepared and executed by the Board and authenticated and delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in exchange for the Series 2022C Bonds then outstanding.

## ARTICLE VIII

### PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS

#### **Section 8.01 Issuance and Sale of Bonds.**

(a) Approval Certificate. Each Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall approve, execute and deliver one or more Approval Certificates, which completed and executed Approval Certificates shall evidence the sale (including the date of such sale) of a series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds by the Board to the Underwriters. The Approval Certificate shall contain a finding substantially to the effect that based on recommendations made to the Authorized Representative by the financial advisor to the Board, the terms of the sale of the Series 2022C Bonds were the most advantageous to the Board reasonably obtained, and the sale of the Series 2022C Bonds is in the best interests of the Board.

(b) Underwriters. Ramirez & Co., Inc. is hereby designated as the senior managing underwriter for the Underwriters. The Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall select such additional investment banking firms as deemed appropriate to assure that the Series 2022C Bonds are sold on terms advantageous to the Board.

(c) Purchase Agreement. The Purchase Agreement shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of EDAP Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance EDAP Projects. A Purchase Agreement shall contain the terms of the sale of the Series 2022C Bonds, as negotiated by the Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof. At the direction of an Authorized Representative, Series 2022C Bonds, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds may be sold, but are not required to be sold, pursuant to the terms of a common Purchase Agreement. Each Authorized Representative is hereby authorized and directed to execute the Purchase Agreement for

and on behalf of the Board. An Authorized Representative's approval of a Purchase Agreement shall be conclusively evidenced by the execution thereof. It is hereby officially found, determined, and declared that the terms of this sale were and are to be negotiated under authority granted by Section 17.955, Texas Water Code.

(d) Ratings. No Series 2022C Bonds shall be delivered unless prior to delivery, the particular series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds shall have been rated by a nationally recognized rating agency for municipal securities in one of the four highest rating categories for long term obligations, as required by Chapter 1371.

(e) Payment of Attorney General Fee. The Board hereby authorizes the payment of the fee of the Attorney General for the examination of the proceedings relating to the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds, in the amount determined in accordance with the provisions of Section 1202.004, Texas Government Code.

(f) Effect of Determination Made by Authorized Representative. A finding or determination made by an Authorized Representative acting under the authority delegated thereto by this Resolution with respect to all matters relating to the issuance and sale of the Series 2022C Bonds shall have the same force and effect as a finding or determination made by the Board.

**Section 8.02 Official Statement.** Prior to execution of a Purchase Agreement, the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a preliminary Official Statement to be prepared for distribution by the Underwriters to prospective purchasers of the Series 2022C Bonds sold under the terms of such Purchase Agreement, such document to be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of EDAP Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance EDAP Projects, with such changes and completions as the Authorized Representative may deem necessary or appropriate to enable the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, to deem the preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, except for such omissions as are permitted by the Rule. Within seven (7) business days after the execution of a Purchase Agreement, the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a final Official Statement to be provided to the Underwriters in compliance with the Rule and the rules of the MSRB.

**Section 8.03 Custody of Bonds.** After the Initial Bonds have been executed, it shall be the duty of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, to deliver the Initial Bonds to the Attorney General for examination and approval. After the Initial Bonds shall have been approved by the Attorney General they shall be delivered to the Comptroller for registration. The Initial Bonds thus registered shall remain in the custody of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, or subject to the order of the Chair, until the sale of the Series 2022C Bonds to the Underwriters on the Date of Delivery.

**Section 8.04 Use of Bond Proceeds.** Proceeds from the sale of Series 2022C Bonds shall, promptly upon receipt by the Board, be deposited to the credit of the funds and accounts described in this Resolution and applied in the manner specified in the applicable Approval Certificate signed by an Authorized Representative.

## ARTICLE IX

**CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING****Section 9.01 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller.**

(a) General. The Board and the legal and beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds are third-party beneficiaries of the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. The Comptroller is required to observe the Continuing Disclosure Agreement in respect of any issue of "Securities," as defined in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement (which include the Series 2022C Bonds), for so long as the State remains an "obligated person" as defined in the Rule. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the MSRB as described below.

(b) Annual Reports of the State. Pursuant to the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The Comptroller is not obligated to provide such financial and operating data more frequently than on an annual basis. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the State of the general type included in the Bond Appendix. The Comptroller will update and provide this information within 195 days after the end of each fiscal year of the State. The updated information provided by the Comptroller need not be audited, but the Comptroller will provide audited financial statements of the State prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for governmental entities when the State Auditor completes its statutorily required audit of such financial statements. The accounting principles pursuant to which such financial statements must be prepared may be changed from time to time to comply with State law.

(c) Event Notices of the Comptroller. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller has also agreed to provide notice to the MSRB of any of the following events, with respect, to the Series 2022C Bonds, in a timely manner and not more than ten (10) business days after occurrence of the event:

(i) incurrence of a Financial Obligation of the State, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which affect security holders, if material; and

(ii) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which reflect financial difficulties.

(d) Change in State Fiscal Year. The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. If the State changes its fiscal year, the Comptroller will notify the MSRB of the change prior to the next date by which the Comptroller otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as described above.

**Section 9.02 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board.**

(a) Annual Reports of the Board. The Board shall provide annually to the MSRB, within 195 days after the end of each Fiscal Year ending in or after 2022, financial information and operating data

with respect to the Board and the State of the general type included in Tables 1 and 2 and Appendix B of the final Official Statement authorized by **Section 8.02** hereof, being the information described in **Exhibit B** hereto. Any financial statements so to be provided shall be (1) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in **Exhibit B** hereto and (2) audited, if the Board or the State, as appropriate, commissions an audit of such statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. If audited financial statements are not so provided, then the Board shall provide unaudited financial statements within the required time for the applicable Fiscal Year to the MSRB, and audited financial statements when and if audited financial statements become available.

(b) Event Notices of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner not in excess of ten (10) Business Days after the occurrence of any of the following events with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds:

- (1) Principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) Non-payment related defaults, if material;
- (3) Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
- (4) Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
- (5) Substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) Adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Series 2022C Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Series 2022C Bonds;
- (7) Modifications to rights of holders of the Series 2022C Bonds, if material;
- (8) Series 2022C Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
- (9) Defeasances;
- (10) Release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2022C Bonds, if material;
- (11) Rating changes;
- (12) Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Board;
- (13) The consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Board or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and

(14) Appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or change in the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar, if material.

As used in clause 12 above, the phrase “bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event” means the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Board in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, or if jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the Board and officials or officers of the Board in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner, of any failure by the Board to provide financial information or operating data in accordance with Section 9.02(a) by the time required by such Section.

(c) Change in Board Fiscal Year. If the Board changes its Fiscal Year, it will notify the MSRB of the change (and of the date of the new Fiscal Year end) prior to the next date by which the Board otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data pursuant to this Section.

**Section 9.03 Incorporation by Reference.** The financial information and operating data to be provided pursuant to this Section may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document (including an official statement or other offering document, if it is available from the MSRB) that theretofore has been provided to the MSRB or filed with the SEC. All filings shall be made electronically, in the format specified by the MSRB.

**Section 9.04 Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments.** The Board shall be obligated to observe and perform the covenants specified in this this Article for so long as, but only for so long as, the Board or the State remains an “obligated person” with respect to the Series 2022C Bonds within the meaning of the Rule, except that the Board in any event will give the notice required by Section 9.02(b) of any Series 2022C Bond calls and defeasance that cause the Board and the State to be no longer “obligated persons”.

The provisions of this Article are for the sole benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds, and nothing in this Article, express or implied, shall give any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy, or claim hereunder to any other Person. The Board undertakes to provide only the financial information, operating data, financial statements, and notices which it has expressly agreed to provide pursuant to this Article and does not hereby undertake to provide any other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of the Board's or the State's financial results, condition, or prospects or hereby undertake to update any information provided in accordance with this Article or otherwise, except as expressly provided herein. The Board does not make any representation or warranty concerning such information or its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Series 2022C Bonds at any future date.

UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL THE BOARD BE LIABLE TO THE HOLDER OR BENEFICIAL OWNER OF ANY SERIES 2022C BOND OR ANY OTHER PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR DAMAGES RESULTING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM ANY BREACH BY THE BOARD, WHETHER NEGLIGENT OR WITHOUT FAULT ON ITS PART, OF ANY COVENANT SPECIFIED IN THIS ARTICLE, BUT EVERY RIGHT AND REMEDY OF ANY SUCH PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR

OR ON ACCOUNT OF ANY SUCH BREACH SHALL BE LIMITED TO AN ACTION FOR MANDAMUS OR SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE.

All documents provided to the MSRB shall be accompanied by identifying information, as prescribed by the MSRB.

No default by the Board in observing or performing its obligations under this Article shall constitute a breach of or default under this Resolution for purposes of any other provision of this Resolution.

Nothing in this Article is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive, or otherwise limit the duties of the Board or the State under federal and State securities laws.

Should the Rule be amended to obligate the Board to make filings with or provide notices to entities other than the MSRB, the Board agrees to undertake such obligation in accordance with the Rule as amended.

The provisions of this Article may be amended by the Board from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the Board or the State, but only if (1) the provisions of this Article, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Series 2022C Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022C Bonds in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount (or any greater amount required by any other provision of this Resolution that authorizes such an amendment) of the outstanding Series 2022C Bonds consent to such amendment or (b) a Person that is unaffiliated with the Board and the State (such as nationally-recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022C Bonds. If the Board so amends the provisions of this Article, it shall include with any amended financial information or operating data next provided in accordance with Section 9.02(a) an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information or operating data so provided. The Board may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure requirement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Series 2022C Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022C Bonds.

## ARTICLE X

### DEFEASANCE

**Section 10.01 Series 2022C Bonds Deemed Paid.** Any Series 2022C Bond and the interest thereon shall be deemed to be paid, retired and no longer outstanding (a “Defeased Bond”), except to the extent hereinafter provided in this Article, when payment of the principal of such Series 2022C Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date (whether such due date be by reason of maturity or otherwise) either (i) shall have been made or caused to be made in accordance with the terms thereof, or (ii) shall have been provided for on or before such due date by irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other similar instrument (the “**Future Escrow Agreement**”) for such payment (1) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such

payment or (2) Defeasance Securities that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. At such time as a Series 2022C Bond shall be deemed to be a Defeased Bond hereunder, as aforesaid, such Series 2022C Bond and the interest thereon shall no longer be secured by, payable from, or entitled to the benefits of, the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account, and such principal and interest shall be payable solely from such money or Defeasance Securities. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, it is hereby provided that any determination not to redeem Defeased Bonds that is made in conjunction with the payment arrangements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) above shall not be irrevocable; provided, that in the proceedings providing for such payment arrangements, the Board (1) expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (2) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the payment arrangements; and (3) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

**Section 10.02 Investment in Defeasance Securities.** Any moneys so deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar may at the written direction of the Board be invested in Defeasance Securities, maturing in the amounts and times as hereinbefore set forth, and all income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar that is not required for the payment of the Series 2022C Bonds and interest thereon, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be turned over to the Board, or deposited as directed in writing by the Board. Any Future Escrow Agreement pursuant to which the money and/or Defeasance Securities are held for the payment of Defeased Bonds may contain provisions permitting the investment or reinvestment of such moneys in Defeasance Securities or the substitution of other Defeasance Securities upon the satisfaction of the requirements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) of Section 10.01. All income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar which is not required for the payment of the Defeased Bonds, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be remitted to the Board or deposited as directed in writing by the Board.

**Section 10.03 Paying Agent/Registrar Services.** Until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for such Defeased Bonds the same as if they had not been defeased, and the Board shall make proper arrangements to provide and pay for such services as required by this Resolution.

**Section 10.04 Selection of Series 2022C Bonds for Defeasance.** In the event that the Board elects to defease less than all of the principal amount of Series 2022C Bonds of a maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall select, or cause to be selected, such amount of Series 2022C Bonds by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate and consistent with the terms of this Resolution.

## ARTICLE XI

### **MATTERS RELATING TO THE REFUNDED BONDS**

**Section 11.01 Purpose for Refunding.** The Board hereby finds that the refunding of the Refunded Bonds is in the public interest as it enables the Board to produce a net present value savings. An Authorized Representative shall execute and deliver an Approval Certificate setting forth the amount of net present value savings realized as a result of the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, evidencing that the minimum savings threshold established in Section 2.01(c) of this Resolution has been met.

**Section 11.02 Escrow Agreement.**

The Escrow Agreement, in substantially the form attached to the Approval Certificate, is hereby approved by the Board, and the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is hereby authorized to execute and deliver the same on behalf of the Board. The redemption, discharge and defeasance of the Refunded Bonds shall be effected pursuant to the terms and provisions of the Escrow Agreement in substantially the form approved in the Approval Certificate, the terms and provisions of which are hereby approved, subject to such insertions, additions and modifications as shall be necessary (a) to provide that the sufficiency of the cash and/or escrowed securities deposited to be held pursuant to the Escrow Agreement shall be certified as to mathematical accuracy in a sufficiency certificate or a report prepared by a nationally recognized firm acceptable to the Board, its financial advisors and the Escrow Agent with respect to the adequacy of the escrowed securities referred to in the Escrow Agreement to pay, when due, the principal of, interest on, and any call premium requirements on the Refunded Bonds, (b) to comply with all applicable laws and regulations relating to the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, (c) to carry out the other intents and purposes of this Resolution, and (d) to comply with the terms set forth in the Approval Certificate.

**Section 11.03 Purchase of United States Treasury Obligations.**

In order to assure the purchase of any escrowed securities to be held pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is hereby authorized to make necessary arrangements for the subscription and purchase of, such obligations of the United States of America, or other securities or investments as may be permitted under State law and applicable federal tax law, in such amounts, maturities, and bearing interest at such rates as may be provided for in the sufficiency certificate or report referred to in Section 11.02, and the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is authorized, either prior to Closing or after the date thereof, to execute any and all subscriptions, purchase contracts, forward purchase contracts, commitments, letters of authorization, and other documents necessary or desirable, in the judgment of the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative, to effect the foregoing, and any actions heretofore taken by the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative for such purpose are hereby ratified and approved.

**Section 11.04 Redemption of Refunded Bonds.** Upon issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds, the Refunded Bonds identified in the Approval Certificate to be redeemed are hereby declared to be called for redemption on the redemption date or dates identified in the Approval Certificate, consistent with the provisions set forth in the respective proceedings authorizing their issuance with respect to the redemption of bonds at the option of the Board. In connection with the prior redemption of any of the Refunded Bonds as may be provided for in the Approval Certificate, the Authorized Representative is hereby directed to coordinate with the Escrow Agent to give notice of such redemption, in substantially the form attached to the Approval Certificate, in accordance with the applicable terms of the resolution that authorized such series of Refunded Bonds. In addition, the Authorized Representative is hereby directed to take such steps as may be necessary to provide registered owners of the Refunded Bonds notice that the obligations owned thereby have been escrowed to maturity or prior redemption.

**Section 11.05 Escrow Fund.**

An Escrow Fund may be established pursuant to an Approval Certificate to be maintained by the Escrow Agent for application as provided in the Escrow Agreement.

**Section 11.06 Transfer of Funds.**

The Board shall allocate remaining money in each of the interest and sinking funds and/or project funds for each series of Refunded Bonds to the series or subseries of Series 2022C Bonds which refund such bonds and transfer such funds to the applicable interest and sinking fund or the applicable Escrow Fund as may be determined by the Board pursuant to federal income tax law requirements.

**ARTICLE XII****MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**Section 12.01 Further Procedures.** The Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the General Counsel, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or any other officers of the Board and each of them, shall be and they are hereby expressly authorized, empowered and directed from time to time and at any time to do and perform all such acts and things and to execute, acknowledge and deliver in the name and under the seal of the Board and on behalf of the Board all agreements, instruments, or such other documents, whether mentioned herein or not, as may be necessary or desirable in order to carry out the terms and provisions of this Resolution, and the initial sale and delivery of the Series 2022C Bonds. In addition, prior to the initial delivery of the Series 2022C Bonds, the Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or the General Counsel of the Board and the Board's Bond Counsel are hereby authorized and directed to approve any technical changes or corrections to this Resolution or to any of the instruments authorized and approved by this Resolution: (i) in order to cure any technical ambiguity, formal defect, or omission in the Resolution or such other document; or (ii) as requested by the Attorney General or his representative to obtain the approval of the Series 2022C Bonds by the Attorney General and if such officer or counsel determines that such ministerial changes are consistent with the intent and purpose of the Resolution, which determination shall be final. In the event that any officer of the Board whose signature shall appear on any document shall cease to be such officer before the delivery of such document, such signature nevertheless shall be valid and sufficient for all purposes the same as if such officer had remained in office until such delivery.

**Section 12.02 Open Meeting; Notice.** It is hereby officially found and determined that the meeting at which this Resolution is adopted is open to the public as required by law at all times during which this Resolution and the subject matter thereof are discussed, considered and formally acted upon; and reasonable notice of this meeting was delivered to the Secretary of State of the State, as required by Chapter 551.

**Section 12.03 Prior Actions.** All actions taken by the Board authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds are in all things approved, ratified and confirmed, except that to the extent such actions conflict with any provision of this Resolution, the terms and provisions of this Resolution shall control and prevail.

**Section 12.04 Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge.** Chapter 1208 applies to the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds and the pledge of the credit of the State made pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and such pledge is therefore valid, effective, and perfected. If State law is amended at any time while the Series 2022C Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that such pledge is to be subject to the filing requirements of Chapter 9, then in order to preserve to the registered owners of the Series 2022C Bonds the perfection

of the security interest in said pledge, the Board agrees to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under State law to comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9 and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

ADOPTED AND APPROVED this February 2, 2022.

---

Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

**SCHEDULE I**

**LIST OF REFUNDABLE BONDS**

State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2012F (Economically Distressed Areas Program)

**LIST OF EXHIBITS**

<b>Exhibit A</b>	Form of Bond
<b>Exhibit B</b>	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board

**EXHIBIT A**

**FORM OF BOND**

NO. \_\_\_\_\_

\$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
STATE OF TEXAS  
WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BOND  
SERIES 2022C (ECONOMICALLY DISTRESSED AREAS PROGRAM)<sup>1</sup>

<u>MATURITY DATE</u>	<u>INTEREST RATE</u> %	<u>DATED DATE</u> _____, 2022	<u>CUSIP</u>
----------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------

Registered Owner:

Principal Amount:

ON THE MATURITY DATE SPECIFIED ABOVE, THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), hereby promises to pay to the registered owner specified above, or to the registered assignees hereof (either being hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount specified above and to pay interest thereon, from the dated date of this Bond specified above, to the date of its scheduled maturity or date of redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the rate of interest per annum specified above, with said interest being payable on February 1, 20\_, and semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, except that if the Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate appearing on the face of this Bond is dated later than February 1, 20\_, such interest is payable semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 following such date of authentication.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") in Dallas, Texas (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof as shown on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the fifteenth day of the month next preceding such interest payment date (the "Record Date") by check drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Board required to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner of record on the Record Date at its address as it appears on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described. The Board covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that no later than each principal payment date and interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Series 2022C Bonds (as defined herein) when due.

---

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

INTEREST ON the Series 2022C Bonds shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ANY PAYMENTS required to be made hereunder on any day which is not a Business Day (as defined below) shall be made instead on the next succeeding Business Day and no interest shall accrue on such payments in the interim. "Business Day" means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close. Notwithstanding the foregoing, during any period in which ownership of the Series 2022C Bonds is determined only by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022C Bonds, any payment to the securities depository, or its nominee or registered assigns, shall be made in accordance with existing arrangements between the Board and the securities depository.

THIS BOND is one of a series of Bonds of like tenor and effect except as to number, maturity, interest rate and right of prior redemption, dated as of the dated date of this Bond specified above, aggregating \_\_\_\_\_ (\$\_\_\_\_\_) (the "Series 2022C Bonds")<sup>1</sup>, issued pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-8"), Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-9"), Section 49-d-10 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-10"), and Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code ("Subchapter L"), and a resolution authorizing the issuance of the series of Bonds of which this is one, adopted by the Board and duly of record in the minutes of the Board (hereinafter called the "Bond Resolution"), for the purpose of conserving and developing the water resources of the State, to-wit, by providing funds for the refunding of the Refunded Bonds to achieve debt service savings and paying expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022C Bonds. In the Bond Resolution, the Board delegated to certain designated officials the authority to establish and approve the final terms of sale of the Series 2022C Bonds through the execution of one or more Approval Certificates (the Bond Resolution and applicable Approval Certificate are collectively referred to herein as the "Resolution"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Resolution.

THE SERIES 2022C BONDS having stated maturities on and after \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ shall be subject to redemption prior to maturity, at the option of the Board, in whole or in part, in Authorized Denominations, on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_, or on any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

THE SERIES 2022C BONDS maturing on August 1, in the years \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Term Bonds") are subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption annually, on August 1 of the years and in the principal amounts set forth below, plus accrued interest from the most recent interest payment date on which interest has been paid or fully provided for, to the redemption date:

**Term Bonds due August 1, 20**

<u>Mandatory Redemption Date</u> <u>(August 1)</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>
† Final Maturity	

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

THE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT of Term Bonds required to be redeemed shall be reduced, at the option of the Board, by the principal amount of Term Bonds which, at least 50 days prior to the mandatory sinking fund redemption date (1) shall have been defeased or acquired by the Board and delivered to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, (2) shall have been purchased and canceled by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the request of the Board with money in the Bond Fund, or (3) shall have been redeemed pursuant to the optional redemption provisions set forth above and not theretofore credited against a mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement. On or before August 1 of every year in which there are mandatory redemption requirements as defined above for the Term Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall determine the principal amount of Term Bonds that must be mandatorily redeemed on August 1 of such year, after taking into account deliveries for cancellation and prior redemption of Term Bonds as provided above.

IF FEWER THAN ALL OF THE SERIES 2022C BONDS are called for redemption, the maturities to be redeemed will be selected by the Board, and the Series 2022C Bonds to be redeemed within any one maturity will be selected by the Paying Agent/Registrar by lot (or in such other manner as the Paying Agent/Registrar may determine) in integral multiples of \$5,000; *provided, however*, that during any period in which ownership of such Series 2022C Bonds to be redeemed is determined only by a book-entry at DTC, or a successor securities depository, if fewer than all of such Series 2022C Bonds of the same maturity and bearing the same interest rate are to be redeemed, the particular Series 2022C Bonds of such maturity and bearing such interest rate will be selected in accordance with the arrangements between the Board and DTC or successor securities depository.

IF THE SERIES 2022C BONDS are no longer registered to DTC or its nominee, any redemption of less than all of a maturity of such Series 2022C Bonds shall be effected by the Paying Agent/Registrar among owners on a pro-rata basis subject to minimum Authorized Denominations. The Series 2022C Bonds or portions thereof to be redeemed shall be determined by the Paying Agent/Registrar, using such method as it shall deem fair and appropriate.

AT LEAST thirty (30) days prior to the date fixed for any redemption, (a) a written notice of such redemption shall be given to the registered owner of each Bond or a portion thereof being called for redemption by depositing such notice in the United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to each such registered owner at his address shown on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar, and (b) notice of such redemption either shall be published one (1) time in or posted electronically on the website of a financial journal or publication of general circulation in the United States of America or the State of Texas carrying as a regular feature notices of municipal bonds called for redemption; *provided, however*, that the failure to send, mail, or receive such notice described in clause (a) above, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond, and the Resolution provides that the provision of notice as described in clause (a) above shall be the only notice actually required in connection with or as a prerequisite to the redemption of any Bonds. By the date fixed for any such redemption due provision shall be made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for this Bond or the portion hereof which is to be so redeemed, plus accrued interest thereon to the date fixed for redemption. Should notice to call Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022C Bonds so called for redemption, no Bonds shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of

the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022C Bonds as provided herein or in the Resolution. By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

THE BOARD RESERVES the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022C Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of moneys and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying Agent/Registrar instruction the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such moneys and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

IF SUCH NOTICE of redemption is given, and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided in the paragraph above, this Bond, or the portion thereof which is to be so redeemed, thereby automatically shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity, and shall not bear interest after the date fixed for its redemption, and shall not be regarded as being Outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of this Bond or any portion hereof. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed, a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination, at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Board, all as provided in the Resolution

THIS BOND OR ANY PORTION OR PORTIONS HEREOF IN ANY AUTHORIZED DENOMINATION may be assigned and shall be transferred only in the registration books of the Board kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar acting in the capacity of registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds, upon the terms and conditions set forth in the Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any Authorized Denomination to the assignee or assignees. A new Bond or Bonds payable to such assignee, or to the previous registered owner in the case of the assignment and transfer of only a portion of this Bond, shall be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in conversion of and exchange for this Bond, all in the form and manner as provided in the next paragraph hereof for the conversion and exchange of other Bonds.

AS PROVIDED in the Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be, having the same maturity date and interest rate, in any Authorized Denomination, as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner or assignee, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office for cancellation.

NEITHER THE BOARD, the State of Texas, nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, transfer, exchange or make any conversion of any Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (b) to transfer or exchange any Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; provided, however, that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of the Series 2022C Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any Bonds which have been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon the surrender thereof. The registered owner requesting conversion and exchange of any Bond or portion thereof shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's customary fees and charges, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange, except, however, that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Bond or Bonds or portion thereof, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of a portion of a Bond which has been redeemed prior to maturity, as provided herein, the fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar will be paid by the Board.

WHENEVER the beneficial ownership of this Bond is determined by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022C Bonds, the foregoing requirements of holding, delivering or transferring this Bond shall be modified to require the appropriate person or entity to meet the requirements of the securities depository as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022C Bonds is changed by the Board, resigns or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Board has covenanted in the Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and promptly will cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Series 2022C Bonds.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the Board, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Board.

THE ISSUE of Bonds of which this is one shall be and is hereby made a general obligation of the State of Texas, pursuant to Section 49-d-8 and Subchapter L, and for the faithful performance of all covenants, recitals and stipulations herein contained, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and interest on this Bond when due, the resources of the Board and the full faith and credit of the State of Texas are hereby pledged.

PAYMENTS OF THE PRINCIPAL OF and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be made primarily from the "Texas Water Development Fund II Economically Distressed Areas Program Account" (the "Economically Distressed Areas Program Account") within the Texas Water Development Fund II ("Development Fund II") created by Section 49-d-8. The Economically Distressed Areas Program Account shall be comprised of (1) the Board's rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from such account, together with any evidence of such rights; (2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance; (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance; (4) money and assets attributable to bonds issued and sold by the Board for

such account, including money and assets transferred from the Texas Water Development Fund pursuant to Section 49-d-8; (5) money deposited to such account from the sale, transfer, or lease, in whole or in part, of facilities held for such account; (6) payments received by the Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to bonds issued for such account; (7) interest and other income received from investment of money in such account; and (8) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account. Proceeds from the sale of the bonds on deposit in the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account shall not be available to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part unless specifically authorized by the Board. The Bonds and all other bonds or other obligations issued or incurred by the Board pursuant to Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, Section 49-d-10, or Section 49-d-14 to provide funds for the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account of Development Fund II or to refund any such bonds or obligations are referred to herein as "EDAP Bonds". Section 49-d-8 provides that to the extent there is not money in any account available for payment of principal of and interest on the EDAP Bonds issued for such account, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the State Treasury (as defined in the Resolution) in each fiscal year, not otherwise appropriated by the Texas Constitution, an amount which is sufficient to pay the principal of and interest on such EDAP Bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year.

IT IS HEREBY certified and recited that all acts, conditions and things required to be done precedent to and in the issuance of this Bond and the series of which it forms a part have been properly done, have happened and have been performed in regular and due time, form and manner as required by the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas and the Resolution, and that the series of Bonds of which this is a part does not exceed any constitutional or statutory limitation, and that provision has been made for the payment of the principal of and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part as such principal and interest become due by a continuing appropriation heretofore made by Section 49-d-8 and by a pledge of the credit of the State of Texas.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, this Bond is executed with the lithographed or printed facsimile or manual signatures of the Chairwoman of the Texas Water Development Board and the Executive Administrator, and the seal of said Board is lithographed, printed or manually impressed hereon.

THE STATE OF TEXAS

---

Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

[To accompany Definitive Bonds only]

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Resolution described on the face of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of a Bond, Bonds or a portion of a Bond or Bonds of an issue which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST  
COMPANY, N.A., Paying Agent/Registrar

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Representative

ASSIGNMENT

FOR VALUE RECEIVED the undersigned hereby sells, assigns, and transfers unto (Print or typewrite name, address, and zip code of transferee:)

\_\_\_\_\_(Social Security or other identifying number \_\_\_\_\_) the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints \_\_\_\_\_ attorney to transfer the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

DATED:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature guaranteed:  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
NOTICE: The signature on this assignment must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears on the face of the within Bond in every particular.

[To accompany Initial Bond(s) only]

REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE OF  
TEXAS COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER	)	
OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS	)	REGISTER NO. _____
THE STATE OF TEXAS	)	

I HEREBY CERTIFY that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and duly registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

WITNESS my signature and seal of office this \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts

(SEAL)

The Initial Series 2022C Bond shall be in the form set forth therefor in this Exhibit, except as follows:

Heading and paragraphs one (1) through three (3) shall be replaced as follows:

NO. T-1 \$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
STATE OF TEXAS  
WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BOND  
SERIES 2022C (ECONOMICALLY DISTRESSED AREAS PROGRAM)<sup>1</sup>

Bond Date:  
\_\_\_\_\_, 2022

Registered Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

Principal Amount: \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), for value received, acknowledges itself indebted to and hereby promises to pay to the registered owner named above, or the registered assigns thereof, the Principal Amount hereinabove stated on August 1 in the years and in principal installments in accordance with the following schedule:

<u>Year of Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Interest Rates (%)</u>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

(Information to be inserted from Approval Certificate).

(without right of prior redemption) and to pay interest on the unpaid principal installments hereof from the date of its delivery at the per annum rates of interest specified above computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months; such interest being payable on February 1, 20\_\_, and each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, until maturity. Principal installments of this Series 2022C Bond are payable in the year of maturity or on a redemption date to the registered owner hereof by The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender, at its designated offices in East Syracuse, New York (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). Interest is payable to the registered owner of this Bond whose name appears on the "Security Register" maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the "Record Date," which is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding each interest payment date, and interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar by check sent United States Mail, first class postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Security Register or by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. All payments of principal of, premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be without exchange or collection charges to the registered owner hereof and in any coin or currency of the United States of America, which at the time of payment is legal tender for the payment of public and private debts. If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to be closed, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to be closed; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

**EXHIBIT B**

**DESCRIPTION OF ANNUAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION  
OF THE BOARD**

The following information is referred to in Section 9.02 of this Resolution.

**Annual Financial Statements and Operating Data**

The financial information and operating data with respect to the Board to be provided annually in accordance with such Section is the quantitative financial information and operating data pertaining to the Board included in Tables 1 and 2 of the Official Statement and in Appendix B to the Official Statement relating to the Bonds.

**Accounting Principles**

The accounting principles referred to in such Section are generally accepted accounting principles for governmental units as prescribed by the Government Accounting Standards Board from time to time, as such principles may be changed from time to time to comply with state law or regulation.

**BOND RESOLUTION  
OF THE  
  
TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD  
  
AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF  
  
STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE  
REFUNDING BONDS, TAXABLE SERIES 2022D  
(STATE PARTICIPATION PROGRAM)  
  
AND SUCH OTHER SUBSERIES  
  
AS MAY BE DESIGNATED PURSUANT TO THE TERMS HEREOF  
  
ADOPTED:  
  
FEBRUARY 2, 2022**

Table of Contents

Page

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Section 1.01	Definitions .....	2
Section 1.02	Rules of Construction.....	8
Section 1.03	Interpretations .....	8

ARTICLE II

THE SERIES 2022D BONDS

Section 2.01	Authorization of Bonds .....	8
Section 2.02	Denominations, Date and Interest Rates .....	10
Section 2.03	Maturities and Amounts .....	10
Section 2.04	Execution of Bonds .....	10
Section 2.05	Temporary Bonds.....	10
Section 2.06	Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar .....	11
Section 2.07	Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds .....	11
Section 2.08	Owners of Bonds.....	13
Section 2.09	Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.....	14
Section 2.10	Successor Paying Agent/Registrars .....	14
Section 2.11	Book-Entry Only System .....	15
Section 2.12	All Bonds On Parity .....	16

ARTICLE III

REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY

Section 3.01	Limitation on Redemption .....	16
Section 3.02	Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.....	16
Section 3.03	Partial Redemption.....	16
Section 3.04	Notice of Redemption .....	17
Section 3.05	Payment Upon Redemption.....	18
Section 3.06	Effect of Redemption.....	18

ARTICLE IV

FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES

Section 4.01	Form of Bond and Certificates .....	18
Section 4.02	Opinion of Bond Counsel .....	19
Section 4.03	Printing of Statement of Insurance.....	19

Table of Contents  
(continued)

Page

ARTICLE V

SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS;  
ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS

Section 5.01	General Obligations .....	19
Section 5.02	Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.....	19
Section 5.03	Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds .....	19
Section 5.04	Flow of Funds For Debt Service .....	20
Section 5.05	Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment .....	21
Section 5.06	Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller .....	22
Section 5.07	Payment of Bonds.....	22
Section 5.08	Cooperation with State Officers .....	22
Section 5.09	Investment of Funds.....	22

ARTICLE VI

COVENANTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.01	Special Covenant.....	23
Section 6.02	Taxable Bonds .....	23
Section 6.03	Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.....	23
Section 6.04	Remedies of Bondholders.....	23
Section 6.05	Bond Enhancement Agreements .....	23

ARTICLE VII

SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS

Section 7.01	Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.....	23
Section 7.02	Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners.....	25
Section 7.03	Effect of Amendatory Resolutions.....	26
Section 7.04	Bonds May Bear Notation .....	26

ARTICLE VIII

PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS

Section 8.01	Issuance and Sale of Bonds .....	27
Section 8.02	Official Statement.....	28
Section 8.03	Custody of Bonds.....	28
Section 8.04	Use of Bond Proceeds .....	28

ARTICLE IX

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING

Section 9.01	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller .....	28
--------------	--	----

Table of Contents  
(continued)

	Page
Section 9.02	Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board..... 29
Section 9.03	Incorporation by Reference..... 30
Section 9.04	Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments..... 31
ARTICLE X	
DEFEASANCE	
Section 10.01	Series 2022D Bonds Deemed Paid ..... 32
Section 10.02	Investment in Defeasance Securities..... 32
Section 10.03	Paying Agent/Registrar Services ..... 33
Section 10.04	Selection of Series 2022D Bonds for Defeasance..... 33
ARTICLE XI	
MATTERS RELATING TO THE REFUNDED BONDS	
Section 11.01	Purpose for Refunding ..... 33
Section 11.02	Escrow Agreement..... 33
Section 11.03	Purchase of United States Treasury Obligations ..... 33
Section 11.04	Redemption of Refunded Bonds ..... 34
Section 11.05	Escrow Fund ..... 34
Section 11.06	Transfer of Funds ..... 34
ARTICLE XII	
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS	
Section 12.01	Further Procedures ..... 34
Section 12.02	Open Meeting; Notice ..... 35
Section 12.03	Prior Actions..... 35
Section 12.04	Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge..... 35
SCHEDULE I	List of Refundable Bonds ..... I-1
Exhibit A	Form of Bond ..... A-1
Exhibit B	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board..... B-1

**RESOLUTION**

**OF THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE OF STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BONDS, TAXABLE SERIES 2022D (STATE PARTICIPATION PROGRAM), AND RESOLVING OTHER MATTERS RELATED THERETO**

WHEREAS, the Texas Water Development Board (the “**Board**”) has previously issued, sold, and delivered general obligation bonds of the State of Texas (the “**State**”), to fund one or more accounts of the Texas Water Development Fund II (referred to herein as “**Development Fund II**”) established pursuant to the provisions of Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Constitution of the State (the “**State Constitution**”), approved by the voters on November 4, 1997 (“**Section 49-d-8**”); and

WHEREAS, in furtherance of the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-9**”), and Subchapter L, Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code (the “**Act**”), the Board has heretofore issued and there are currently outstanding obligations of the State as described in “**SCHEDULE I**” attached to this Resolution and incorporated herein by reference (collectively referred to as the “**Refundable Bonds**”); and

WHEREAS, in addition to bonds authorized by other provisions of the State Constitution, Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution (“**Section 49-d-11**”) authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds of the State, at its determination and on a continuing basis, for one or more accounts of Development Fund II, in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of the bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6,000,000,000; and

WHEREAS, Section 49-d-11 states that (i) Section 49-d-8 applies to the bonds authorized by Section 49-d-11, (ii) the limitation in Section 49-d-8 that the Board may not issue bonds in excess of the aggregate principal amount of previously authorized bonds does not apply to the bonds authorized by and issued under Section 49-d-11, and (iii) a limitation on the percentage of state participation in any single project imposed by Article III of the State Constitution does not apply to a project funded with the proceeds of bonds issued under authority of Section 49-d-8 or Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, since the Refundable Bonds were not originally authorized by Section 49-d-11, bonds issued to refund the Refundable Bonds would not count against the authorization established by Section 49-d-11; and

WHEREAS, current market conditions are favorable to achieve some level of debt service savings if the Board were to refund some or all of the Refundable Bonds; and

WHEREAS, the Board finds it advisable and determines that it is a public purpose and in the best interests of the State, in accordance with authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, and the Act, to authorize issuance of the 2022D Bonds (as defined herein) to refund all or a portion of the Refundable Bonds in accordance with Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371 (hereinafter defined), subject to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, as hereinafter provided; and

WHEREAS, bonds authorized to be issued pursuant to this Resolution are reasonably expected by the Board to be paid from revenue sources other than the general revenues of the State;

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD:**

ARTICLE I

**DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS**

**Section 1.01 Definitions.** Throughout this Resolution (except in the FORM OF BOND attached as **Exhibit A** to this Resolution), in addition to the terms defined in the preamble to this Resolution the following terms and expressions used herein shall have the meanings specified in this Section.

**“Act”** means Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

**“Amortization Installment”** means the amount of money which is required for retirement of Term Bonds (whether at maturity or by mandatory redemption and including redemption premium, if any).

**“Approval Certificate”** means collectively one or more certificates executed by an Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof which finalize the pricing and terms of the Series 2022D Bonds pursuant to the parameters set forth in this Resolution, including specifying the issuance of one or more subseries.

**“Attorney General”** means the Attorney General of the State.

**“Authentication Certificate”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.07.

**“Authorized Denomination”** means \$5,000 principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and any integral multiple thereof.

**“Authorized Representative”** means each of the Executive Administrator, the Chief Financial Officer, the Development Fund Manager and the General Counsel of the Board, acting individually and not jointly.

**“Board”** means the Texas Water Development Board.

**“Bond”** or **“Bonds”** means a Series 2022D Bond or Series 2022D Bonds, as applicable.

**“Bond Appendix”** means the quarterly appendix prepared by the Comptroller which sets forth certain information regarding the State (including its government, finances, economic profile, and other matters) for use by State entities when issuing debt.

**“Bond Enhancement Agreement”** means any agreement of the nature described in Section 17.954(c), Texas Water Code.

**“Bond Payment Account”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 5.03.

**“Book-Entry-Only System”** means the system maintained by the securities depository described in Section 2.11.

**“Business Day”** means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close.

**“Chapter 9”** means Chapter 9, Texas Business & Commerce Code.

**“Chapter 551”** means Chapter 551, Texas Government Code.

**“Chapter 1206”** means Chapter 1206, Texas Government Code.

**“Chapter 1207”** means Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code.

**“Chapter 1208”** means Chapter 1208, Texas Government Code.

**“Chapter 1371”** means Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code.

**“Code”** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended by all legislation, if any, enacted on or before the Date of Delivery.

**“Comptroller”** means the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

**“Continuing Disclosure Agreement”** means the Amended and Restated Continuing Disclosure Agreement dated March 12, 2019, between the Comptroller and the Texas Bond Review Board, as may be further amended from time to time.

**“Date of Delivery”** means the date of delivery of the Series 2022D Bonds to the Underwriters.

**“Dated Date”** means the date designated in the Approval Certificate as such with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds.

**“Defeasance Securities”** means, unless otherwise specified in an Approval Certificate, (i) Federal Securities, (ii) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022D Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, (iii) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the Series 2022D Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than “AAA” or its equivalent, and (iv) any other then authorized securities or obligations that may be used to defease obligations such as the Series 2022D Bonds under the then applicable laws of the State.

**“Designated Payment/Transfer Office”** means the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar designated as the place for payment, transfer and exchange of the Series 2022D Bonds, initially, the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar in Dallas, Texas.

**“Development Fund I”** means the Texas Water Development Fund as described in the Development Fund I Constitution Provisions.

**“Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions”** means Sections 49-c, 49-d, 49-d-1, 49-d-2, 49-d-5, 49-d-6 and 49-d-7 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Development Fund II”** has the meaning specified for that term in the preamble to this Resolution.

**“DTC”** means The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, and its successors and assigns.

**“DTC Participant”** means the securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations on whose behalf DTC was created to hold securities to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among DTC Participants.

**“Economically Distressed Areas Program Account”** means the account described in Section 17.958, Texas Water Code.

**“EDAP Project”** means any project found and determined by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Subchapter K.

**“Eligible Investments”** means those investments in which the Board is authorized by law and its investment policy to invest its funds.

**“Escrow Agent”** means the Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as escrow agent under the Escrow Agreement and any successor thereto as therein permitted.

**“Escrow Agreement”** means an escrow agreement, deposit agreement, escrow deposit letter, escrow instructions or other comparable document (including any amendments thereto) between the Board and the Escrow Agent providing for the payment of the Refunded Bonds, in substantially the form approved in the Approval Certificate.

**“Escrow Fund”** means each escrow fund or account created with respect to the Refunded Bonds pursuant to the Escrow Agreement.

**“Federal Securities”** means direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America.

**“Financial Assistance Account”** means the account described in Section 17.959, Texas Water Code.

**“Financial Obligation”** means a (a) debt obligation; (b) derivative instrument entered into in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation; or (c) guarantee of any such debt obligation or any such derivative instrument; provided that “Financial Obligation” shall not include municipal securities as to which a final official statement (as defined in the Rule) has been provided to the MSRB consistent with the Rule. The Board and the Comptroller intend the words used in this definition to have the same meanings as when they are used in the Rule, as evidenced by SEC Release No. 34-83885, dated August 20, 2018.

**“Fiscal Year”** means the period of time beginning in each calendar year on September 1 and ending on August 31 of the calendar year next following.

“**Form of Bond**” means the Form of Bond attached hereto as **Exhibit A**.

“**GASB**” means the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

“**Holder**” or “**Owner**” means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022D Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

“**Initial Bonds**” means the Series 2022D Bonds authorized, issued, sold and delivered hereunder and upon which the registration certificate, manually executed by or on behalf of the Comptroller, has been placed.

“**Interest Payment Date**” means each February 1 and August 1, beginning on the first such date occurring after the Date of Delivery.

“**Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds**” means:

- (1) the Board’s rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from the State Participation Account, together with any evidence of such rights;
- (2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board’s rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance;
- (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance;
- (4) money and assets attributable to State Participation Bonds, including money and assets transferred to the State Participation Account from Development Fund I pursuant to Subsection (b) of Section 49-d-8; and
- (5) money deposited in the State Participation Account pursuant to Subsection (c) of Section 49-d-8.

“**MSRB**” means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

“**Official Statement**” means the Official Statement pertaining to the Series 2022D Bonds, and authorized by Section 8.02 hereof.

“**Owner**” or “**Holder**” means the person who is the registered owner of a Series 2022D Bond or subseries thereof, as shown on the Registration Books.

“**Outstanding**” means, when used to modify the bonds issued, authenticated and delivered under this Resolution, the Series 2022D Bonds excluding (i) Series 2022D Bonds which have been exchanged or replaced or otherwise surrendered for cancellation, (ii) Series 2022D Bonds which have been paid, (iii) Series 2022D Bonds which have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided, and (iv) Series 2022D Bonds with respect to which this Resolution has been discharged pursuant to ARTICLE XIII.

“**Paying Agent/Registrar**” means the financial institution named in Section 2.06 or any successor thereto named in accordance with the provisions of Section 2.10.

**“Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement”** means the paying agent agreement between the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, relating to the performance of the duties and responsibilities of the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds.

**“Person”** means any natural person, firm, partnership, association, corporation, or public body.

**“Political Subdivision”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 17.001(6), Texas Water Code.

**“Previously Issued State Participation Bonds”** means bonds previously issued to provide funds for the State Participation Account and any refunding bonds issued in replacement thereof.

**“Purchase Agreement”** means collectively one or more bond purchase agreements between the Board and the Underwriters relating to the sale of the Series 2022D Bonds.

**“Refundable Bonds”** means those bonds identified in “SCHEDULE I” to this Resolution.

**“Refunded Bonds”** means those Refundable Bonds selected by the Authorized Representative to be refunded with the proceeds of the Series 2022D Bonds, as identified in the Approval Certificate.

**“Registration Books”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 2.06.

**“Regulations”** has the meaning specified for that term in Section 9.02.

**“Resolution”** means this Resolution authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds and all amendments hereto.

**“Rule”** means SEC Rule 15c2-12, as amended from time to time.

**“Rural Water Assistance Fund”** means the account within the general revenue fund of the State established pursuant to Subchapter R.

**“SEC”** means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

**“Section 49-d-8”** means Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Section 49-d-9”** means Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Section 49-d-11”** means Section 49-d-11 of Article III of the State Constitution.

**“Series 2022A Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

**“Series 2022B Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B, authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

**“Series 2022C Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of a Bond Resolution of the Board dated February 2, 2022.

**“Series 2022D Bonds”** means the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program), authorized to be issued in accordance with the terms of this Resolution and the terms and conditions set forth in the Approval Certificate relating thereto, including any subseries.

**“State”** means the State of Texas.

**“State Constitution”** means the Constitution of the State.

**“State Participation Account”** means the account described in Section 17.957, Texas Water Code.

**“State Participation Bonds”** means the general obligation bonds of the State issued by the Board under authority granted by Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, and Section 49-d-11 to provide funds for the State Participation Account of Development Fund II, including the Previously Issued State Participation Bonds and the Series 2022D Bonds.

**“State Participation Project”** means any project found by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Section 16.131, Texas Water Code.

**“State Treasury”** means the treasury of the State under the administration and supervision of the Comptroller.

**“Subchapter K”** means Subchapter K, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

**“Subchapter Q”** means Subchapter Q, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

**“Subchapter R”** means Subchapter R, Chapter 15, Texas Water Code.

**“Term Bonds”** means Series 2022D Bonds so designated by the Board herein or in the Approval Certificate.

**“Underwriters”** means the investment banking firms that contract to purchase the Series 2022D Bonds pursuant to the Purchase Agreement and in accordance with Section 8.01.

**“Water Assistance Project”** means any project for which the Board is authorized to provide financial assistance, in accordance with the purposes described by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions or Section 49-d-8, other than (i) an EDAP Project or (ii) a State Participation Project. The term “Water Assistance Project” includes, without limitation, transfers to or deposits to the credit of any state revolving fund administered by the Board under the provisions of the Texas Water Code, specifically Chapter 15, Texas Water Code, and transfers to or deposits to the credit of the Rural Water Assistance Fund or the Water Infrastructure Fund.

“**Water Infrastructure Fund**” means the special fund in the State Treasury established pursuant to Subchapter Q and administered by the Board.

**Section 1.02 Rules of Construction.**

(a) Designation of Articles, Sections. For all purposes of this Resolution, unless the context requires otherwise, all references to designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions are to the Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this Resolution. The words “herein,” “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Resolution as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

(b) References. Except where the context otherwise requires, terms defined in this Resolution to impart the singular number shall be considered to include the plural number and vice versa. References to any named Person means that party and its successors and assigns. References to any constitutional, statutory or regulatory provision means such provision as it exists on the date this Resolution is adopted by the Board and any future amendments thereto or successor provisions thereof. Any reference to the payment of principal in this Resolution shall be deemed to include the payment of Amortization Installments. References in this Resolution to the FORM OF BOND refer to the form attached to this Resolution as Exhibit A.

**Section 1.03 Interpretations.** The titles and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Resolution have been inserted for convenience of reference only and are not to be considered a part hereof and shall not in any way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

**ARTICLE II**

**THE SERIES 2022D BONDS**

**Section 2.01 Authorization of Bonds.**

(a) Purpose; Maximum Amount. For the purposes set forth in Section 49-d-8 and Section 49-d-9, the negotiable general obligation bonds of the State to be known and designated as **STATE OF TEXAS WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BONDS, TAXABLE SERIES 2022D (STATE PARTICIPATION PROGRAM)**, are hereby authorized and may be issued from time to time for the purpose of conserving and developing the water resources of the State, to-wit, (i) by providing funds for the refunding of the Refunded Bonds to achieve debt service savings, and (ii) by providing funds for the payment of expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds. The combined principal amount of all Series 2022D Bonds, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, and Series 2022C Bonds shall not exceed \$330,000,000.

(b) Delegation of Authority. As authorized by Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371, each Authorized Representative, individually and not jointly, is hereby authorized, appointed and designated to act on behalf of the Board in selling and delivering, in one or more series or subseries, the Series 2022D Bonds and carrying out the procedures specified in this Resolution, including determining:

(i) the date for issuance and sale, and the Dated Date, of each series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds;

(ii) the selection of the specific maturities or series (whole or part) of the Refunded Bonds to be refunded;

(iii) the name and any special or additional series designation for each series or subseries of the Series 2022D Bonds;

(iv) the principal amount of each series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds to be sold (subject to the limitations set forth in Section 2.01(a)), as well as the principal amount of each stated maturity within a series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds;

(v) the price at which the Series 2022D Bonds shall be sold;

(vi) the principal amount of Series 2022D Bonds to be sold as current interest bonds, if any; the principal amount of Series 2022D Bonds to be sold as premium capital appreciation bonds, if any;

(vii) the principal amortization schedule for the Series 2022D Bonds (including, without limitation, the designation of any of the maturities of the Series 2022D Bonds as Term Bonds and any Amortization Installments to be deposited to the credit of the Bond Payment Account relating to any Term Bond so designated);

(viii) in accordance with the provisions of ARTICLE V hereof, the redemption features of the Series 2022D Bonds (including any associated premium);

(ix) the rate or rates of interest to be borne by the Series 2022D Bonds;

(x) whether to acquire a Bond Enhancement Agreement in support of all or any portion of the Series 2022D Bonds; and

(xi) any other matters relating to the issuance, sale and delivery of the Series 2022D Bonds; all of which shall be specified in one or more Approval Certificates executed in accordance with the terms hereof and within the parameters set forth in Section 2.01(c) below.

(c) Parameters. The Authorized Representative may exercise any authority granted under Chapter 1207 and Chapter 1371 to effect the refunding of the Refundable Bonds so long as on the date the Purchase Agreement is executed:

(i) the net present value savings realized as a result of refunding the Refunded Bonds is not less than two percent (2.00%);

(ii) the maximum maturity of the Series 2022D Bonds issued hereunder shall not exceed the maximum maturity date of the Refunded Bonds being refunded by such series;

(iii) the true interest cost rate applicable to the Series 2022D Bonds shall not exceed 6.0%;

(iv) subject to the limitation specified in Section 2.01(a), the par amount of the Series 2022D Bonds shall not exceed the par amount of the Refunded Bonds being refunded by the Series 2022D Bonds; and

(v) the final series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds issued hereunder must be sold no later than six months after the date of adoption of this Resolution (though the closing of a particular series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds sold in accordance with this provision may occur after such date as long as such closing period is determined by an Authorized Representative to be of reasonable duration).

**Section 2.02 Denominations, Date and Interest Rates.** The Series 2022D Bonds shall be in any Authorized Denomination, shall be numbered consecutively from R-1 upward, shall be dated the date described in the Approval Certificate, and shall be in substantially the form attached hereto as **Exhibit A** with such changes and modifications as are set forth in the Approval Certificate. Interest on the Series 2022D Bonds shall be payable on the Interest Payment Dates. The Series 2022D Bonds shall bear interest at rates as specified in the Approval Certificate. Interest shall be payable in the manner and on the terms provided in this Resolution and the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed in accordance with the terms of the Approval Certificate to reflect the aggregate principal amount of the Series 2022D Bonds sold to the Underwriters.

**Section 2.03 Maturities and Amounts.** The Series 2022D Bonds shall mature on the dates and in the amounts as set forth in the principal amortization schedule contained in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 2.04 Execution of Bonds.** Each Series 2022D Bond shall be executed for and on behalf of the State as a general obligation of the State by having placed thereon the lithographed or printed facsimile or the manual signatures of the Chair of the Board and the Executive Administrator, and the manually impressed or lithographed or printed facsimile seal of the Board. Lithographed or printed facsimile signatures and seal shall have the same effect as if each Series 2022D Bond had been manually signed by such officers, and the seal had been manually impressed on each Series 2022D Bond.

In case any officer whose signature is on a Series 2022D Bond no longer holds such office at the time of authentication, or was the proper officer on the date of execution but not on the nominal date of action, the Series 2022D Bond shall nevertheless be valid.

**Section 2.05 Temporary Bonds.** Pending the preparation of definitive Series 2022D Bonds, the Board may execute and, upon the Board's request, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver, one or more temporary Series 2022D Bonds substantially of the tenor of the definitive Series 2022D Bonds in lieu of which they are delivered, with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations, as evidenced by the execution of such temporary Series 2022D Bonds, as such officers executing such temporary Series 2022D Bonds may determine.

Until exchanged for Series 2022D Bonds in definitive form, such Series 2022D Bonds in temporary form shall be entitled to the benefit and security of this Resolution. The Board, without unreasonable delay, shall prepare, execute and deliver to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and upon the presentation and surrender of the temporary Series 2022D Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor, definitive Series 2022D Bonds of the same maturity,

aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate as the temporary Series 2022D Bonds surrendered. The exchange shall be made without any charge to any owner of Series 2022D Bonds.

**Section 2.06 Appointment and Duties of Paying Agent/Registrar.**

(a) Appointment. The Board hereby appoints The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as the initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds. The Board shall keep or cause to be kept at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar books or records of the registration and transfer of the Series 2022D Bonds (the “**Registration Books**”), and the Board hereby appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar as its registrar and transfer agent to keep such books or records and make such transfers and registrations under such reasonable regulations as the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe; and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall make such transfers and registrations as herein provided. It shall be the duty of the Paying Agent/Registrar to obtain from the registered owner and record in the Registration Books the address of such registered owner of each Series 2022D Bond to which payments with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds shall be mailed, as herein provided. The Board or its designee shall have the right to inspect the Registration Books during regular business hours of the Paying Agent/Registrar, but otherwise the Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep the Registration Books confidential and, unless otherwise required by law, shall not permit their inspection by any other entity. The Board hereby further appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar to act as the paying agent for paying the principal of and interest on the Series 2022D Bonds, and to act as its agent to convert and exchange or replace Series 2022D Bonds, all as provided in this Resolution. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep proper records of all payments made by the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds, and of all conversions and exchanges of such Series 2022D Bonds, and all replacements of such Series 2022D Bonds, as provided in this Resolution.

(b) Duties. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform such duties as are required of the Paying Agent/Registrar hereunder and under the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement. The Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is hereby authorized to execute and deliver for and on behalf of the Board the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement, which shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with State Participation Bonds previously issued by the Board, with such changes as the Executive Administrator may approve, such approval to be conclusively evidenced by the execution and delivery of such agreement by the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof.

**Section 2.07 Registration, Transfer and Exchange of Bonds.**

(a) Transfer. Registration of each Series 2022D Bond may be transferred on the Registration Books only upon presentation and surrender of such Series 2022D Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for transfer of registration and cancellation, together with proper written instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing the assignment of the Series 2022D Bond, or any portion thereof in any Authorized Denomination, to the assignee or assignees thereof, and the right of such assignee or assignees to have the Series 2022D Bond or any such portion thereof registered in the name of such assignee or assignees. Upon the assignment and transfer of any Series 2022D Bond or any portion thereof, a new substitute Series 2022D Bond or Series 2022D Bonds shall be issued in conversion and exchange therefor in the manner provided in this Section.

(b) Duty of Conversion, Exchange or Replacement. Pursuant to Chapter 1206, and particularly Subchapter B thereof, the duty of conversion and exchange or replacement of Series 2022D Bonds in the manner prescribed herein is hereby imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar. Each Series 2022D Bond may be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022D Bonds in the manner set forth herein. Each Series 2022D Bond issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, to the extent of the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount thereof, as the case may be, upon surrender of such Series 2022D Bond at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with a written request therefor duly executed by the registered owner or the assignee or assignees thereof, or its or their duly authorized attorneys or representatives, with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, at the option of the registered owner or such assignee or assignees, as appropriate, shall be converted into and exchanged for fully registered Series 2022D Bonds in the form prescribed in the FORM OF BOND of like series or subseries, in any Authorized Denomination (subject to the requirement hereinafter stated that each substitute Series 2022D Bond shall have a single stated maturity date), as requested in writing by such registered owner or such assignee or assignees, in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unpaid or unredeemed principal amount or maturity amount of any Series 2022D Bond or Series 2022D Bonds, as the case may be, so surrendered, and payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be. If a portion of any Series 2022D Bond shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity as provided herein, a substitute Series 2022D Bond or Series 2022D Bonds having the same maturity date, of like series or subseries and bearing or accruing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon surrender thereof for cancellation. The Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall cancel all Series 2022D Bonds surrendered for conversion and exchange or replacement. If any Series 2022D Bond or portion thereof is assigned and transferred or converted, each Series 2022D Bond issued in exchange therefor shall have the same principal maturity date, be of like series or subseries and bear or accrue interest at the same rate, as the Series 2022D Bond for which it is being exchanged.

(c) No Additional Actions Necessary. No additional ordinances, orders, or resolutions need be passed or adopted by the Board or any other Person so as to accomplish the foregoing conversion and exchange or replacement of any Series 2022D Bond or portion thereof, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall provide for the printing, execution and delivery of the substitute Series 2022D Bonds in the manner prescribed herein. All Series 2022D Bonds issued in conversion and exchange or replacement of any other Series 2022D Bond or portion thereof (i) shall be issued in fully registered form with the principal of and interest on such Series 2022D Bonds to be payable only to the registered owners thereof, (ii) may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, (iii) may be transferred and assigned, (iv) may be converted and exchanged for other Series 2022D Bonds, shall have the characteristics, (vi) shall be signed and sealed, and (vii) the principal of and interest thereon shall be payable, all if and as provided with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds, and in the manner required or indicated, in ARTICLE II of this Resolution. Each substitute Series 2022D Bond shall bear a letter and/or number to distinguish it from each other Series 2022D Bond. Each fully registered Series 2022D Bond delivered in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022D Bond or portion thereof as permitted or required by any provision of this Resolution shall constitute one of the Series 2022D Bonds for all purposes of this Resolution, and may again be converted and exchanged or replaced.

(d) Authentication Certificate. On each substitute Series 2022D Bond issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of any Series 2022D Bond or Series 2022D Bonds issued under this

Resolution there shall be printed thereon a Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate (the "**Authentication Certificate**"), in the form set forth in the FORM OF BOND. An authorized representative of the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, before the delivery of any such Series 2022D Bond, date and manually sign the Authentication Certificate, and no such Series 2022D Bond shall be deemed to be issued or outstanding unless the Authentication Certificate is so executed. Upon the execution of the Authentication Certificate, the converted and exchanged or replaced Series 2022D Bond shall be valid, incontestable, and enforceable in the same manner and with the same effect as the Initial Bonds which originally were delivered pursuant to this Resolution, approved by the Attorney General, and registered by the Comptroller.

(e) Restrictions on Transfer or Exchange. Neither the Board, the State nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (i) to issue, transfer, or exchange any Series 2022D Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Series 2022D Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (ii) to transfer or exchange any Series 2022D Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; except that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of Series 2022D Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any such Series 2022D Bond which has been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon surrender thereof. In which event, the Paying Agent/Registrar may make such arrangements as it deems appropriate for notation on each new Series 2022D Bond issued in exchange for or upon transfer of the Series 2022D Bond so selected for redemption of an appropriate legend to the effect that such new Series 2022D Bond has been so selected for redemption.

(f) Payment of Fees. The registered owner of any Series 2022D Bond requesting any conversion and exchange shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges for converting and exchanging any such Series 2022D Bond or portion thereof, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, all as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange; except that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Series 2022D Bond or any portion or portions thereof in any Authorized Denomination, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of the unredeemed portion of a Series 2022D Bond which has been redeemed in part prior to maturity, as provided in this Resolution, such fees and charges will be paid by the Board. In addition, the Board hereby covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022D Bonds that it will pay the (i) reasonable and standard or customary fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for its services with respect to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Series 2022D Bonds, when due, and (ii) fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar for services with respect to the transfer or registration of Series 2022D Bonds, and with respect to the conversion and exchange of Series 2022D Bonds solely to the extent above provided.

**Section 2.08 Owners of Bonds.** The Person in whose name any Series 2022D Bond shall be registered in the Registration Books at any time shall be treated as the absolute owner thereof for all purposes of this Resolution, whether such Series 2022D Bond shall be overdue, and the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary unless otherwise required by law; and payment of, or on account of, the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on any such Series 2022D Bond shall be made only to such registered owner. All such payments shall be valid and effectual to satisfy and discharge the liability upon such Series 2022D Bond to the extent of the sum or sums so paid.

**Section 2.09 Damaged, Mutilated, Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Bonds.**

(a) Replacement. In the event any outstanding Series 2022D Bond is damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall cause to be printed, executed, and delivered, a new Series 2022D Bond of the same principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, maturity date, and interest rate, as the damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022D Bond, in replacement for such Series 2022D Bond in the manner hereinafter provided.

(b) Application for Replacement. Application for replacement of damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022D Bonds shall be made to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022D Bond, the applicant for a replacement Series 2022D Bond shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless from any loss or damage with respect thereto. Also, in every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Series 2022D Bond, the applicant shall furnish to the Board and to the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence to their satisfaction of the loss, theft or destruction of such Series 2022D Bond, as the case may be. In every case of damage or mutilation of a Series 2022D Bond, the applicant shall surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation the Series 2022D Bond so damaged or mutilated.

(c) Payment in Lieu of Replacement. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, in the event any such Series 2022D Bond shall have matured, and no default has occurred which is then continuing in the payment of the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022D Bond, the Board may authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a damaged or mutilated Series 2022D Bond) instead of issuing a replacement Series 2022D Bond, provided security or indemnity is furnished as above provided in this Section.

(d) Payment of Costs. Prior to the issuance of any replacement Series 2022D Bond, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall charge the owner of such Series 2022D Bond with all legal, printing, and other expenses in connection therewith. Every replacement Series 2022D Bond issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section by virtue of the fact that any Series 2022D Bond is lost, stolen or destroyed shall constitute a contractual obligation of the Board whether the lost, stolen, or destroyed Series 2022D Bond shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Resolution equally and proportionately with any and all other Series 2022D Bonds duly issued under this Resolution.

(e) Legal Authority. In accordance with Chapter 1206, this Section shall constitute authority for the issuance of any such replacement Series 2022D Bond without necessity of further action by the Board of any other Person, and the duty of the replacement of such Series 2022D Bonds is hereby authorized and imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver such Series 2022D Bonds in the form and manner and with the effect, as provided in Section 2.07 for Series 2022D Bonds issued in conversion and exchange for other Series 2022D Bonds.

**Section 2.10 Successor Paying Agent/Registrars.** The Board covenants with the registered owners of the Series 2022D Bonds that at all times while the Series 2022D Bonds are outstanding the Board will provide a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company to act as and perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds under this Resolution, and that the Paying Agent/Registrar will be one entity. The Board reserves the right to, and may, at its option, change the Paying Agent/Registrar upon not less than sixty (60) days' written notice to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In

the event that the entity at any time acting as Paying Agent/Registrar (or its successor by merger, acquisition, or other method) should resign or otherwise cease to act as such, the Board covenants that promptly it will appoint a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company which shall be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any state, authorized under such laws to exercise trust powers, subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority, to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Resolution. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the previous Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall transfer and deliver the Registration Books (or a copy thereof), along with all other pertinent books and records relating to the Series 2022D Bonds, to the new Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Board. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board promptly will cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar to each registered owner of the Series 2022D Bonds, by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice also shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar and the Designated Payment/Transfer Office. By accepting the position and performing as such, each Paying Agent/Registrar shall be deemed to have agreed to the provisions of this Resolution, and a certified copy of this Resolution shall be delivered to each Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 2.11 Book-Entry Only System.** The Initial Bonds shall be delivered to the Underwriters against payment received therefrom on the Date of Delivery. The senior managing underwriter named in Section 11.01 hereof, acting as the representative for the Underwriters, shall be required to promptly surrender the Initial Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar for exchange. Series 2022D Bonds issued in exchange therefor shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, as registered owner of the Series 2022D Bonds, and held in the custody of DTC. Unless otherwise requested by DTC, a single certificate will be issued and delivered to DTC for each maturity of the Series 2022D Bonds. Beneficial owners of Series 2022D Bonds will not receive physical delivery of Series 2022D Bond certificates except as provided hereinafter. For so long as DTC shall continue to serve as securities depository for the Series 2022D Bonds as provided herein, all transfers of beneficial ownership interests will be made by book-entry only, and no investor or other party purchasing, selling or otherwise transferring beneficial ownership of Series 2022D Bonds is to receive, hold or deliver any Series 2022D Bond certificate.

With respect to Series 2022D Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation to any DTC Participant or to any Person on whose behalf a DTC Participant holds an interest in the Series 2022D Bonds. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co. or any DTC Participant with respect to any ownership interest in the Series 2022D Bonds, (ii) the delivery to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022D Bonds, as shown on the Registration Books, of any notice with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds, including any notice of redemption, and (iii) the payment to any DTC Participant or any other Person, other than a registered owner of the Series 2022D Bonds, as shown in the Registration Books, of any amount with respect to principal or premium, if any, or interest on the Series 2022D Bonds.

Replacement Series 2022D Bonds may be issued directly to beneficial owners of Series 2022D Bonds other than DTC, or its nominee, but only in the event that: (i) DTC determines not to continue to act as securities depository for the Series 2022D Bonds (which determination shall become effective no less than ninety (90) days after written notice to such effect to the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar); (ii) the Board has advised DTC of its determination (which determination is conclusive as to DTC and beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds) that DTC is incapable of discharging its duties as securities depository

for the Series 2022D Bonds; or (iii) the Board has determined (which determination is conclusive as to DTC and the beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds) that the interests of the beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds might be adversely affected if such book-entry only system of transfer is continued. Upon occurrence of any of the foregoing events, the Board shall use its best efforts to attempt to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC. If the Board fails to locate another qualified securities depository to replace DTC, the Board shall cause to be authenticated and delivered replacement Series 2022D Bonds, in certificate form, to the beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds. In the event that the Board makes the determination noted in (ii) or (iii) above (provided that the Board undertakes no obligation to make any investigation to determine the occurrence of any events that would permit the Board to make any such determination), and has made provisions to notify the beneficial owners of Series 2022D Bonds of such determination by mailing an appropriate notice to DTC, it shall cause to be issued replacement Series 2022D Bonds in certificate form to beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds as shown on the records of DTC provided to the Board.

Whenever, during the term of the Series 2022D Bonds, the beneficial ownership thereof is determined by a book entry at DTC, the requirements in this Resolution of holding, delivering or transferring Series 2022D Bonds shall be deemed modified to require the appropriate Person or entity to meet the requirements of DTC as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

If at any time, DTC ceases to hold the Series 2022D Bonds as securities depository, all references herein to DTC shall be of no further force or effect.

**Section 2.12 All Bonds On Parity.** No State Participation Bond shall be entitled to priority of payment over any other State Participation Bond in the application of any moneys made available by law for the payment thereof, irrespective of the fact that some of the State Participation Bonds may have been or may be delivered prior to the delivery of other State Participation Bonds, it being the intent of this Resolution that all State Participation Bonds shall rank equally on parity with each other.

### ARTICLE III

#### **REDEMPTION OF BONDS BEFORE MATURITY**

**Section 3.01 Limitation on Redemption.** Unless otherwise provided in the Approval Certificate, the Series 2022D Bonds shall be subject to redemption before scheduled maturity only as provided in this Article. Any provision of this Article, including, without limitation, any provisions relating to the method or selection of Series 2022D Bonds for redemption may be modified in an Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.02 Optional and Mandatory Redemption of Bonds.** The Series 2022D Bonds shall be subject to optional redemption and mandatory redemption by the Board on behalf of the State prior to maturity in the manner and at the redemption price as described in the Approval Certificate. The FORM OF BOND shall be completed upon the execution of the Approval Certificate to reflect the redemption provisions, if any, applicable to Bonds as provided for in the Approval Certificate.

**Section 3.03 Partial Redemption.**

(a) The Series 2022D Bonds redeemed in part shall be selected for redemption as described in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) A portion of a single Bond of a denomination greater than an Authorized Denomination may be redeemed but only in a principal amount equal to a minimum Authorized Denomination or any integral multiple thereof. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall treat each minimum Authorized Denomination of such Bond as though it were a single Bond for purposes of selection for redemption.

(c) Upon surrender of any Bond for redemption in part, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver an exchange Bond in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Bond so surrendered.

**Section 3.04 Notice of Redemption.**

(a) The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of the Series 2022D Bonds or any portion thereof. Notice of any redemption of the Series 2022D Bonds shall be given to the registered owners thereof by the Paying Agent/Registrar in the manner provided in the FORM OF BOND.

(b) In addition to the manner of providing notice of redemption of the Series 2022D Bonds as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice of redemption of the Series 2022D Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at least thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date to each registered securities depository and to the MSRB. In addition, in the event of a redemption caused by an advance refunding of the Series 2022D Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall send a second notice of redemption to the Persons specified in the immediately preceding sentence at least thirty (30) days but not more than ninety (90) days prior to the actual redemption date. Any notice sent to the registered securities depositories or the MSRB shall be sent so that they are received at least two (2) days prior to the general mailing, publication or electronic posting date of such notice. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall also send a notice of redemption to the registered owner of any Series 2022D Bonds who has not sent the Series 2022D Bonds in for redemption sixty (60) days after the redemption date. The failure to send, mail or receive any such notice described in this clause (b), or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Series 2022D Bond.

(c) The Board reserves the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022D Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of monies and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying/Agent Registrar instructing the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such monies and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Series 2022D Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

(d) Each redemption notice, whether required in the FORM OF BOND or otherwise by this Resolution, shall contain a description of the Series 2022D Bonds to be redeemed, including the complete name of the Series 2022D Bonds, the series, the date of issue, the interest rate, the maturity date, the CUSIP number, if any, the amounts called of each Series 2022D Bond, the publication and mailing date for

the notice, the date of redemption, the redemption price, the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar and the address at which the Series 2022D Bond may be redeemed including a contact person and telephone number.

(e) All redemption payments made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners of the Series 2022D Bonds shall include a CUSIP number relating to each amount paid to such registered owner.

(f) Should notice to call Series 2022D Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022D Bonds so called for redemption, no Series 2022D Bond shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Series 2022D Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022D Bonds as provided herein or in the Series 2022D Bonds.

**Section 3.05 Payment Upon Redemption.**

(a) By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

(b) Upon presentation and surrender of any Bond called for redemption at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar on or after the date fixed for redemption, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall pay the principal of and accrued interest on such Bond to the date of redemption from the money provided for that purpose.

**Section 3.06 Effect of Redemption.**

(a) Notice of redemption having been given, and due provision having been made for payment, Series 2022D Bonds or portions thereof called for redemption shall become due and payable on the date fixed for redemption; thereafter, such Series 2022D Bonds or portions thereof shall cease to bear interest from the date fixed for redemption, whether or not such Series 2022D are presented and surrendered for payment on such date.

(b) If the Board shall fail to make provision for the payment of all sums due on a redemption date, then any Series 2022D Bond or portion thereof called for redemption shall continue to bear interest until due provision is made for the payment of same by the Board.

**ARTICLE IV**

**FORM OF BONDS AND CERTIFICATES**

**Section 4.01 Form of Bond and Certificates.** The form of all Series 2022D Bonds, including the form of the Authentication Certificate and the form of Assignment to be printed on each of the Series 2022D Bonds, and the form of registration certificate of the Comptroller that shall accompany the Initial Bonds, shall be substantially in the form as set forth in the FORM OF BOND, with such appropriate variations, omissions or insertions as are permitted or required by this Resolution or the applicable Approval Certificate. The Series 2022D Bonds may have such letters, numbers or other identifying marks of

identification (including identifying numbers and letters of the Committee on Uniform Securities Identification Procedures of the American Bankers Association) and such legends and endorsements thereon as may, consistent herewith, be approved by the Chair of the Board or the Authorized Representative.

**Section 4.02 Opinion of Bond Counsel.** A copy of the approving opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, bond counsel to the Board in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds, in the form in which it is to be delivered upon payment for the Series 2022D Bonds, either will be printed on the reverse side of or otherwise attached to the Series 2022D Bonds or will be delivered to DTC if the Series 2022D Bonds are held in book-entry only form; and the use of the lithographed or printed facsimile signature of the Executive Administrator to certify to the correctness of such copy is hereby authorized.

**Section 4.03 Printing of Statement of Insurance.** The Board hereby authorizes the printer of the Series 2022D Bonds to print thereon any statement of insurance with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds furnished by any municipal bond insurance company insuring the Series 2022D Bonds.

## ARTICLE V

### **SECURITY AND PAYMENT OF BONDS; ESTABLISHMENT AND FLOW OF FUNDS**

**Section 5.01 General Obligations.** The State Participation Bonds, including the Previously Issued State Participation Bonds and the Series 2022D Bonds, constitute general obligations of the State pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on each of the State Participation Bonds when due, the full faith and credit of the State and, in the manner herein provided, the resources of the Board are hereby pledged.

**Section 5.02 Confirmation of Texas Water Development Fund II.** It is found, determined and confirmed that Development Fund II has been established in the State Treasury. Pursuant to the Act, Development Fund II shall contain the State Participation Account, the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account and the Financial Assistance Account. In addition, Development Fund II may contain such additional accounts as the Board determines are necessary and convenient for the administration of Development Fund II.

#### **Section 5.03 Confirmation of Constitutional and Statutory Funds.**

(a) **Section 49-d-8 and Legislative Powers.** All State Participation Bond proceeds (other than any proceeds to be used to refund outstanding bonds or other obligations) shall be deposited in the State Treasury to the credit of the State Participation Account. Section 49-d-8 provides that accounts within Development Fund II shall consist of certain identified items, and Subsection (g) of Section 49-d-8 further states that:

“[Section 49-d-8] being intended only to establish a basic framework and not to be a comprehensive treatment of the Texas Water Development Fund II, there is hereby reposed in the legislature full power to implement and effectuate the design and objects of [Section 49-d-8], including the power to delegate such duties, responsibilities, functions, and authority to the Texas Water Development Board as it believes necessary.”

(b) State Participation Account. Consistent with the Act and Section 49-d-8, the “Texas Water Development Fund II State Participation Account” (the “**State Participation Account**”) shall receive such moneys as described below, and the moneys therein shall be used as described below:

- (i) Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds designated by the Board as issued for State Participation Projects;
  - (ii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to State Participation Bonds designated by the Board as issued for State Participation Projects;
  - (iii) investment income earned on money on deposit in the State Participation Account;
- and
- (iv) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the credit of the State Participation Account.

Except for those moneys that the Board determines are unavailable for such purpose, moneys on deposit in the State Participation Account shall be used to pay principal and interest on the State Participation Bonds. The Board may use moneys on deposit in the State Participation Account for State Participation Projects in any manner that the Board determines necessary for the administration of the State Participation Account, consistent with the provisions of Section 49-d-8 and the laws of the State, including specifically the Act, and this Resolution. Moneys on deposit in the State Participation Account may also be used for payment of the expenses of the Board incurred in connection with the issuance of the State Participation Bonds and the administration of Development Fund II.

(c) Bond Payment Account. The Board has established in the State Treasury the “Texas Water Development Fund II State Participation Bond Payment Account” (the “**Bond Payment Account**”), as a special account into which shall be deposited in the manner, within the time limits, and from sources as prescribed in Sections 5.04 and 5.05, amounts sufficient to pay when due the principal of and premium, if any, and interest payable on the State Participation Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds.

**Section 5.04 Flow of Funds For Debt Service**

(a) Transfers for Payments of Bonds. While and so long as any State Participation Bond is outstanding, on or before the date interest or interest and principal on the Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board shall cause to be transferred, from the moneys available for such purpose in the State Participation Account, to the Bond Payment Account an amount which shall be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the State Participation Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for moneys currently on deposit in the Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

(b) Notice to Comptroller of Insufficient Funds. If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within fifteen (15) days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available

in the State Participation Account for transfer to the Bond Payment Account, as described in subsection (a) of this Section, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the State Participation Bonds which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which shall be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, it is hereby made the duty of the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof to request the Comptroller to deposit in the Bond Payment Account out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, not later than three (3) days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money shall have been received in the State Treasury, an amount sufficient so that the total amount in the Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

(c) Use of Remaining Moneys. After making the transfers for the benefit of the Bond Payment Account as provided above in this Section, other available moneys remaining in the State Participation Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for all of the purposes for which the Board may expend moneys in the State Participation Account under Section 49-d-8.

(d) Bond Enhancement Agreement. Payments to be made by the Board under the terms of a Bond Enhancement Agreement shall be governed by the resolution adopted by the Board authorizing the execution and delivery of such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

(e) Transfers Upon Board Resolution. Anything contained in this Section to the contrary notwithstanding, money in the State Participation Account representing proceeds from a series of State Participation Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the State Participation Account, or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance shall not be available for transfer to the Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the Bond Payment Account. Proceeds from the Series 2022D Bonds shall be deposited to the Bond Payment Account to the extent specified in the applicable Approval Certificate.

**Section 5.05 Constitutional Provisions for Debt Payment.** The Board recognizes the absolute and ultimate obligation of the State to provide during each Fiscal Year all money necessary for the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the State Participation Bonds, including payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, when such interest or principal and interest become due, out of the first moneys coming into the State Treasury, in such Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, as set forth in Subsection (e) of Section 49-d-8, as follows:

“... If there is not enough money in any account available to pay the principal of and interest on the general obligation bonds issued for such account, including money to make payments by the Texas Water Development Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to principal of or interest on such bonds, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the state treasury in each fiscal year not otherwise appropriated by this constitution an amount that is sufficient to pay the principal

of and interest on such general obligation bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year or to make bond enhancement payments with respect to those bonds.”

**Section 5.06 Deposit and Transfer of Funds - Duties of Comptroller.** The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to make the deposits and transfers required under all provisions of the resolutions authorizing the State Participation Bonds, including this Resolution. The Comptroller is hereby authorized and directed to do all things necessary or convenient to make current funds available at the place of payment for the State Participation Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds) to pay principal of and interest on all State Participation Bonds as they mature and come due and to provide such current funds as are required for the redemption thereof prior to maturity, or to make any payments under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, all in accordance with their respective authorizing resolutions. It is made the duty of the Comptroller to make such deposits and transfers as are required in instances wherein the Board exercises its option to call State Participation Bonds for payment prior to maturity. Remittances to the place of payment for the State Participation Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds) of money for payment of principal and interest or for redemption of State Participation Bonds must be made in accordance with the provisions hereof.

**Section 5.07 Payment of Bonds.** The Board hereby covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the State Participation Bonds (including the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds) for the payment of interest on and principal of the State Participation Bonds, and any premium thereon, becoming due on each interest or principal payment date. The Board further covenants that it shall establish procedures with the Comptroller whereby sufficient moneys shall be withdrawn from the Bond Payment Account and forwarded to the place of payment for the payments, if any, to be made under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to the principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds. In addition, the Board covenants that such moneys shall be forwarded to the place of payment for the State Participation Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement, no later than each such interest or principal payment date.

**Section 5.08 Cooperation with State Officers.** It is the duty of the Board, its officers, employees and agents (who are hereby so authorized and directed) to cooperate with and aid the Comptroller in calculating the amounts to be deposited in, or transferred to, the appropriate accounts and in ascertaining the amounts to be remitted to the place of payment for the State Participation Bonds (including the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds), or the place of payment for such payments, if any, to be made under any such Bond Enhancement Agreement.

**Section 5.09 Investment of Funds.** All money in Development Fund II and the accounts created therein that is not immediately committed to the purposes thereof or the payment of the State Participation Bonds issued for any such account may be invested by the Board in Eligible Investments, and the Board may sell any Eligible Investment at the governing market rate.

ARTICLE VI

**COVENANTS AND REMEDIES**

**Section 6.01 Special Covenant.** The Board covenants that it will faithfully and promptly deposit into the State Participation Account all money received from the sale of obligations acquired from Political Subdivisions with moneys from the State Participation Account.

**Section 6.02 Taxable Bonds.** The Board does not intend to issue the Series 2022D Bonds in a manner such that the Series 2022D Bonds would constitute obligations described in Section 103(a) of the Code.

**Section 6.03 Creation of Accounts and Subaccounts.** The Board covenants that it will maintain within the funds and accounts described in Section 5.03 such accounts and subaccounts as the Board, in cooperation with the Comptroller, determines necessary for the convenient and efficient administration of such funds and accounts so as not to commingle moneys derived from the issuance of or dedicated to the payment of bonds or other obligations issued by the Board, the interest on which is exempt from federal income taxation under the applicable provisions of the Code.

**Section 6.04 Remedies of Bondholders.** All rights available to the owners of the State Participation Bonds under the Constitution and the laws of the State, including, without limitation, Section 17.970, Texas Water Code, to compel the performance of their official duties by the Board, its officers and employees, and by other officers of the State to the end that the principal of and interest on the State Participation Bonds may be paid promptly, are hereby recognized.

**Section 6.05 Bond Enhancement Agreements.** Pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 17.954, Texas Water Code, the Board reserves the right at any time and from time to time to enter into one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements that the Board hereafter determines to be necessary or appropriate to place the obligation of the Board, as represented by the Series 2022D Bonds, in whole or in part, on the interest rate, currency, cash flow, or other basis desired by the Board.

ARTICLE VII

**SUPPLEMENTS AND AMENDMENTS**

**Section 7.01 Amendment of Resolution with Consent of Registered Owners.**

(a) **Amendments Requiring Consent.** The registered owners of Series 2022D Bonds aggregating in principal amount 51% of the aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of the Series 2022D Bonds at the time outstanding (but not including in any case Series 2022D Bonds which may then be held or owned by or for the account of the Board) shall have the right from time to time to approve an amendment of this Resolution which may be deemed necessary or desirable by the Board; *provided, however*, that nothing herein contained shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions contained in this Resolution or in the Series 2022D Bonds so as to:

- (i) make any change in the maturity of any of the Series 2022D Bonds;

- (ii) reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the Series 2022D Bonds;
- (iii) reduce the principal amount or maturity amount, as applicable, payable on any of the Series 2022D Bonds;
- (iv) modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on or maturity amount of, as the case may be, any Series 2022D Bond, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;
- (v) change the minimum percentage of the principal amount or maturity amount of the Series 2022D Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment; or
- (vi) affect the rights of the registered owners of less than all of the Series 2022D Bonds then outstanding;

unless such amendment or amendments be approved by the registered owners of all of the Series 2022D Bonds at the time outstanding.

(b) Notice. If at any time the Board shall desire to amend this Resolution under this Section, the Board shall cause notice of the proposed amendment to be published in a financial newspaper or journal published in The City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas, once during each calendar week for at least four (4) successive calendar weeks. Such notice shall briefly set forth the nature of the proposed amendment and shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board and the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar for inspection by all registered owners of Series 2022D Bonds. Such publication is not required, however, if notice in writing is given to each registered owner.

(c) Adoption of Amendatory Resolution. Whenever at any time, within one (1) year from the date of this publication of said notice or other service of written notice, the Board shall receive an instrument or instruments executed by the registered owners of at least 51% in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount, as the case may be, of Series 2022D Bonds then outstanding, which instrument or instruments shall refer to the proposed amendment described in said notice and which specifically consent to and approve such amendment in substantially the form of the copy thereof on file with the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Board may adopt the amendatory resolution in substantially the same form.

(d) Effectiveness of Consents. Any consent given by the registered owner of a Series 2022D Bond pursuant to the provisions of this Resolution shall be irrevocable for a period of six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of the notice provided for in this Resolution, and shall be conclusive and binding upon all future registered owners of the same Series 2022D Bond during such period. Such consent may be revoked at any time after six (6) months from the date of the first publication or mailing of such notice by the registered owner who gave such consent, or by a successor in title, by filing notice of such revocation with the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Board, but such revocation shall not be effective if the registered owners of 51% in aggregate principal amount and maturity amount, as applicable, of the Series 2022D Bonds outstanding as in this Section defined have, prior to the attempted revocation, consented to and approved the amendment.

(e) Proof of Ownership. For the purposes of this Section, proof of ownership of any Series 2022D Bond shall be established by the registration of any such Series 2022D Bond on the Registration Books kept and maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar.

**Section 7.02 Amendment of Resolution Without Consent of Registered Owners.**

(a) Amendments Not Requiring Consent. The foregoing provisions of this Article notwithstanding, the Board may, without prior notice to or the consent of the registered owners, pursuant to an amendatory resolution, from time to time:

- (i) impose conditions or restrictions additional to, but not in diminution of, those contained in this Resolution, respecting the issuance of State Participation Bonds;
- (ii) undertake covenants additional to but not inconsistent with those contained in this Resolution;
- (iii) correct any ambiguity or correct or supplement any inconsistent or defective provision contained in this Resolution or any amendatory resolution;
- (iv) adopt amendments to this Resolution that provide for the payment of principal of and interest on the State Participation Bonds or the payment of administrative expenses of the Board from Bond proceeds; or
- (v) adopt amendments to this Resolution (including specifically, without limitation, amendments under authority of Section 7.02 and 9.04) that, in the opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board, do not adversely affect the registered owners.

(b) Specific Amendments not Requiring Consent. In addition to the foregoing, the Board expressly reserves the right, without prior notice to or consent from the registered owners of the State Participation Bonds, to amend the provisions of ARTICLE VII of this Resolution to reflect subsequent amendments to the State Constitution and the Act, including, without limitation, amendments altering:

- (i) the administration of Development Fund II; or
  - (ii) the accounts within Development Fund II; or
  - (iii) the deposit or application of moneys received by the Board as repayments of loans to Political Subdivisions and interest on those loans, or proceeds from the sale, transfer or lease of facilities held for any account within Development Fund II; or
  - (iv) the use of the proceeds of the State Participation Bonds; or
  - (v) the rights, duties and obligations of the Comptroller as specified in ARTICLE VII;
- or
- (vi) the procedure for payment of the State Participation Bonds; or
  - (vii) the payment of expenses of administering Development Fund II and other authorized expenses of the Board; or
  - (viii) the administration of the Water Infrastructure Fund;

*provided, however,* that such amendments to this Resolution can be made only if:

(1) the Board receives an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that such amendments comply with the Act, that the State Participation Bonds continue to be general obligations of the State and the State Constitution provides for appropriation out of the first money coming into the State Treasury in each Fiscal Year, not otherwise appropriated by the State Constitution, of an amount sufficient to pay the principal of or interest on the State Participation Bonds that mature or become payable during that Fiscal Year, to the extent 'the same are not otherwise paid from funds pledged to their payment;

(2) bond counsel acceptable to the Board renders an opinion substantially to the effect that any such amendment will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on any tax-exempt State Participation Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes; and

(3) each nationally-recognized securities rating agency that issued a rating at the time the State Participation Bonds were initially delivered to the underwriters thereof and that has a then existing rating thereon confirms in writing that subsequent to any such amendment, the State Participation Bonds will continue to be rated as general obligation bonds of the State.

(c) Notice. If the Board so amends this Resolution as provided in subsection (b) above, it shall cause notice of such amendment to be published one (1) time in a financial newspaper or journal of general circulation in the City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas. Such notice shall contain a summary of the amendatory language, recite that the conditions set forth in clauses (A), (B) and (C) of subsection (b) have been satisfied, and recite the effective date of such amendment. Such notice shall be published within thirty (30) days of the effective date of such amendment as set forth in such notice. Such notice shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board for inspection. Such publication is not required, however, if written notice is given to each registered owner of the State Participation Bonds.

**Section 7.03 Effect of Amendatory Resolutions**. Upon the adoption of any amendatory resolution pursuant to the provisions of this Section, this Resolution shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with such amendatory resolution, and the respective rights, duties and obligations of the Board under this Resolution and all the registered owners of outstanding Series 2022D Bonds shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder, subject in all respects to such amendments.

**Section 7.04 Bonds May Bear Notation**. Series 2022D Bonds authenticated and delivered after the execution of any amendatory resolution pursuant to this Article may bear a notation in form approved by the Paying Agent/Registrar as to any matter provided for in such amendatory resolution. If the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar shall so determine, new Series 2022D Bonds so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board and the Paying Agent/Registrar, to any such amendatory resolution may be prepared and executed by the Board and authenticated and delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in exchange for the Series 2022D Bonds then outstanding.

## ARTICLE VIII

**PROVISIONS CONCERNING SALE OF BONDS****Section 8.01 Issuance and Sale of Bonds.**

(a) Approval Certificate. Each Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall approve, execute and deliver one or more Approval Certificates, which completed and executed Approval Certificates shall evidence the sale (including the date of such sale) of a series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds by the Board to the Underwriters. The Approval Certificate shall contain a finding substantially to the effect that based on recommendations made to the Authorized Representative by the financial advisor to the Board, the terms of the sale of the Series 2022D Bonds were the most advantageous to the Board reasonably obtained, and the sale of the Series 2022D Bonds is in the best interests of the Board.

(b) Underwriters. Ramirez & Co., Inc. is hereby designated as the senior managing underwriter for the Underwriters. The Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall select such additional investment banking firms as deemed appropriate to assure that the Series 2022D Bonds are sold on terms advantageous to the Board.

(c) Purchase Agreement. The Purchase Agreement shall be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of State Participation Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance Water Assistance Projects. A Purchase Agreement shall contain the terms of the sale of the Series 2022D Bonds, as negotiated by the Authorized Representative in accordance with the terms hereof. At the direction of an Authorized Representative, Series 2022D Bonds, Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, and Series 2022D Bonds may be sold, but are not required to be sold, pursuant to the terms of a common Purchase Agreement. Each Authorized Representative is hereby authorized and directed to execute the Purchase Agreement for and on behalf of the Board. An Authorized Representative's approval of a Purchase Agreement shall be conclusively evidenced by the execution thereof. It is hereby officially found, determined, and declared that the terms of this sale were and are to be negotiated under authority granted by Section 17.955, Texas Water Code.

(d) Ratings. No Series 2022D Bonds shall be delivered unless prior to delivery, the particular series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds shall have been rated by a nationally recognized rating agency for municipal securities in one of the four highest rating categories for long term obligations, as required by Chapter 1371.

(e) Payment of Attorney General Fee. The Board hereby authorizes the payment of the fee of the Attorney General for the examination of the proceedings relating to the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds, in the amount determined in accordance with the provisions of Section 1202.004, Texas Government Code.

(f) Effect of Determination Made by Authorized Representative. A finding or determination made by an Authorized Representative acting under the authority delegated thereto by this Resolution with respect to all matters relating to the issuance and sale of the Series 2022D Bonds shall have the same force and effect as a finding or determination made by the Board.

**Section 8.02 Official Statement.** Prior to execution of a Purchase Agreement, the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a preliminary Official Statement to be prepared for distribution by the Underwriters to prospective purchasers of the Series 2022D Bonds sold under the terms of such Purchase Agreement, such document to be in substantially the form utilized in connection with the sale of State Participation Bonds previously issued by the Board to finance Water Assistance Projects, with such changes and completions as the Authorized Representative may deem necessary or appropriate to enable the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, to deem the preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, except for such omissions as are permitted by the Rule. Within seven (7) business days after the execution of a Purchase Agreement, the Authorized Representative, acting for and on behalf of the Board, shall cause a final Official Statement to be provided to the Underwriters in compliance with the Rule and the rules of the MSRB.

**Section 8.03 Custody of Bonds.** After the Initial Bonds have been executed, it shall be the duty of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, to deliver the Initial Bonds to the Attorney General for examination and approval. After the Initial Bonds shall have been approved by the Attorney General they shall be delivered to the Comptroller for registration. The Initial Bonds thus registered shall remain in the custody of the Chair of the Board, or some officer, employee or attorney of the Board acting through authority therefrom, or subject to the order of the Chair, until the sale of the Series 2022D Bonds to the Underwriters on the Date of Delivery.

**Section 8.04 Use of Bond Proceeds.** Proceeds from the sale of Series 2022D Bonds shall, promptly upon receipt by the Board, be deposited to the credit of the funds and accounts described in this Resolution and applied in the manner specified in the applicable Approval Certificate signed by an Authorized Representative.

## ARTICLE IX

### **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING**

#### **Section 9.01 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller.**

(a) **General.** The Board and the legal and beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds are third-party beneficiaries of the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. The Comptroller is required to observe the Continuing Disclosure Agreement in respect of any issue of "Securities," as defined in the Continuing Disclosure Agreement (which include the Series 2022D Bonds), for so long as the State remains an "obligated person" as defined in the Rule. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the MSRB as described below.

(b) **Annual Reports of the State.** Pursuant to the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The Comptroller is not obligated to provide such financial and operating data more frequently than on an annual basis. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the State of the general type included in the Bond Appendix. The Comptroller will update and provide this information within 195 days after the end of each fiscal year of the State. The updated information provided by the Comptroller need not be audited, but the Comptroller will provide audited financial statements of the State prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting

principles for governmental entities when the State Auditor completes its statutorily required audit of such financial statements. The accounting principles pursuant to which such financial statements must be prepared may be changed from time to time to comply with State law.

(c) Event Notices of the Comptroller. Under the Continuing Disclosure Agreement, the Comptroller has also agreed to provide notice to the MSRB of any of the following events, with respect, to the Series 2022D Bonds, in a timely manner and not more than ten (10) business days after occurrence of the event:

(i) incurrence of a Financial Obligation of the State, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which affect security holders, if material; and

(ii) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a Financial Obligation of the State, any of which reflect financial difficulties.

(d) Change in State Fiscal Year. The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. If the State changes its fiscal year, the Comptroller will notify the MSRB of the change prior to the next date by which the Comptroller otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as described above.

**Section 9.02 Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board**

(a) Annual Reports of the Board. The Board shall provide annually to the MSRB, within 195 days after the end of each Fiscal Year ending in or after 2022, financial information and operating data with respect to the Board and the State of the general type included in Tables 1 and 2 and Appendix B of the final Official Statement authorized by **Section 8.02** hereof, being the information described in **Exhibit B** hereto. Any financial statements so to be provided shall be (1) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in **Exhibit B** hereto and (2) audited, if the Board or the State, as appropriate, commissions an audit of such statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. If audited financial statements are not so provided, then the Board shall provide unaudited financial statements within the required time for the applicable Fiscal Year to the MSRB, and audited financial statements when and if audited financial statements become available.

(b) Event Notices of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner not in excess of ten (10) Business Days after the occurrence of any of the following events with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds:

- (1) Principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) Non-payment related defaults, if material;
- (3) Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
- (4) Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;

- (5) Substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) Adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Series 2022D Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Series 2022D Bonds;
- (7) Modifications to rights of holders of the Series 2022D Bonds, if material;
- (8) Series 2022D Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
- (9) Defeasances;
- (10) Release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2022D Bonds, if material;
- (11) Rating changes;
- (12) Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Board;
- (13) The consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Board or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and
- (14) Appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or change in the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar, if material.

As used in clause 12 above, the phrase “bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event” means the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Board in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, or if jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the Board and officials or officers of the Board in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board. The Board shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner, of any failure by the Board to provide financial information or operating data in accordance with Section 9.02(a) by the time required by such Section.

(c) Change in Board Fiscal Year. If the Board changes its Fiscal Year, it will notify the MSRB of the change (and of the date of the new Fiscal Year end) prior to the next date by which the Board otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data pursuant to this Section.

**Section 9.03 Incorporation by Reference.** The financial information and operating data to be provided pursuant to this Section may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document (including an official statement or other offering document, if it is

available from the MSRB) that theretofore has been provided to the MSRB or filed with the SEC. All filings shall be made electronically, in the format specified by the MSRB.

**Section 9.04 Limitations, Disclaimers, and Amendments.** The Board shall be obligated to observe and perform the covenants specified in this Article for so long as, but only for so long as, the Board or the State remains an “obligated person” with respect to the Series 2022D Bonds within the meaning of the Rule, except that the Board in any event will give the notice required by Section 9.02(b) of any Series 2022D Bond calls and defeasance that cause the Board and the State to be no longer “obligated persons”.

The provisions of this Article are for the sole benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds, and nothing in this Article, express or implied, shall give any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy, or claim hereunder to any other Person. The Board undertakes to provide only the financial information, operating data, financial statements, and notices which it has expressly agreed to provide pursuant to this Article and does not hereby undertake to provide any other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of the Board’s or the State’s financial results, condition, or prospects or hereby undertake to update any information provided in accordance with this Article or otherwise, except as expressly provided herein. The Board does not make any representation or warranty concerning such information or its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Series 2022D Bonds at any future date.

UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL THE BOARD BE LIABLE TO THE HOLDER OR BENEFICIAL OWNER OF ANY SERIES 2022D BOND OR ANY OTHER PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR DAMAGES RESULTING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM ANY BREACH BY THE BOARD, WHETHER NEGLIGENT OR WITHOUT FAULT ON ITS PART, OF ANY COVENANT SPECIFIED IN THIS ARTICLE, BUT EVERY RIGHT AND REMEDY OF ANY SUCH PERSON, IN CONTRACT OR TORT, FOR OR ON ACCOUNT OF ANY SUCH BREACH SHALL BE LIMITED TO AN ACTION FOR MANDAMUS OR SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE.

All documents provided to the MSRB shall be accompanied by identifying information, as prescribed by the MSRB.

No default by the Board in observing or performing its obligations under this Article shall constitute a breach of or default under this Resolution for purposes of any other provision of this Resolution.

Nothing in this Article is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive, or otherwise limit the duties of the Board or the State under federal and State securities laws.

Should the Rule be amended to obligate the Board to make filings with or provide notices to entities other than the MSRB, the Board agrees to undertake such obligation in accordance with the Rule as amended.

The provisions of this Article may be amended by the Board from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the Board or the State, but only if (1) the provisions of this Article, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Series 2022D Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022D Bonds in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount or maturity amount (or any greater

amount required by any other provision of this Resolution that authorizes such an amendment) of the outstanding Series 2022D Bonds consent to such amendment or (b) a Person that is unaffiliated with the Board and the State (such as nationally-recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds. If the Board so amends the provisions of this Article, it shall include with any amended financial information or operating data next provided in accordance with Section 9.02(a) an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information or operating data so provided. The Board may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure requirement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Series 2022D Bonds in the primary offering of the Series 2022D Bonds.

## ARTICLE X

### DEFEASANCE

**Section 10.01 Series 2022D Bonds Deemed Paid.** Any Series 2022D Bond and the interest thereon shall be deemed to be paid, retired and no longer outstanding (a “Defeased Bond”), except to the extent hereinafter provided in this Article, when payment of the principal of such Series 2022D Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date (whether such due date be by reason of maturity or otherwise) either (i) shall have been made or caused to be made in accordance with the terms thereof, or (ii) shall have been provided for on or before such due date by irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other similar instrument (the “**Future Escrow Agreement**”) for such payment (1) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such payment or (2) Defeasance Securities that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. At such time as a Series 2022D Bond shall be deemed to be a Defeased Bond hereunder, as aforesaid, such Series 2022D Bond and the interest thereon shall no longer be secured by, payable from, or entitled to the benefits of, the State Participation Account, and such principal and interest shall be payable solely from such money or Defeasance Securities. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, it is hereby provided that any determination not to redeem Defeased Bonds that is made in conjunction with the payment arrangements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) above shall not be irrevocable; provided, that in the proceedings providing for such payment arrangements, the Board (1) expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (2) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the payment arrangements; and (3) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

**Section 10.02 Investment in Defeasance Securities.** Any moneys so deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar may at the written direction of the Board be invested in Defeasance Securities, maturing in the amounts and times as hereinbefore set forth, and all income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar that is not required for the payment of the Series 2022D Bonds and interest thereon, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be turned over to the Board, or deposited as directed in writing by the Board. Any Future Escrow Agreement pursuant to which the money and/or Defeasance Securities are held for the payment of Defeased Bonds may contain provisions

permitting the investment or reinvestment of such moneys in Defeasance Securities or the substitution of other Defeasance Securities upon the satisfaction of the requirements specified in clauses (i) or (ii) of Section 10.01. All income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar which is not required for the payment of the Defeased Bonds, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be remitted to the Board or deposited as directed in writing by the Board.

**Section 10.03 Paying Agent/Registrar Services.** Until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for such Defeased Bonds the same as if they had not been defeased, and the Board shall make proper arrangements to provide and pay for such services as required by this Resolution.

**Section 10.04 Selection of Series 2022D Bonds for Defeasance.** In the event that the Board elects to defease less than all of the principal amount of Series 2022D Bonds of a maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall select, or cause to be selected, such amount of Series 2022D Bonds by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate and consistent with the terms of this Resolution.

## ARTICLE XI

### **MATTERS RELATING TO THE REFUNDED BONDS**

**Section 11.01 Purpose for Refunding.** The Board hereby finds that the refunding of the Refunded Bonds is in the public interest as it enables the Board to produce a net present value savings. An Authorized Representative shall execute and deliver an Approval Certificate setting forth the amount of net present value savings realized as a result of the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, evidencing that the minimum savings threshold established in Section 2.01(c) of this Resolution has been met.

**Section 11.02 Escrow Agreement.**

The Escrow Agreement, in substantially the form attached to the Approval Certificate, is hereby approved by the Board, and the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is hereby authorized to execute and deliver the same on behalf of the Board. The redemption, discharge and defeasance of the Refunded Bonds shall be effected pursuant to the terms and provisions of the Escrow Agreement in substantially the form approved in the Approval Certificate, the terms and provisions of which are hereby approved, subject to such insertions, additions and modifications as shall be necessary (a) to provide that the sufficiency of the cash and/or escrowed securities deposited to be held pursuant to the Escrow Agreement shall be certified as to mathematical accuracy in a sufficiency certificate or a report prepared by a nationally recognized firm acceptable to the Board, its financial advisors and the Escrow Agent with respect to the adequacy of the escrowed securities referred to in the Escrow Agreement to pay, when due, the principal of, interest on, and any call premium requirements on the Refunded Bonds, (b) to comply with all applicable laws and regulations relating to the refunding of the Refunded Bonds, (c) to carry out the other intents and purposes of this Resolution, and (d) to comply with the terms set forth in the Approval Certificate.

**Section 11.03 Purchase of United States Treasury Obligations.**

In order to assure the purchase of any escrowed securities to be held pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is hereby authorized to make necessary arrangements for the subscription and purchase of, such obligations of the United States of

America, or other securities or investments as may be permitted under State law and applicable federal tax law, in such amounts, maturities, and bearing interest at such rates as may be provided for in the sufficiency certificate or report referred to in Section 11.02, and the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative is authorized, either prior to Closing or after the date thereof, to execute any and all subscriptions, purchase contracts, forward purchase contracts, commitments, letters of authorization, and other documents necessary or desirable, in the judgment of the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative, to effect the foregoing, and any actions heretofore taken by the Executive Administrator or other Authorized Representative for such purpose are hereby ratified and approved.

**Section 11.04 Redemption of Refunded Bonds.** Upon issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds, the Refunded Bonds identified in the Approval Certificate to be redeemed are hereby declared to be called for redemption on the redemption date or dates identified in the Approval Certificate, consistent with the provisions set forth in the respective proceedings authorizing their issuance with respect to the redemption of bonds at the option of the Board. In connection with the prior redemption of any of the Refunded Bonds as may be provided for in the Approval Certificate, the Authorized Representative is hereby directed to coordinate with the Escrow Agent to give notice of such redemption, in substantially the form attached to the Approval Certificate, in accordance with the applicable terms of the resolution that authorized such series of Refunded Bonds. In addition, the Authorized Representative is hereby directed to take such steps as may be necessary to provide registered owners of the Refunded Bonds notice that the obligations owned thereby have been escrowed to maturity or prior redemption.

**Section 11.05 Escrow Fund.**

An Escrow Fund may be established pursuant to an Approval Certificate to be maintained by the Escrow Agent for application as provided in the Escrow Agreement.

**Section 11.06 Transfer of Funds.**

The Board shall allocate remaining money in each of the interest and sinking funds and/or project funds for each series of Refunded Bonds to the series or subseries of Series 2022D Bonds which refund such bonds and transfer such funds to the applicable interest and sinking fund or the applicable Escrow Fund as may be determined by the Board pursuant to federal income tax law requirements.

**ARTICLE XII**

**MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**Section 12.01 Further Procedures.** The Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the General Counsel, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or any other officers of the Board and each of them, shall be and they are hereby expressly authorized, empowered and directed from time to time and at any time to do and perform all such acts and things and to execute, acknowledge and deliver in the name and under the seal of the Board and on behalf of the Board all agreements, instruments, or such other documents, whether mentioned herein or not, as may be necessary or desirable in order to carry out the terms and provisions of this Resolution, and the initial sale and delivery of the Series 2022D Bonds. In addition, prior to the initial delivery of the Series 2022D Bonds, the Chair of the Board, the Executive Administrator, the Development Fund Manager, the Chief Financial Officer, and/or the General Counsel of the Board and the Board's Bond Counsel are hereby authorized and directed to approve any technical changes or corrections to this Resolution or to any of the instruments authorized and

approved by this Resolution: (i) in order to cure any technical ambiguity, formal defect, or omission in the Resolution or such other document; or (ii) as requested by the Attorney General or his representative to obtain the approval of the Series 2022D Bonds by the Attorney General and if such officer or counsel determines that such ministerial changes are consistent with the intent and purpose of the Resolution, which determination shall be final. In the event that any officer of the Board whose signature shall appear on any document shall cease to be such officer before the delivery of such document, such signature nevertheless shall be valid and sufficient for all purposes the same as if such officer had remained in office until such delivery.

**Section 12.02 Open Meeting; Notice.** It is hereby officially found and determined that the meeting at which this Resolution is adopted is open to the public as required by law at all times during which this Resolution and the subject matter thereof are discussed, considered and formally acted upon; and reasonable notice of this meeting was delivered to the Secretary of State of the State, as required by Chapter 551.

**Section 12.03 Prior Actions.** All actions taken by the Board authorizing the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds are in all things approved, ratified and confirmed, except that to the extent such actions conflict with any provision of this Resolution, the terms and provisions of this Resolution shall control and prevail.

**Section 12.04 Perfection of Security Interest in Pledge.** Chapter 1208 applies to the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds and the pledge of the credit of the State made pursuant to Section 49-d-8, and such pledge is therefore valid, effective, and perfected. If State law is amended at any time while the Series 2022D Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that such pledge is to be subject to the filing requirements of Chapter 9, then in order to preserve to the registered owners of the Series 2022D Bonds the perfection of the security interest in said pledge, the Board agrees to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under State law to comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9 and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

ADOPTED AND APPROVED this February 2, 2022.

---

Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

**SCHEDULE I**

**LIST OF REFUNDABLE BONDS**

State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2013D (State Participation Program)

**LIST OF EXHIBITS**

<b>Exhibit A</b>	Form of Bond
<b>Exhibit B</b>	Description of Annual Financial Information of the Board

**EXHIBIT A**

**FORM OF BOND**

NO. \_\_\_\_\_

\$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
 STATE OF TEXAS  
 WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BOND  
 TAXABLE SERIES 2022D<sup>1</sup>  
 (STATE PARTICIPATION BONDS)

MATURITY DATE

INTEREST RATE  
 %

DATED DATE  
 \_\_\_\_\_, 2022

CUSIP

Registered Owner:  
 Principal Amount:

ON THE MATURITY DATE SPECIFIED ABOVE, THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), hereby promises to pay to the registered owner specified above, or to the registered assignees hereof (either being hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount specified above and to pay interest thereon, from the dated date of this Bond specified above, to the date of its scheduled maturity or date of redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the rate of interest per annum specified above, with said interest being payable on February 1, 20\_, and semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, except that if the Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate appearing on the face of this Bond is dated later than February 1, 20\_, such interest is payable semiannually on each August 1 and February 1 following such date of authentication.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption, prior to its scheduled maturity, at the corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") in Dallas, Texas (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof as shown on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the fifteenth day of the month next preceding such interest payment date (the "Record Date") by check drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Board required to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner of record on the Record Date at its address as it appears on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described. The Board covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that no later than each principal payment date and interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Series 2022D Bonds (as defined herein) when due.

INTEREST ON the Series 2022D Bonds shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ANY PAYMENTS required to be made hereunder on any day which is not a Business Day (as defined below) shall be made instead on the next succeeding Business Day and no interest shall accrue on such payments in the interim. "Business Day" means a day other than a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close. Notwithstanding the foregoing, during any period in which ownership of the Series 2022D Bonds is determined only by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022D Bonds, any payment to the securities depository, or its nominee or registered assigns, shall be made in accordance with existing arrangements between the Board and the securities depository.

THIS BOND is one of a series of Bonds of like tenor and effect except as to number, maturity, interest rate and right of prior redemption, dated as of the dated date of this Bond specified above, aggregating \_\_\_\_\_ (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) (the "Series 2022D Bonds")<sup>1</sup>, issued pursuant to authority granted to the Board by Section 49-d-8 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-8"), Section 49-d-9 of Article III of the Texas Constitution ("Section 49-d-9") and Subchapter L, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code ("Subchapter L"), and a resolution authorizing the issuance of the series of Bonds of which this is one, adopted by the Board and duly of record in the minutes of the Board (hereinafter called the "Bond Resolution"), for the purpose of refunding the Refunded Bonds, and to pay expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Series 2022D Bonds. In the Bond Resolution, the Board delegated to certain designated officials the authority to establish and approve the final terms of sale of the Series 2022D Bonds through the execution of one or more Approval Certificates (the Bond Resolution and applicable Approval Certificate are collectively referred to herein as the "Resolution"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Resolution.

THE SERIES 2022D BONDS having stated maturities on and after \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ shall be subject to redemption prior to maturity, at the option of the Board, in whole or in part, in Authorized Denominations, on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_, or on any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

THE SERIES 2022D BONDS maturing on August 1, in the years \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Term Bonds") are subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption annually, on August 1 of the years and in the principal amounts set forth below, plus accrued interest from the most recent interest payment date on which interest has been paid or fully provided for, to the redemption date:

**Term Bonds due August 1, 20**

Mandatory Redemption Date  
(August 1)

Principal Amount

† Final Maturity

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

THE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT of Term Bonds required to be redeemed shall be reduced, at the option of the Board, by the principal amount of Term Bonds which, at least 50 days prior to the mandatory sinking fund redemption date (1) shall have been defeased or acquired by the Board and delivered to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, (2) shall have been purchased and canceled by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the request of the Board with money in the Bond Fund, or (3) shall have been redeemed pursuant to the optional redemption provisions set forth above and not theretofore credited against a mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement. On or before August 1 of every year in which there are mandatory redemption requirements as defined above for the Term Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall determine the principal amount of Term Bonds that must be mandatorily redeemed on August 1 of such year, after taking into account deliveries for cancellation and prior redemption of Term Bonds as provided above.

IF THE SERIES 2022D BONDS are registered in book-entry only form and so long as DTC, or a successor securities depository, is the sole registered owner of such Series 2022D Bonds and if less than all of the Series 2022D Bonds of a maturity are called for prior redemption, the particular Series 2022D Bonds or portions thereof to be redeemed shall be selected on a "Pro Rata Pass-Through Distribution of Principal" basis in accordance with DTC procedures; provided, however, the selection for redemption of such Series 2022D Bonds shall be made in accordance with the operational arrangements of DTC then in effect. It is the Board's intent that redemption allocations made by DTC, the DTC Participants or such other intermediaries that may exist between the Board and the beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds be made on a Pro Rata Pass-Through Distribution of Principal basis as described above; however, the Board can provide no assurance that DTC, the DTC Participants or any other intermediaries will allocate redemptions among beneficial owners of the Series 2022D Bonds on such basis. If the DTC operational arrangements do not allow for the redemption of the Series 2022D Bonds on a Pro Rata Pass-Through Distribution of Principal basis as described above, then the Series 2022D Bonds will be selected for redemption in accordance with DTC procedures by lot.

IF THE SERIES 2022D BONDS are no longer registered to DTC or its nominee, any redemption of less than all of a maturity of such Series 2022D Bonds shall be effected by the Paying Agent/Registrar among owners on a pro-rata basis subject to minimum Authorized Denominations. The Series 2022D Bonds or portions thereof to be redeemed shall be determined by the Paying Agent/Registrar, using such method as it shall deem fair and appropriate.

AT LEAST thirty (30) days prior to the date fixed for any redemption, (a) a written notice of such redemption shall be given to the registered owner of each Bond or a portion thereof being called for redemption by depositing such notice in the United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, addressed to each such registered owner at his address shown on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar, and (b) notice of such redemption either shall be published one (1) time in or posted electronically on the website of a financial journal or publication of general circulation in the United States of America or the State of Texas carrying as a regular feature notices of municipal bonds called for redemption; *provided, however*, that the failure to send, mail, or receive such notice described in clause (a) above, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond, and the Resolution provides that the provision of notice as described in clause (a) above shall be the only notice actually required in connection with or as a prerequisite to the redemption of any Bonds. By the date fixed for any such redemption due provision shall be made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for this Bond or the portion hereof which is to be so redeemed, plus accrued interest thereon to the date fixed for redemption.

Should notice to call Bonds for redemption at the option of the Board be given in the manner provided above, but the Board shall not be able to provide the Paying Agent/Registrar with amounts sufficient to effect on the date fixed for redemption the payment of the entire redemption price of the Series 2022D Bonds so called for redemption, no Bonds shall be redeemed on the date fixed for redemption, and the notice of redemption for such Bonds shall be null and void. Such occurrence shall not result in default of the Board's payment obligations on the Series 2022D Bonds as provided herein or in the Resolution. By each redemption date, the Board shall deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar money sufficient to pay all amounts due on the redemption date.

THE BOARD RESERVES the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Series 2022D Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of moneys and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying Agent/Registrar instruction the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such moneys and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

IF SUCH NOTICE of redemption is given, and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided in the paragraph above, this Bond, or the portion thereof which is to be so redeemed, thereby automatically shall be redeemed prior to its scheduled maturity, and shall not bear interest after the date fixed for its redemption, and shall not be regarded as being Outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall record in the Registration Books all such redemptions of principal of this Bond or any portion hereof. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed, a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any Authorized Denomination, at the written request of the registered owner, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Board, all as provided in the Resolution

THIS BOND OR ANY PORTION OR PORTIONS HEREOF IN ANY AUTHORIZED DENOMINATION may be assigned and shall be transferred only in the registration books of the Board kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar acting in the capacity of registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds, upon the terms and conditions set forth in the Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any Authorized Denomination to the assignee or assignees. A new Bond or Bonds payable to such assignee, or to the previous registered owner in the case of the assignment and transfer of only a portion of this Bond, shall be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in conversion of and exchange for this Bond, all in the form and manner as provided in the next paragraph hereof for the conversion and exchange of other Bonds.

AS PROVIDED in the Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee, or assignees, as the case may be, having the same maturity date and interest rate, in any Authorized Denomination, as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner or assignee, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office for cancellation.

NEITHER THE BOARD, the State of Texas, nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, transfer, exchange or make any conversion of any Bond subject to redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business thirty (30) days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing or (b) to transfer or exchange any Bond after it is selected for redemption, in whole or in part, prior to the redemption date; provided, however, that at the option of the registered owner of at least \$1,000,000 in principal amount of the Series 2022D Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer or exchange any Bonds which have been selected in whole or in part for redemption upon the surrender thereof. The registered owner requesting conversion and exchange of any Bond or portion thereof shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's customary fees and charges, together with any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege of conversion and exchange, except, however, that in the case of the conversion and exchange of an assigned and transferred Bond or Bonds or portion thereof, and in the case of the conversion and exchange of a portion of a Bond which has been redeemed prior to maturity, as provided herein, the fees and charges of the Paying Agent/Registrar will be paid by the Board.

WHENEVER the beneficial ownership of this Bond is determined by a book entry at a securities depository for the Series 2022D Bonds, the foregoing requirements of holding, delivering or transferring this Bond shall be modified to require the appropriate person or entity to meet the requirements of the securities depository as to registering or transferring the book entry to produce the same effect.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Series 2022D Bonds is changed by the Board, resigns or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Board has covenanted in the Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and promptly will cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Series 2022D Bonds.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the Board, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Board.

THE ISSUE of Bonds of which this is one shall be and is hereby made a general obligation of the State of Texas, pursuant to Section 49-d-8 and Subchapter L, and for the faithful performance of all covenants, recitals and stipulations herein contained, and for the faithful performance in proper time and manner of each official or other act required and necessary to provide for the prompt payment of principal of and interest on this Bond when due, the resources of the Board and the full faith and credit of the State of Texas are hereby pledged.

PAYMENTS OF THE PRINCIPAL OF and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be made primarily from the "Texas Water Development Fund II State Participation Account" (the "State Participation Account") within the Texas Water Development Fund II ("Development Fund II") created by Section 49-d-8. The State Participation Account shall be comprised of (1) the Board's rights to receive repayment of financial assistance provided from such account, together with any evidence of such rights; (2) money received from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayment of such financial assistance; (3) money received as repayment of such financial assistance; (4) money and assets attributable to bonds issued and sold by the Board for such account, including money and assets transferred from the Texas Water Development Fund pursuant to Section 49-d-8; (5) money deposited to such account from the sale, transfer, or lease, in whole or in part, of facilities held for such account; (6) payments received by the Board under a bond enhancement agreement as authorized by law with respect to bonds issued for such account; (7) interest and other income received from investment of money in such account; and (8) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the State Participation Account. Proceeds from the sale of the bonds on deposit in the State Participation Account shall not be available to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part unless specifically authorized by the Board. The Bonds and all other bonds or other obligations issued or incurred by the Board pursuant to Section 49-d-8, Section 49-d-9, or Section 49-d-11 to provide funds for the State Participation Account of Development Fund II or to refund any such bonds or obligations are referred to herein as "State Participation Bonds". Section 49-d-8 provides that to the extent there is not money in any account available for payment of principal of and interest on the State Participation Bonds issued for such account, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the State Treasury (as defined in the Resolution) in each fiscal year, not otherwise appropriated by the Texas Constitution, an amount which is sufficient to pay the principal of and interest on such State Participation Bonds that mature or become due during that fiscal year.

IT IS HEREBY certified and recited that all acts, conditions and things required to be done precedent to and in the issuance of this Bond and the series of which it forms a part have been properly done, have happened and have been performed in regular and due time, form and manner as required by the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas and the Resolution, and that the series of Bonds of which this is a part does not exceed any constitutional or statutory limitation, and that provision has been made for the payment of the principal of and interest on this Bond and the series of which it is a part as such principal and interest become due by a continuing appropriation heretofore made by Section 49-d-8 and by a pledge of the credit of the State of Texas.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, this Bond is executed with the lithographed or printed facsimile or manual signatures of the Chairwoman of the Texas Water Development Board and the Executive Administrator, and the seal of said Board is lithographed, printed or manually impressed hereon.

THE STATE OF TEXAS

---

Chairwoman  
Texas Water Development Board

ATTEST:

---

Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

(SEAL)

[To accompany Definitive Bonds only]

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Resolution described on the face of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion of and exchange for or replacement of a Bond, Bonds or a portion of a Bond or Bonds of an issue which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST  
COMPANY, N.A., Paying Agent/Registrar

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Representative

ASSIGNMENT

FOR VALUE RECEIVED the undersigned hereby sells, assigns, and transfers unto (Print or typewrite name, address, and zip code of transferee:)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_(Social Security or other identifying number \_\_\_\_\_) the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints \_\_\_\_\_ attorney to transfer the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

DATED:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature guaranteed:  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
NOTICE: The signature on this assignment must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears on the face of the within Bond in every particular.

[To accompany Initial Bond(s) only]

REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE OF  
TEXAS COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER	)	
OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS	)	REGISTER NO. _____
THE STATE OF TEXAS	)	

I HEREBY CERTIFY that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and duly registered by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts.

WITNESS my signature and seal of office this \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts

(SEAL)

The Initial Series 2022D Bond shall be in the form set forth therefor in this Exhibit, except as follows:

Heading and paragraphs one (1) through three (3) shall be replaced as follows:

NO. T-1 \$ \_\_\_\_\_

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
STATE OF TEXAS  
WATER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE REFUNDING BOND  
TAXABLE SERIES 2022D<sup>1</sup>  
(STATE PARTICIPATION PROGRAM)

Bond Date:

\_\_\_\_\_, 2021

Registered Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

Principal Amount: \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

THE STATE OF TEXAS, ACTING BY AND THROUGH THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD (the "Board"), for value received, acknowledges itself indebted to and hereby promises to pay to the registered owner named above, or the registered assigns thereof, the Principal Amount hereinabove stated on August 1 in the years and in principal installments in accordance with the following schedule:

<u>Year of Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Principal Amount (\$)</u>	<u>Interest Rates (%)</u>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

(Information to be inserted from Approval Certificate).

(without right of prior redemption) and to pay interest on the unpaid principal installments hereof from the date of its delivery at the per annum rates of interest specified above computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months; such interest being payable on February 1, 20\_\_, and each August 1 and February 1 thereafter, until maturity. Principal installments of this Series 2022D Bond are payable in the year of maturity or on a redemption date to the registered owner hereof by The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender, at its designated offices in East Syracuse, New York (the "Designated Payment/Transfer Office"). Interest is payable to the registered owner of this Bond whose name appears on the "Security Register" maintained by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the "Record Date," which is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding each interest payment date, and interest shall be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar by check sent United States Mail, first class postage prepaid, to the address of the registered owner recorded in the Security Register or by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. All payments of principal of, premium, if any, and interest on this Bond shall be without exchange or collection charges to the registered owner hereof and in any coin or currency of the United States of America, which at the time of payment is legal tender for the payment of public and private debts. If the date for the payment of the

<sup>1</sup> Designation of subseries, if any, to be provided in an Approval Certificate.

principal of or interest on the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to be closed, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to be closed; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

**EXHIBIT B**

**DESCRIPTION OF ANNUAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION  
OF THE BOARD**

The following information is referred to in Section 9.02 of this Resolution.

**Annual Financial Statements and Operating Data**

The financial information and operating data with respect to the Board to be provided annually in accordance with such Section is the quantitative financial information and operating data pertaining to the Board included in Tables 1 and 2 of the Official Statement and in Appendix B to the Official Statement relating to the Bonds.

**Accounting Principles**

The accounting principles referred to in such Section are generally accepted accounting principles for governmental units as prescribed by the Government Accounting Standards Board from time to time, as such principles may be changed from time to time to comply with state law or regulation.

This Preliminary Official Statement and the information contained herein are subject to completion or amendment. These securities may not be sold nor may offers to buy be accepted prior to the time the Preliminary Official Statement is delivered in final form. Under no circumstances shall the Preliminary Official Statement constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy nor shall there be any sale of these securities in any jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation, or sale would be unlawful prior to registration or qualification under the securities laws of such jurisdiction.

**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

Dated [REDACTED], 2022

**Ratings:**  
Fitch: "[REDACTED]"  
Moody's: "[REDACTED]"  
S&P: "[REDACTED]"  
(See "OTHER INFORMATION - Ratings" herein)

**NEW ISSUES - Book-Entry-Only**

*In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel, based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds (defined below) is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any other tax consequences related to the ownership or disposition of, or the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

**\$0\***  
**STATE OF TEXAS**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**



<b>\$0*</b>	<b>\$0*</b>
<b>Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A</b>	<b>Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B</b>
<b>\$0*</b>	<b>\$0*</b>
<b>Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program)</b>	<b>Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program)</b>

**Dated Date: Date of Delivery**

**Due: August 1, as shown on pages ii, iii and iv herein**

The State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A (the "Series 2022A Bonds"), the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B (the "Series 2022B Bonds"), the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program) (the "Series 2022C Bonds"), and the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program) (the "Taxable Series 2022D Bonds"); collectively referred to herein as the "Bonds" and the "2022 Bonds") are general obligations of the State of Texas (the "State") and are issued by the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB" or the "Board") under the authority of the Texas Constitution (the "Constitution") and general laws of the State. Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Date of Delivery (as defined below) at the fixed rates of interest shown on pages ii, iii and iv, respectively, hereof and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months. Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Date of Delivery and will be payable on February 1, 2023, and on each August 1 and February 1 thereafter until maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds in the denomination of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity. The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC"), initially will act as securities depository for the Bonds. **Beneficial owners of the Bonds will not receive physical delivery of Bond certificates except as described herein.**

The Bonds are subject to redemption prior to stated maturity as provided herein. See "THE BONDS – Series 2022A Bonds – Redemption Provisions", "THE BONDS – Series 2022B Bonds – Redemption Provisions", "THE BONDS – Series 2022C Bonds – Redemption Provisions", and "THE BONDS – Taxable Series 2022D Bonds – Redemption Provisions".

**THE BONDS ARE GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS AND ARE SECURED BY THE FULL FAITH AND CREDIT OF THE STATE OF TEXAS.** See "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS".

The Bonds are issued pursuant to four separate Board resolutions adopted on February 2, 2022 (the "2022A Resolution", the "2022B Resolution", the "2022C Resolution", and the "2022D Resolution", respectively, and collectively, the "Bond Resolutions"), in which the Board delegated to certain designated officials the authority to establish and approve the final terms of the sale of the Bonds through the execution of one or more approval certificates (the Bond Resolutions and such approval certificates are collectively referred to herein as the "Resolutions"). The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Resolutions, and the Constitution and general laws of the State, including particularly Article III, Sections 49-d-8, 49-d-9, 49-d-10 and 49-d-11, Texas Constitution, Subchapter L of Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code, as amended (the "Act"), Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1207") and Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371"), for the purposes of conserving and developing the water resources of the State by (i) providing funds for the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects (defined herein); (ii) providing funds for the refunding of the Refunded Bonds (defined herein) for debt service savings, and (iii) providing funds for the payment of expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. Capitalized terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings given to said terms in the Resolutions.

SEE INSIDE COVER PAGES HEREIN FOR STATED MATURITIES, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS, INTEREST RATES, INITIAL YIELDS, CUSIP NUMBERS, AND REDEMPTION PROVISIONS FOR BONDS

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued and accepted by the underwriters listed below (the "Underwriters"), subject to prior sale, withdrawal or modification of the offer without notice and are subject to the approving legal opinions of the Attorney General of the State, and Orrick, Herrington, & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel. Certain legal matters will be passed on for the Board by Bracewell LLP, Houston, Texas, Disclosure Counsel. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their counsel, Kassahn & Ortiz, P.C., San Antonio, Texas. See "LEGAL MATTERS." It is expected that the Bonds will be available for delivery, through the facilities of DTC, on or about May 10, 2022 (the "Date of Delivery").*

**RAMIREZ & Co., INC.**

**FROST BANK**

**RAYMOND JAMES**

**SIEBERT WILLIAMS SHANK & Co., LLC**

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

**Maturity Schedule**  
**\$000,000,000\***  
**STATE OF TEXAS**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**  
**Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A**

CUSIP Prefix: 882724<sup>(4)</sup>

Stated Maturity (August 1) <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup>	Principal Amount	Interest Rate	Initial Yield	CUSIP No. Suffix <sup>(4)</sup>
2022	\$ 0			
2023	0			
2024	0			
2025	0			
2026	0			
2027	0			
2028	0			
2029	0			
2030	0			
2031	0			
2032	0			
2033	0			
2034	0			
2035	0			
2036	0			
2037	0			
2038	0			
2039	0			
2040	0			
2041	0			
2042	0			
2043	0			
2044	0			
2045	0			
2046	0			

*(Interest to accrue from the Date of Delivery)*

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(1)</sup> *Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption.* The Series 2022A Bonds are subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption prior to maturity as described under "THE BONDS – Series 2022A Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption."

<sup>(2)</sup> *Optional Redemption.* The Series 2022A Bonds having stated maturities on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to redemption at the option of the Board, in whole or from the time to time in part, on August 1, 20\_\_ or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. See "THE BONDS – Series 2022A Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Optional Redemption."

<sup>(3)</sup> *Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption.* The Series 2022A Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or maturities as a term bond. See "THE BONDS – Series 2022A Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption."

<sup>(4)</sup> CUSIP® is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association, CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of the American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP services. None of the State, the Board, the Financial Advisor (as defined herein), or the Underwriters are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

**Maturity Schedule**

**\$000,000,000\***  
**STATE OF TEXAS**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**  
**Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B**

**CUSIP Prefix: 882724<sup>(3)</sup>**

<u>Stated</u> <u>Maturity</u> <u>(August 1)</u> <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	<u>Principal</u> <u>Amount</u>	<u>Interest</u> <u>Rate</u>	<u>Initial</u> <u>Yield</u>	<u>CUSIP</u> <u>No. Suffix</u> <sup>(3)</sup>
2022	\$ 0			
2023	0			
2024	0			
2025	0			
2026	0			
2027	0			
2028	0			
2029	0			
2030	0			
2031	0			
2032	0			
2033	0			
2034	0			
2035	0			
2036	0			
2037	0			
2038	0			

*(Interest to accrue from the Date of Delivery)*

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(1)</sup> *Optional Redemption.* The Series 2022B Bonds having stated maturities on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to redemption at the option of the Board, in whole or from the time to time in part, on August 1, 20\_\_ or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. See "THE BONDS – Series 2022B Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Optional Redemption."

<sup>(2)</sup> *Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption.* The Series 2022B Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or maturities as a term bond. See "THE BONDS – Series 2022B Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Mandatory Sinking Fund."

<sup>(3)</sup> CUSIP® is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association, CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of the American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP services. None of the State, the Board, the Financial Advisor (as defined herein), or the Underwriters are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

**Maturity Schedule**

**\$000,000,000\***  
**STATE OF TEXAS**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**  
**Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C**  
**(Economically Distressed Areas Program)**

**CUSIP Prefix: 882724<sup>(3)</sup>**

Stated Maturity (August 1) <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Interest Rate	Initial Yield	CUSIP No. Suffix <sup>(3)</sup>
2022	\$ 0			
2023	0			
2024	0			
2025	0			
2026	0			
2027	0			
2028	0			
2029	0			

*(Interest to accrue from the Date of Delivery)*

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(1)</sup> *Optional Redemption.* **The Series 2022C Bonds are not subject to optional redemption prior to maturity.**

<sup>(2)</sup> *Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption.* The Series 2022C Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or maturities as a term bond. See "THE BONDS – Series 2022C Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption."

<sup>(3)</sup> CUSIP® is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association, CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of the American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP services. None of the State, the Board, the Financial Advisor (as defined herein), or the Underwriters are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

**Maturity Schedule**

**\$000,000,000\***  
**STATE OF TEXAS**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**  
**Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D**  
**(State Participation Program)**

**CUSIP Prefix: 882724<sup>(3)</sup>**

Stated Maturity (August 1) <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Interest Rate	Initial Yield	CUSIP No. Suffix <sup>(3)</sup>
2022	\$ 0			
2023	0			
2024	0			
2025	0			
2026	0			
2027	0			
2028	0			
2029	0			
2030	0			
2031	0			
2032	0			
2033	0			
2034	0			
2035	0			

*(Interest to accrue from the Date of Delivery)*

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(1)</sup> *Optional Redemption.* The Taxable Series 2022D Bonds having stated maturities on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to redemption at the option of the Board, in whole or from the time to time in part, on August 1, 20\_\_ or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. See "THE BONDS – Taxable Series 2022D Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Optional Redemption."

<sup>(2)</sup> *Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption.* The Taxable Series 2022D Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or maturities as a term bond. See "THE BONDS – Taxable Series 2022D Bonds – Redemption Provisions – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption."

<sup>(3)</sup> CUSIP® is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association, CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of the American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP services. None of the State, the Board, the Financial Advisor (as defined herein), or the Underwriters are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

## SALE AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE BONDS

For purposes of compliance with United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") Rule 15c2-12, (the "Rule"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "Official Statement" of the Board with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the Board as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by the Rule.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page, schedule of Refunded Bonds, maturity schedules and the Appendices attached hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

### Use of Official Statement

The Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022C, and Taxable Series 2022D Bonds are separate and distinct securities offered, issued and sold independently, except for use of this common Official Statement in connection with such offering and sale. While the Bonds share certain common attributes, each issue is separate from the other and each issue should be reviewed and analyzed independently, including the type of obligation being offered, its terms for payment, the security for its payment, and the rights of the holders. See "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS" herein.

No dealer, broker, salesman or other person has been authorized by the Board or the Underwriters to give any information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representation must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the Board or the Underwriters. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Bonds by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation, or sale. The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement, nor any sale made hereunder, shall, under any circumstances, create the implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the Board or the State since the date hereof. This Official Statement is submitted in connection with the sale of securities referred to herein and in no instance may this Official Statement be reproduced or used for any other purpose.

The Underwriters have provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriters have reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, their respective responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT IS INTENDED TO REFLECT FACTS AND CIRCUMSTANCES ON THE DATE OF THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT OR ON SUCH OTHER DATE OR AT SUCH OTHER TIME AS IDENTIFIED HEREIN. NO ASSURANCE CAN BE GIVEN THAT SUCH INFORMATION MAY NOT BE MISLEADING AT A LATER DATE. CONSEQUENTLY, RELIANCE ON THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT AT TIMES SUBSEQUENT TO THE ISSUANCE OF THE BONDS DESCRIBED HEREIN SHOULD NOT BE MADE ON THE ASSUMPTION THAT ANY SUCH FACTS OR CIRCUMSTANCES ARE UNCHANGED.

See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Board and the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts ("Comptroller"), respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis. No representation is made by the Board or the Underwriters regarding the use, presentation and interpretation of the financial information of the State or the Board made by third parties, including, without limitation, the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB").

NONE OF THE STATE, THE BOARD, THE BOARD'S FINANCIAL ADVISOR OR THE UNDERWRITERS MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, AS SUCH INFORMATION HAS BEEN FURNISHED BY DTC.

### Marketability

THE BONDS ARE BEING OFFERED FOR SALE TO THE PUBLIC AT THE PRICES SHOWN ON PAGES ii, iii and iv HEREOF. THE UNDERWRITERS RESERVE THE RIGHT TO LOWER SUCH INITIAL OFFERING PRICES AS THEY DEEM NECESSARY IN CONNECTION WITH THE MARKETING OF THE BONDS. THE UNDERWRITERS RESERVE THE RIGHT TO JOIN WITH DEALERS AND OTHER UNDERWRITERS IN OFFERING THE BONDS TO THE PUBLIC. THE OBLIGATION OF THE UNDERWRITERS TO ACCEPT DELIVERY OF THE BONDS IS SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH IN THE BOND PURCHASE AGREEMENT, THE APPROVAL OF LEGAL MATTERS BY COUNSEL AND OTHER CONDITIONS. IN CONNECTION WITH THE OFFERING OF THE BONDS, THE UNDERWRITERS MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS THAT STABILIZE OR MAINTAIN THE MARKET PRICE OF SUCH BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME. See "OTHER INFORMATION – Underwriting" herein.

## Securities Laws

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon an exemption provided thereunder. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities laws of any other jurisdiction. The Board assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be offered, sold or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions. See "LEGAL MATTERS – Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale" herein.

**NEITHER THE SEC NOR ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION HAS APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED OF THE SECURITIES DESCRIBED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT OR PASSED UPON THE ADEQUACY OR ACCURACY OF THIS DOCUMENT. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.**

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21e OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. See "OTHER INFORMATION – Forward-Looking Statements" herein.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<p>INTRODUCTION ..... 1</p> <p>    COVID-19..... 2</p> <p>PLAN OF FINANCE..... 3</p> <p>    Background ..... 3</p> <p>    Use of Bond Proceeds..... 3</p> <p>    Refunded Bonds ..... 3</p> <p>    Anticipated Issuance of General Obligation Additional Bonds ..... 3</p> <p>SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS..... 4</p> <p>THE BONDS ..... 5</p> <p>    General Provisions..... 5</p> <p>    Series 2022A Bonds – Redemption Provisions ..... 5</p> <p>    Series 2022B Bonds – Redemption Provisions ..... 7</p> <p>    Series 2022C Bonds – Redemption Provisions ..... 7</p> <p>    Taxable Series 2022D Bonds – Redemption Provisions ... 7</p> <p>    Notice of Redemption..... 8</p> <p>    Paying Agent/Registrar..... 8</p> <p>SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS..... 9</p> <p>    General Obligation Pledge..... 9</p> <p>    Perfection of Security ..... 9</p> <p>    Other Sources of Payment ..... 9</p> <p>    Enforcement of Payment ..... 9</p> <p>    Defeasance ..... 9</p> <p>    Amendment of Resolutions With Consent of Registered Owners ..... 10</p> <p>    Amendment of Resolutions Without Consent of Registered Owners ..... 10</p> <p>WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM..... 11</p> <p>    Development Fund I ..... 11</p> <p>    Development Fund II..... 11</p> <p>    Major Accounts within Development Fund II..... 12</p> <p>    Financial Assistance Bonds ..... 12</p> <p>    State Participation Bonds..... 13</p> <p>    EDAP Bonds ..... 13</p> <p>    Water Infrastructure Fund..... 16</p> <p>TABLE 1: WATER ASSISTANCE BONDS..... 16</p> <p>OTHER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS OF THE BOARD ..... 17</p> <p>    Texas Agricultural Water Conservation Bond Program .. 17</p> <p>TABLE 2: AGRICULTURE FUND GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS ..... 17</p> <p>    Flood Infrastructure Fund ..... 17</p> <p>    Revenue Bonds..... 17</p> <p>    State Water Pollution Control Revolving Fund..... 18</p> <p>    State Safe Drinking Water Revolving Fund..... 18</p> <p>    State Water Implementation Fund for Texas..... 18</p> <p>    Rural Water Assistance Fund..... 20</p> <p>TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD ..... 21</p> <p>    General ..... 21</p> <p>    State Water Plan ..... 21</p> <p>    Board Members ..... 21</p> <p>    Key Staff Members..... 21</p> <p>    Limitation of Liability of Officials of the Board ..... 22</p> <p>    Bond Review Board Approval..... 23</p> <p>    Cybersecurity..... 23</p> <p>    Sunset Review of the Board..... 23</p>	<p>GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE STATE ..... 23</p> <p>    Available Information..... 23</p> <p>    Constitutional Limitation on Debt..... 23</p> <p>LEGAL MATTERS ..... 24</p> <p>    Legal Opinions ..... 24</p> <p>    No-Litigation Certificate..... 24</p> <p>    Eligibility for Investment in Texas..... 24</p> <p>    Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale ..... 25</p> <p>TAX MATTERS..... 25</p> <p>    Tax Exemption ..... 25</p> <p>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION ..... 26</p> <p>    Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board ..... 26</p> <p>    Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller..... 27</p> <p>    Availability of Information..... 28</p> <p>    Limitations and Amendments..... 28</p> <p>OTHER INFORMATION ..... 28</p> <p>    Ratings ..... 28</p> <p>    Underwriting ..... 29</p> <p>    Unaudited Financial Information..... 29</p> <p>    Forward-Looking Statements ..... 29</p> <p>    Certification of Official Statement ..... 30</p> <p>    Financial Advisor ..... 30</p> <p>    Website References ..... 30</p> <p>    Approval of Official Statement ..... 30</p> <p>SCHEDULE I - SCHEDULE OF REFUNDED BONDS.. 31</p> <p>APPENDIX A ..... 1</p> <p>THE STATE OF TEXAS..... 1</p> <p>APPENDIX B SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA (UNAUDITED) ..... 1</p> <p>APPENDIX C PROPOSED FORMS OF BOND COUNSEL OPINIONS..... 1</p> <p>APPENDIX D SCHEDULE OF DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS..... 1</p> <p>APPENDIX E BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM..... 1</p>
--	---

## TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD

<u>Members</u>	<u>Term Expiration</u>
Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman	February 1, 2025
Kathleen Jackson, Member	February 1, 2023
Vacant	

### KEY STAFF MEMBERS

Jeff Walker	Executive Administrator
Amanda Lavin	Assistant Executive Administrator
Jessica Peña	Deputy Executive Administrator
Rebecca Trevino	Chief Financial Officer
Georgia Sanchez	Director, Debt and Portfolio Manager and Development Fund Manager
Ashley Harden	General Counsel

### BOND COUNSEL

Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP  
Austin, Texas

### FINANCIAL ADVISOR

Hilltop Securities Inc.  
Austin, Dallas and San Antonio, Texas

### DISCLOSURE COUNSEL

Bracewell LLP  
Houston, Texas

### PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR

The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A.  
Dallas, Texas

Questions regarding this Official Statement may be directed to Georgia Sanchez, Director, Debt and Portfolio Manager and Development Fund Manager, Texas Water Development Board, 1700 North Congress Avenue, 6th Floor, Austin, Texas 78701; Telephone: (512) 475-4584; Electronic Mail: [georgia.sanchez@twdb.texas.gov](mailto:georgia.sanchez@twdb.texas.gov).

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

relating to

**\$0\***

**STATE OF TEXAS  
GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**

**\$0\***

**Water Financial Assistance  
Bonds, Series 2022A**

**\$0\***

**Water Financial Assistance  
Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B**

**\$0\***

**Water Financial Assistance  
Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C  
(Economically Distressed Areas Program)**

**\$0\***

**Water Financial Assistance  
Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D  
(State Participation Program)**

**INTRODUCTION**

The general obligation bonds of the State of Texas (the "State") offered by the Texas Water Development Board (the "Board" or "TWDB") hereby, acting on behalf of the State, are (i) the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A (the "Series 2022A Bonds"), (ii) the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B (the "Series 2022B Bonds"), (iii) the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C (Economically Distressed Areas Program) (the "Series 2022C Bonds"), (iv) the State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D (State Participation Program) (the "Taxable Series 2022D Bonds"), collectively referred to herein as the "Bonds" and the "2022 Bonds". The Bonds, together with other general obligation bonds issued or to be issued in the future pursuant to Article III, Sections 49-d-8 ("Section 49-d-8"), 49-d-9 ("Section 49-d-9"), 49-d-10 ("Section 49-d-10") and 49-d-11 ("Section 49-d-11") of the Texas Constitution (the "Constitution") to augment the funding of the Texas Water Development Fund II, a fund within the State Treasury ("Development Fund II"), are referred to herein collectively sometimes as the "Water Assistance Bonds." The Series 2022A Bonds and the Series 2022B Bonds, together with other Water Assistance Bonds issued or to be issued in the future for the Financial Assistance Account of Development Fund II (the "Financial Assistance Account"), are referred to sometimes herein as the "Financial Assistance Bonds." The Series 2022C Bonds, together with other Water Assistance Bonds issued or to be issued in the future for the Economically Distressed Areas Program Account of Development Fund II (the "EDAP Account") are referred to sometimes herein as the "EDAP Bonds." The Taxable Series 2022D Bonds, together with other Water Assistance Bonds issued or to be issued in the future for the State Participation Account of Development Fund II (the "State Participation Account"), are referred to sometimes herein as the "State Participation Bonds."

The Bonds are being issued pursuant to four separate resolutions adopted by the Board on February 2, 2022 (the "2022A Resolution", the "2022B Resolution", the "2022C Resolution", and the "2022D Resolution", respectively, and collectively, the "Bond Resolutions"), the Constitution and general laws of the State, including particularly Sections 49-d-8, 49-d-9, 49-d-10 and 49-d-11, Subchapter L of Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code, as amended (the "Act"), Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1207") and Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 1371"). The Bond Resolutions delegate to authorized representatives of the Board the authority to complete the sale of the Bonds pursuant to the terms of one or more approval certificates (collectively, the "Approval Certificate" and together with the Bond Resolutions, the "Resolutions", and one or more bond purchase agreement entered into with respect to the Bonds (collectively, the "Purchase Agreement") between the Board and the underwriters listed on the cover page hereto (the "Underwriters"). Capitalized terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings given to said terms in the Bond Resolutions.

THE BONDS CONSTITUTE GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF THE STATE AND THE FULL FAITH AND CREDIT OF THE STATE IS PLEDGED FOR THE FAITHFUL PERFORMANCE IN PROPER TIME AND MANNER OF EACH OFFICIAL OR OTHER ACT REQUIRED OR NECESSARY TO PROVIDE FOR PROMPT PAYMENT OF THE BONDS. See "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS."

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

## **COVID-19**

A respiratory disease named "coronavirus disease 2019" ("COVID-19") has spread to many parts of the world and the United States, including Texas. *For more information on the impact of COVID-19 on the State, see "12. Infectious Disease Outbreak COVID-19" of the State's August 2021 Bond Appendix, as supplemented (the "State's COVID-19 Disclosure") and such disclosure is hereby incorporated by reference, in addition to any future filings by the Comptroller through EMMA (as defined herein) relating to COVID-19 prior to the termination of the offering relating to the 2021 Bonds.* The State's August 2021 Bond Appendix provides, among other things, details about the impact of COVID-19 on the State, including revenue collections compared with 2020 and measures taken by the State and federal government to limit the impact of COVID-19. The State's COVID-19 Disclosure and any subsequently filed documents regarding COVID-19, if any, may be obtained by accessing EMMA at <https://emma.msrb.org/>, using the MSRB Quick Search function and entering the term "State of Texas Comptroller."

While the impact of COVID-19 on the State of Texas is being actively managed by state, local and private healthcare institutions, other parts of the country and globally continue to be materially impacted by COVID 19. The impact of COVID-19 continues to negatively affect certain travel, commerce, healthcare providers and financial markets. Due to the unprecedented nature of the spread of COVID-19, including variants of COVID-19, the duration and extent of the impact of COVID-19 on the Board and the Political Subdivisions that access Board programs cannot be quantified at this time.

In 2020, each State agency, including the Board, was advised by the Governor to engage in prudent fiscal management and pursue costs savings. The Board and other State agencies have engaged in prudent fiscal management and pursued costs savings. Despite these efforts, according to the Comptroller, the financial impact of COVID-19 on the State will linger into the State's 2022-23 biennium, which began on September 1, 2021. To date, however, the Board's operations and financial condition have not been materially impacted by COVID-19. No assurance can be given as to whether the Board's operations and financial condition will be materially impacted in the future. The Board continues to monitor the spread of COVID-19 and is working with local governments and State agencies, including the Political Subdivisions, to address the economic impact of COVID-19.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

## PLAN OF FINANCE

### ***Background***

Section 49-d-8 created the Development Fund II as a separate account within the State Treasury. Section 49-d-9 authorized the Board to issue general obligation bonds in an amount not to exceed \$2 billion to augment Development Fund II. On November 6, 2007, voters approved Proposition 16, which added Section 49-d-10, and authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds to augment the EDAP Account of Development Fund II in an amount not to exceed \$250 million. On November 8, 2011, voters approved Proposition 2, which added Section 49-d-11, and authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds for one or more accounts of Development Fund II in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6 billion.

The Bonds are being issued as Financial Assistance Bonds pursuant to the constitutional authority provided by Sections 49-d-8, 49-d-9, 49-d-10 and 49-d-11.

For a general discussion of Development Fund II and the Bonds authorized to be issued to augment such fund, see "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – Development Fund II", "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – EDAP Bonds", and "TABLE 1: WATER ASSISTANCE BONDS" below.

### ***Use of Bond Proceeds***

The Bonds are being issued for the purpose of conserving and developing the water resources of the State by (i) providing funds for the Financial Assistance Account for Water Assistance Projects (defined herein); (ii) providing funds for the refunding of the Refunded Bonds (defined herein) for debt service savings; and (iii) providing funds for the payment of expenses arising in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. The combined principal amount of all Series 2022A Bonds issued pursuant to the 2022A Resolution shall not exceed \$145,000,000. In addition, pursuant to the Resolutions, the combined principal amount of all Series 2022A Bonds, Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022C Bonds, and Taxable Series 2022D Bonds shall not exceed \$330,000,000. The authority to issue the Bonds under the terms of the Resolutions expires on **July 22, 2022**.

### ***Refunded Bonds***

The bonds described in Schedule I to this Official Statement (the "Refunded Bonds"), and interest due thereon, are anticipated to be paid on the date or dates described in Schedule I to this Official Statement (collectively, the "Redemption Date") from funds to be deposited with The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas, as escrow agent (the "Escrow Agent"). The principal and interest due on the Refunded Bonds are to be paid on the Redemption Date, from funds to be deposited pursuant to one or more escrow agreements (collectively, the "Escrow Agreement") between the Board and the Escrow Agent. The Resolutions provide that from the proceeds of the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds, the Series 2022C Bonds, and the Series 2022D, the Board will deposit with the Escrow Agent an amount which, together with the Escrowed Securities (defined below) purchased with a portion of the proceeds of the Series 2022B Bonds, the Series 2022C Bonds, and the Taxable Series 2022D Bonds and the interest to be earned on such Escrowed Securities, will be sufficient to accomplish the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Bonds on the Redemption Date. Such funds will be held by the Escrow Agent in one or more special escrow accounts (collectively, the "Escrow Fund") and used to purchase securities (the "Escrowed Securities") authorized by State law and the resolutions authorizing the Refunded Bonds to defease the Refunded Bonds. Under the Escrow Agreement, the Escrow Fund is irrevocably pledged to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds. See "SCHEDULE I – SCHEDULE OF REFUNDED BONDS."

In the Escrow Agreement, the Escrow Agent will certify that the Escrowed Securities will mature and pay interest in such amounts which, together with uninvested funds in the Escrow Fund, will be sufficient to pay, when due, the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds. Such maturing principal of and interest on the Escrowed Securities will not be available to pay the Bonds. By the deposit of cash and Escrowed Securities with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the terms of the Escrow Agreement, the Board will have entered into firm banking and financing arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Bonds in accordance with applicable law and the Refunded Bonds will be deemed to be fully paid and no longer outstanding except for the purposes of being paid from funds held by the Escrow Agent in the Escrow Fund.

### ***Anticipated Issuance of General Obligation Additional Bonds***

Various State entities, including the Board, have issued and are authorized to issue general obligation bonds or other similar obligations of the State. In addition, by constitutional amendment, the voters of the State may authorize the issuance of additional general obligation bonds or other similar indebtedness for which the full faith, credit and taxing powers of the State are pledged. See "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS" and "APPENDIX A – THE STATE OF TEXAS."

**SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS**

The proceeds from the sale of the Series 2022A Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

<b>Sources</b>	
Principal Amount	\$ -
Net Premium	-
Total	<u>\$ -</u>
<b>Uses</b>	
Deposit to Financial Assistance Account	\$ -
Costs of Issuance <sup>(1)</sup>	-
Underwriters' Discount	-
Total	<u>\$ -</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes legal, financial advisory, rating agency, and Paying Agent/Registrar fees of the Board.

The proceeds from the sale of the Series 2022B Bonds and available funds of the Board, if any, will be applied approximately as follows:

<b>Sources</b>	
Principal Amount	\$ -
Net Premium	-
Total	<u>\$ -</u>
<b>Uses</b>	
Deposit for Redemption of Refunded Bonds	\$ -
Costs of Issuance <sup>(1)</sup>	-
Underwriters' Discount	-
Total	<u>\$ -</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes legal, financial advisory, rating agency, Escrow Agent and Paying Agent/Registrar fees of the Board.

The proceeds from the sale of the Series 2022C Bonds and available funds of the Board, if any, will be applied approximately as follows:

<b>Sources</b>	
Principal Amount	\$ -
Net Premium	-
Total	<u>\$ -</u>
<b>Uses</b>	
Deposit for Redemption of Refunded Bonds	\$ -
Costs of Issuance <sup>(1)</sup>	-
Underwriters' Discount	-
Total	<u>\$ -</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes legal, financial advisory, rating agency, Escrow Agent and Paying Agent/Registrar fees of the Board.

The proceeds from the sale of the Taxable Series 2022D Bonds and available funds of the Board, if any, will be applied approximately as follows:

**Sources**

Principal Amount	\$	-
Net Premium		-
Total	\$	-

**Uses**

Deposit for Redemption of Refunded Bonds	\$	-
Costs of Issuance <sup>(1)</sup>		-
Underwriters' Discount		-
Total	\$	-

(1) Includes legal, financial advisory, rating agency, Escrow Agent and Paying Agent/Registrar fees of the Board.

**THE BONDS**

**General Provisions**

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds, in any integral multiple of \$5,000 within a maturity. Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Date of Delivery at the respective per annum rates for each maturity of Bonds of each series as shown on pages ii, iii, and iv, respectively, hereof and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months. Interest on the Bonds will be payable on February 1, 2023, and on each August 1 and February 1 thereafter until maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds mature on August 1 in the years and in the principal amounts set forth on pages ii, iii, and iv hereof.

The Board initially will issue the Bonds registered only in the name of Cede & Co., the nominee of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC"), pursuant to the book-entry-only system described in APPENDIX E to this Official Statement. Beneficial ownership of the Bonds may be acquired in denominations of \$5,000 principal amount or integral multiples thereof within a maturity. No physical delivery of the Bonds will be made to the Beneficial Owners (as defined in APPENDIX E) thereof. Principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable to Cede & Co., which will make distributions of the payments to the participating members of DTC for subsequent remittance to the Beneficial Owners (as defined in APPENDIX E).

Payment of principal of the Bonds will be made to the registered owner upon maturity or redemption prior to maturity only upon presentation and surrender of such Bonds at the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar (defined herein); *provided, however*, that so long as Cede & Co. (or other DTC nominee) is the registered owner of the Bonds, all payments will be made as described in APPENDIX E to this Official Statement. When the Bonds are not in the book-entry-only system, interest on the Bonds will be paid to registered owners shown on the registration books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the fifteenth calendar day of the month next preceding such interest payment date (the "Record Date").

In the event that any date for payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or day on which banking institutions in the city where the Designated Payment/Transfer Office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which such banking institutions are authorized to close. Payment on such later date will not increase the amount of interest due and will have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due. Notwithstanding the foregoing, during any period in which ownership of the Bonds is determined only by a book-entry at a securities depository for the Bonds, any payment to the securities depository, or its nominee or registered assigns, shall be made in accordance with existing arrangements between the Board and the securities depository.

**Series 2022A Bonds – Redemption Provisions**

Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption. The Series 2022A Bonds are subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption prior to maturity as described below under "THE BONDS – Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption."

Optional Redemption. The Series 2022A Bonds having stated maturities on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to redemption at the option of the Board, in whole or from time to time in part, on August 1, 20\_\_ or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption. The Series 2022A Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or more consecutive maturities as a term bond.

### ***Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption***

General. Section 149(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code") imposes certain requirements on bonds issued by state and local governments for pooled financing programs, such as the Series 2022A Bonds, in order for the interest to be and remain exempt from federal income taxation. One such requirement mandates the redemption of bonds in circumstances in which the bond proceeds are not used to make loans within certain prescribed periods. In particular, section 149(f) of the Code requires the following: the issuer (i) must reasonably expect that, within the one-year period beginning on the date of issue, at least 30 percent of the net proceeds of the issue will be used directly or indirectly to make loans (the "One-Year Computation Period"); and (ii) must redeem outstanding bonds within 90 days after the end of such one-year period to the extent of, and in an amount equal to the unused proceeds, i.e., the difference between the amount actually used and an amount equal to 30 percent of the net proceeds of the issue; and the issuer (i) must reasonably expect that within the three-year period beginning on the date of issue, at least 95 percent of the net proceeds of the issue will be used directly or indirectly to make loans (the "Three-Year Computation Period"); and (ii) must redeem outstanding bonds within 90 days after the end of such three-year period to the extent of, and in an amount equal to the unused proceeds, i.e., the difference between the amount actually used and an amount equal to 95 percent of the net proceeds of the issue.

At the date of issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds, a portion of the proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds will be held by the Board and applied from time to time after the issuance of the Series 2022A Bonds to fund loans for Water Assistance Projects. See "SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS." The Board reasonably expects to expend more than 30 percent and 95 percent of such proceeds, during the one-year and three-year periods, respectively. To comply with the foregoing requirement in the event these expectations are not achieved by the Board, the Series 2022A Bonds are subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption at the end of the one-year and three-year periods as required by section 149(f) of the Code. To the extent proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds are held by the Board to fund loans and are not expended within such one-year or three-year periods, any such unexpended proceeds will be used to redeem the Series 2022A Bonds as further described below. In accordance with section 149(f)(7) of the Code, only the portion of the proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds that is reasonably expected, as of the issue date of the Series 2022A Bonds, to be used to originate loans to political subdivisions is subject to the redemption requirements set forth in section 149(f) of the Code.

Previously Issued Pooled Financing Bonds. The State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds described below (collectively, the "Pooled Financing Bonds") were issued subject to the requirements described in the previous paragraph.

Bond Series	Par Amount	Delivery Date	Attainment of 1-year/30% requirement	Attainment of 3-year/95% requirement
2008A (Water Infrastructure Fund)	\$112,920,000	05/22/08	07/24/08	03/30/09
2009A (Water Infrastructure Fund)	144,995,000	03/10/09	03/30/09	04/29/09
2009B (Water Infrastructure Fund)	157,240,000	05/28/09	09/22/09	01/15/10
2009C-1	225,385,000	06/30/09	07/06/09	03/24/11
2009E (Water Infrastructure Fund)	101,400,000	12/15/09	12/29/09	10/14/10
2009F (Economically Distressed Areas Program)	24,540,000	12/15/09	12/29/09	01/11/11
2010B (Water Infrastructure Fund)	143,225,000	05/11/10	06/22/10	12/02/10
2010C (State Participation Program)	42,280,000	05/11/10	05/28/10	05/28/10
2011A (Water Infrastructure Fund)	129,540,000	06/14/11	08/23/11	08/23/11
2011B	92,255,000	10/04/11	12/14/11	06/08/12
2012A (Water Infrastructure Fund)	39,930,000	02/07/12	03/29/12	04/04/12
2012B (Economically Distressed Areas Program)	14,955,000	02/07/12	09/11/12	11/01/12
2012C	149,645,000	04/10/12	06/08/12	06/08/12
2012F (Economically Distressed Areas Program)	29,385,000	09/05/12	11/01/12	03/05/13
2012G	156,065,000	10/02/12	11/21/12	11/21/12
2013A (Water Infrastructure Fund)	42,470,000	02/12/13	05/07/13	05/07/13
2013B	56,515,000	08/01/13	09/25/13	12/18/14
2015E (Economically Distressed Areas Program)	43,715,000	06/18/15	06/26/15	10/28/15
2015F	37,790,000	06/18/15	06/26/15	10/28/15
2016A (Economically Distressed Areas Program)	45,735,000	04/19/16	07/12/16	07/18/16
2016B Subseries 2016 B-1*	58,555,000	07/14/16	08/18/16	06/29/17
2017A*	53,815,000	06/20/17	06/29/17	11/03/17
2018A*	61,280,000	01/25/18	03/01/18	12/19/18
2019A (Economically Distressed Areas Program)	41,325,000	02/20/19	04/23/19	04/25/19
2021A	31,270,000	09/28/21	10/13/21	10/13/21

\* Includes amount for refunding purposes

As described in the foregoing table, all of the proceeds of the Pooled Financing Bonds have been used to make loans prior to the expiration of the one-year and three-year periods prescribed by section 149(f) of the Code. The information provided regarding the previously issued Pooled Financing Bonds is provided as a reference and should not be used to project future performance by the Board with regard to the Series 2022A Bonds. Results may differ in connection with the use of proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds.

**Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption Provisions of Series 2022A Bonds.** The Series 2022A Bonds maturing on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption prior to their scheduled maturities on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ (the "One-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption"), in an amount equal to the Computation Amount (defined herein) applicable to the One-Year Computation Period for the Series 2022A Bonds, plus accrued interest to the date of such extraordinary redemption at the redemption prices set forth below (approximately \_\_\_% of the amortized issue price for each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds), expressed as percentages of the principal amount of each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds so redeemed. The Series 2022A Bonds maturing on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption prior to their scheduled maturities on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ (the "Three-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption"), in an amount equal to the Computation Amount applicable to the Three-Year Computation Period for the Series 2022A Bonds, plus accrued interest to the date of such extraordinary redemption at the redemption prices set forth below (approximately \_\_\_% of the amortized issue price for each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds), expressed as percentages of the principal amount of each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds so redeemed.

<u>Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption Price (%)</u>			CUSIP Prefix: 882724 <sup>(1)</sup>
<u>Maturity (August 1)</u>	On _____, 20__	On _____, 20__	<u>CUSIP Suffix</u>

The 2022A Resolution defines "Computation Amount" as surplus proceeds (rounded to the next higher \$5,000 denomination) equal to the remainder of (A) thirty percent (30%) of the net proceeds less proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds directly or indirectly used to make loans to political subdivisions as of the last day of the One-Year Computation Period (but not less than zero) or (B) ninety-five percent (95%) of the net proceeds less the proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds directly or indirectly used to make loans to political subdivisions as of the last day of the Three-Year Computation Period (but not less than zero).

Following the earlier of (i) the 90th day after the Three-Year Computation Period for the Series 2022A Bonds and (ii) the date on which 95 percent of the proceeds of the Series 2022A Bonds have been used to make loans, if such date occurs prior to the end of the Three-Year Computation Period for the Series 2022A Bonds, the Series 2022A Bonds shall not be subject to extraordinary mandatory redemption.

The foregoing notwithstanding, the Series 2022A Bonds are not subject to such extraordinary mandatory redemption if the Board obtains an opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel to the effect that, if the Board does not cause the extraordinary mandatory redemption to occur, it will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on the Series 2022A Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

For purposes of the One-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption and the Three-Year Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption, as the case may be, the Series 2022A Bonds that are subject to such redemption will be selected on a "Pro Rata Basis" (defined below); provided, that if any amount required to be redeemed remains after such selection, such remaining amount will be applied to the redemption of \$5,000 principal amount of each maturity of the Series 2022A Bonds in inverse order of maturity. The term "Pro Rata Basis" means that the principal amount of a particular maturity will be determined by multiplying the Computation Amount by the ratio which the principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds of such maturity then outstanding bears to the aggregate principal amount of Series 2022A Bonds then outstanding and subject to redemption.

***Series 2022B Bonds – Redemption Provisions***

**Optional Redemption.** The Series 2022B Bonds having stated maturities on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to redemption at the option of the Board, in whole or from time to time in part, on August 1, 20\_\_ or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

**Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption.** The Series 2022B Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or more consecutive maturities as a term bond.

***Series 2022C Bonds – Redemption Provisions***

**Optional Redemption.** The Series 2022C Bonds are not subject to optional redemption prior to maturity.

**Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption.** The Series 2022C Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or more consecutive maturities as a term bond.

***Taxable Series 2022D Bonds – Redemption Provisions***

**Optional Redemption.** The Taxable Series 2022D Bonds having stated maturities on and after August 1, 20\_\_, are subject to redemption at the option of the Board, in whole or from time to time in part, on August 1, 20\_\_ or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption. The Taxable Series 2022D Bonds may be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in the event the Underwriters elect to aggregate two or more consecutive maturities as a term bond.

***Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed***

If fewer than all of the Bonds that are subject to redemption are called for redemption, the maturities (or mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts within a maturity) to be redeemed will be selected by the Board, and such Bonds to be redeemed within any one maturity will be selected by the Paying Agent/Registrar by lot (or in such other random selection manner as the Paying Agent/Registrar may determine) in integral multiples of \$5,000; provided, however, that during any period in which ownership of such Bonds to be redeemed is determined only by a book-entry-only system at DTC, or a successor securities depository, if fewer than all of such Bonds of the same maturity and bearing the same interest rate are to be redeemed, the particular Bonds of such maturity and bearing such interest rate will be selected in accordance with the arrangement between the Board and DTC or successor securities depository; provided, further, however, that such selection methodology shall not apply to the Series 2022A Bonds that are redeemed pursuant to application of extraordinary mandatory redemption provisions, in which case selection of redeemed Series 2022A Bonds shall occur in the manner described above under "Extraordinary Mandatory Redemption".

***Notice of Redemption***

At least 30 days prior to the date fixed for any redemption, a written notice of such redemption will be given to the registered owner of each Bond, or portion thereof, that is being called for redemption by depositing such notice in the United States mail, first-class-postage prepaid, addressed to each such registered owner at such owner's address shown on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar. The failure to send, mail, or receive such notice described above, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, will not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond. By the date fixed for any such redemption, due provision will be made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for Bonds or the portion thereof which are to be so redeemed, plus accrued interest thereon to the date fixed for redemption.

The Board reserves the right to give notice of its election to optionally redeem Bonds conditioned upon the occurrence of subsequent events. Such notice may state (i) that the redemption is conditioned upon the deposit of monies and/or Defeasance Securities, in an amount equal to the amount necessary to effect the redemption, with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or such other entity as may be authorized by law, no later than the redemption date or (ii) that the Board retains the right to rescind such notice at any time prior to the scheduled redemption date if the Board delivers a certificate or other direction to the Paying Agent/Registrar instructing the Paying Agent/Registrar to rescind the redemption notice, and such notice of redemption shall be of no effect if such monies and/or Defeasance Securities are not so deposited or if the notice is rescinded. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall give prompt notice of any such rescission to the affected Owners. Any Bonds subject to conditional redemption where redemption has been rescinded shall not constitute an event of default and shall remain outstanding.

SHOULD NOTICE TO CALL A PARTICULAR SERIES OF BONDS FOR REDEMPTION AT THE OPTION OF THE BOARD BE GIVEN IN THE MANNER PROVIDED ABOVE, BUT THE BOARD SHALL NOT BE ABLE TO PROVIDE THE PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR WITH AMOUNTS SUFFICIENT TO AFFECT ON THE DATE FIXED FOR REDEMPTION THE PAYMENT OF THE ENTIRE REDEMPTION PRICE OF THE PARTICULAR SERIES OF BONDS SO CALLED FOR REDEMPTION, NO SUCH BONDS SHALL BE REDEEMED ON THE DATE FIXED FOR REDEMPTION, AND THE NOTICE OF REDEMPTION FOR SUCH BONDS SHALL BE NULL AND VOID.

***Paying Agent/Registrar***

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A. In the Resolutions, the Board retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Board covenants in the Bond Resolutions to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds at all times while the Bonds are outstanding and any successor Paying Agent/Registrar is required to be a competent and legally qualified bank or trust company which shall be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any state, authorized under such laws to exercise trust powers and subject to supervision by federal or state authority. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the Board agrees to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds to each registered owner of the affected Bonds by United States mail, first-class-postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

## SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS

### *General Obligation Pledge*

**THE BONDS ARE GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF THE STATE, AND AS PROVIDED IN SECTIONS 49-d-8, 49-d-9, 49-d-10 AND 49-d-11, AND THE ACT, THE FULL FAITH AND CREDIT OF THE STATE IS PLEDGED FOR THE FAITHFUL PERFORMANCE OF ALL COVENANTS, RECITALS AND STIPULATIONS IN THE RESOLUTIONS AND THE BONDS.**

Section 49-d-8 provides that if there is not enough money in the Financial Assistance Account, EDAP Account or State Participation Account, (together, the "Water Assistance Accounts") available to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Water Assistance Bonds payable from such account, including money to make payments by the Board under any Bond Enhancement Agreement (as defined below) with respect to principal of or interest on such Water Assistance Bonds, there is appropriated out of the first money coming into the State Treasury in each fiscal year, not otherwise appropriated by the Constitution, an amount that is sufficient to pay such obligations maturing or becoming due during that fiscal year. If there is not sufficient money in the applicable Water Assistance Account to pay such Water Assistance Bonds payable from such Water Assistance Account, the Texas Water Code directs the Board to notify the Comptroller of such insufficiency and requires the Comptroller to transfer to the applicable Water Assistance Account the first money coming into the State Treasury not otherwise appropriated by the Constitution in amounts sufficient to pay such obligations. The Resolutions establish procedures by which the Board will seek transfers from the Comptroller. See "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM".

### *Perfection of Security*

Chapter 1208, Texas Government Code, as amended, applies to the issuance of the Bonds and the pledge of the security granted by the Board under the Bond Resolutions, and such pledge is therefore valid, effective and perfected. If State law is amended at any time while any Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that the pledge of the security granted by the Board under the Bond Resolutions are to be subject to the filing requirements of Chapter 9, Texas Business & Commerce Code, as amended, then in order to preserve for the owners of Bonds the perfection of the security interest in said pledge, the Board has agreed to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under State law to comply with the provisions of Chapter 9, Texas Business & Commerce Code and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

### *Other Sources of Payment*

Section 49-d-8 and the Texas Water Code provide that the State Participation Account, the EDAP Account, and the Financial Assistance Account are separate and distinct from one another and that each such account is a source of payment for Water Assistance Bonds issued with respect to that account. The Board has also established (i) the State Participation Bond Payment Account (with respect to the State Participation Bonds) (the "State Participation Bond Payment Account"), (ii) the EDAP Bond Payment Account (with respect to the EDAP Bonds) (the "EDAP Bond Payment Account"), and (iii) the Financial Assistance Account (with respect to the Financial Assistance Bonds) (the "Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account").

Accordingly, (i) the Financial Assistance Account and the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account constitute sources of payment only for the Financial Assistance Bonds, including the Series 2022A Bonds and the Series 2022B Bonds, (ii) the EDAP Account and the EDAP Bond Payment Account constitute a source of payment only for the EDAP Bonds, including the Series 2022C Bonds, and (iii) the State Participation Account and the State Participation Bond Payment Account constitute sources of payment only for the State Participation Bonds, including the Taxable Series 2022D Bonds, as described in this Official Statement.

### *Enforcement of Payment*

The right of mandamus in any court of competent jurisdiction is specifically provided in the Texas Water Code to enforce payment of the Bonds, and obligations incurred under Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to the Bonds, and the performance of official duties prescribed by Section 49-d-8 to make the transfers of funds as required.

### *Defeasance*

The Resolutions provide that any Bond issued thereunder will be deemed paid and no longer Outstanding (a "Defeased Bond") when payment of the principal of and premium, if any, on such Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date thereof (by maturity or otherwise), shall have been provided by the Board irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other similar instrument for such payment (a) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such payment or (b) Defeasance Securities (as defined below) that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Board with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. As used above and unless otherwise specified in the Approval Certificate, "Defeasance Securities" means (i) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (ii) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the

agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the applicable 2022 Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (iii) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date the Board adopts or approves proceedings authorizing the issuance of refunding bonds or, if such defeasance is not in connection with the issuance of refunding bonds, on the date the Board provides for the funding of an escrow to effect the defeasance of the applicable 2022 Bonds, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally-recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, and (iv) any other then authorized securities or obligations that may be used to defease obligations such as the 2022 Bonds under the then applicable laws of the State.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be Outstanding or unpaid. The Board has reserved the option, however, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption, at an earlier date, those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the Board, in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, (i) expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements; and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

#### ***Amendment of Resolutions With Consent of Registered Owners***

The registered owners aggregating in principal amount 51% of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds (not including any Bonds held by or for the account of the Board) at the time Outstanding shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment of the Resolutions authorizing the issuance of the Bonds which may be deemed necessary or desirable by the Board; provided, however, that nothing therein shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions contained in the Bond Resolutions or in the Bonds so as to:

- (i) make any change in the maturity of any of the Bonds;
- (ii) reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the Bonds;
- (iii) reduce the amount of the principal payable on any of the Bonds;
- (iv) modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on any of the Bonds, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;
- (v) change the minimum percentage of the principal amount of the Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment; or
- (vi) affect the rights of the registered owners of less than all of the Bonds then outstanding;

unless such amendment or amendments be approved by the registered owners of all of the Bonds of the affected Series at the time Outstanding.

#### ***Amendment of Resolutions Without Consent of Registered Owners***

The Board may, without prior notice to or the consent of the registered owners of the Bonds, pursuant to an amendatory resolution from time to time:

- (i) impose conditions or restrictions additional to, but not in diminution of, those contained in the Bond Resolutions respecting the issuance of the Bonds;
- (ii) undertake covenants additional to but not inconsistent with those contained in the Bond Resolutions;
- (iii) correct any ambiguity or correct or supplement any inconsistent or defective provision contained in the Bond Resolutions or any amendatory resolution;
- (iv) adopt amendments to the Bond Resolutions that provide for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds or the payment of administrative expenses of the Board from Bond proceeds; or
- (v) adopt amendments to the Bond Resolutions that, in the opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board, do not adversely affect the registered owners.

In addition to the foregoing, the Board expressly reserves the right, without prior notice to or consent from the registered owners of the Bonds, to amend certain provisions of the Bond Resolutions to reflect subsequent amendments to the Constitution and the Act, including, without limitation, amendments altering:

- (i) the administration of Development Fund II; or
- (ii) the accounts within Development Fund II; or
- (iii) the deposit or application of money received by the Board as repayments of loans to political subdivisions and interest on those loans, or proceeds from the sale, transfer or lease of facilities held for any account within Development Fund II; or
- (iv) the use of the proceeds of the Bonds; or
- (v) the rights, duties and obligations of the Comptroller as specified in the Bond Resolutions; or
- (vi) the procedure for payment of the Bonds; or

- (vii) the payment of expenses of administering Development Fund II and other authorized expenses of the Board; or
- (viii) the administration of the Water Infrastructure Fund;

*provided, however*, that such amendments to the Bond Resolutions can be made only if:

- (a) the Board receives an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel acceptable to the Board to the effect that such amendments comply with the Act, that the Bonds of the affected Series continue to be general obligations of the State and the Constitution provides for appropriation out of the first money coming into the State Treasury in each fiscal year, not otherwise appropriated by the Constitution, of an amount sufficient to pay the principal of or interest on the Bonds that mature or become payable during that Fiscal Year, to the extent the same are not otherwise paid from funds pledged to their payment;
- (b) bond counsel acceptable to the Board renders an opinion substantially to the effect that any such amendment will not adversely affect the excludability of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes; and
- (c) each nationally recognized securities rating agency providing a rating on the Bonds at the time the Bonds were initially delivered to the Underwriters and that has a then existing rating thereon confirms in writing that subsequent to any such amendment, the Bonds will continue to be rated as general obligation bonds of the State.

If the Board so amends any Bond Resolution without the consent of registered owners as provided in this subsection, it shall cause notice of such amendment to be published one time in a financial newspaper or journal of general circulation in the City of New York, New York, or the City of Austin, Texas. Such notice shall contain a summary of the amendatory language, recite that the conditions set forth in items (a) through (c) above have been satisfied, and recite the effective date of such amendment. Such notice shall be published within thirty days of the effective date of such amendment. Such notice shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of the Board for inspection. Such publication is not required, however, if written notice is given to each registered owner of the affected Bonds.

## **WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM**

### ***Development Fund I***

The Legislature of the State (the "Legislature") and the voters of the State have approved constitutional amendments increasing the Board's bond issuance authority and authorized funding purposes, such that the Board had been authorized to issue up to \$2,480,000,000 in general obligation bonds for various water development purposes ("Water Development Bonds") to augment the Texas Water Development Fund ("Development Fund I"). Pursuant to such authorization, the Board has issued \$1,467,190,000 of Water Development Bonds for Development Fund I. In an effort to aggregate the authority of various constitutional amendments, voters approved Section 49-d-8 in 1997 which provided that bonds otherwise authorized by Sections 49-c, 49-d, 49-d-1, 49-d-2, 49-d-5, 49-d-6 and 49-d-7 of Article III of the Constitution (the "Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions") could be issued as Water Assistance Bonds to augment Development Fund II. Thereafter, all of the liabilities and assets formerly held in Development Fund I were transferred to Development Fund II.

### ***Development Fund II***

Development Fund II was established pursuant to Section 49-d-8 in 1997. Development Fund II is a fund in the State Treasury separate and legally distinct from Development Fund I. Section 49-d-8 provides that bonds otherwise authorized by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions can be issued to augment Development Fund II. Since Section 49-d-8 consolidated the separate bond issuance authorities contained in the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions, and provides a more efficient cash flow for Development Fund II than exists for Development Fund I, the Board ceased issuing bonds to augment Development Fund I. In addition, the voters of the State approved Section 49-d-9 in 2001, which authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds for one or more accounts of Development Fund II in an amount not to exceed \$2 billion.

Section 49-d-8 limits the authorized amount of EDAP Bonds that may be issued by the Board under that section to \$250 million in the aggregate, and the Board has previously issued EDAP Bonds in such amount pursuant to that section (including Water Development Bonds previously issued pursuant to subsection (b) of Section 49-d-7 of the Constitution.) In November 2007, the Constitution was amended to add Section 49-d-10, which authorized the Board to issue up to \$250 million in additional general obligation bonds as EDAP Bonds to augment the EDAP Account.

Section 49-d-11 was approved by the voters of the State on November 8, 2011 and authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds for one or more accounts of Development Fund II in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6 billion. Section 49-d-14 was approved by the voters of the State on November 5, 2019 and authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds for the EDAP Account of Development Fund II in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of bonds issued under Section 49-d-14 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$200 million. The effect of the provisions of Section 49-d-11 and Section 49-d-14 is to provide an "evergreen" authorization. Unlike bonds issued under authority of the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions, Section 49-d-9 and Section 49-d-10 (which provide that the authority to issue bonds is extinguished once bonds are issued), once bonds issued under authority of Section 49-d-11 or Section 49-d-14 are no longer outstanding by their terms, the authority under Section 49-d-11 or Section 49-d-14 to issue bonds in a like principal amount is restored and made available to the Board.

The bonding authority provided by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions, Section 49-d-9, and Section 49-d-10 have been fully extinguished. Section 49-d-11 and Section 49-d-14 currently represent the only remaining authority to issue Water Assistance Bonds. See "TABLE 1: WATER ASSISTANCE BONDS" below.

### ***Major Accounts within Development Fund II***

Within Development Fund II, the Board has established the "Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account" the "State Participation Bond Payment Account," the "EDAP Bond Payment Account," and other accounts necessary for the proper administration of Development Fund II, as determined by the Board. In addition, the Board has the authority to create additional accounts as may be needed to administer its programs. Money on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account may be used for Water Assistance Projects; money on deposit in the State Participation Account may be used for State Participation Projects and money on deposit in the EDAP Account may be used for EDAP Projects. Money in each such account can be used to pay the expenses of the Board in connection with the issuance of bonds for such account and the administration of such account and for the payment of debt service on bonds issued for such account, including payments, if any, required under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal of and interest on such bonds.

Section 49-d-8 and the Texas Water Code provide that the Financial Assistance Account, the State Participation Account, the Water Infrastructure Fund, and the EDAP Account are separate and distinct from one another and that each such account is a source of payment for Water Assistance Bonds issued with respect to that account. The Board has also established (i) the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account, (ii) the State Participation Bond Payment Account and (iii) the EDAP Bond Payment Account. Accordingly, (i) the Financial Assistance Account and the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account constitute sources of payment only for the Financial Assistance Bonds, (ii) the State Participation Account and the State Participation Bond Payment Account constitute sources of payment only for State Participation Bonds and (iii) the EDAP Account and the EDAP Bond Payment Account constitute sources of payment only for the EDAP Bonds.

For purposes of the discussion of Development Fund II herein, the following capitalized terms have the following meanings pursuant to the Resolution:

"Water Assistance Project" means any project for which the Board is authorized to provide financial assistance, in accordance with the purposes described by Article III, Sections 49-c, 49-d, 49-d-1, 49-d-2, 49-d-5, 49-d-6, 49-d-7, or 49-d-8, Texas Constitution, other than (i) a State Participation Project or (ii) an EDAP Project. The term "Water Assistance Project" includes, without limitation, transfers to or deposits to the credit of any state revolving fund administered by the Board under the provisions of the Texas Water Code, specifically Chapter 15, Texas Water Code, and transfers to or deposits to the credit of the Rural Water Assistance Fund or the Water Infrastructure Fund.

"State Participation Project" means any project found by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Section 16.131, Texas Water Code.

"EDAP Project" means any project found and determined by the Board to be in accordance with the purposes described in Subchapter K, Chapter 17, Texas Water Code.

### ***Financial Assistance Bonds***

As a practice, the Board's policy historically has been that debt service on Financial Assistance Bonds be self-supporting, and the Board has expected that program revenues flowing into the Financial Assistance Account will be sufficient to meet debt service requirements on outstanding Financial Assistance Bonds. The Board currently anticipates that the Board's policy will continue for the Series 2022A Bonds and the Series 2022B Bonds. No assurance, however, can be given that subsequent events, including, without limitation, changes in relevant constitutional or statutory provisions, will not cause the Board to change such policy.

The foregoing notwithstanding, the Board has issued Financial Assistance Bonds to augment the Water Infrastructure Fund. The Board currently anticipates that the Legislature will continue to appropriate general revenues of the State to support the payment of debt service on Water Infrastructure Bonds and Economically Distressed Areas Program Bonds until such time that program assets and revenues are sufficient to meet debt service requirements. See "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – EDAP Bonds" and – "Water Infrastructure Fund."

***Financial Assistance Account.*** Consistent with the Texas Water Code and Section 49-d-8, the Financial Assistance Account receives the following money, which will be used as further described below:

- (i) Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds (as defined in the 2022A Resolution and the 2022B Resolution) designated by the Board as issued for Water Assistance Projects;
- (ii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to Financial Assistance Bonds;
- (iii) investment income earned on money on deposit in the Financial Assistance Account; and

- (iv) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs to be deposited to the credit of the Financial Assistance Account.

See APPENDIX B attached hereto for unaudited financial data relating to the Financial Assistance Account for various fiscal years, including the fiscal year ended August 31, 2021. See "OTHER INFORMATION–Unaudited Financial Information".

**Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account.** The Board has established the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account as a special account into which amounts will be deposited, as more fully described below, from the Financial Assistance Account, or otherwise from the State Treasury, and used to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest payable on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments, if any, required under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds. In the case of Water Infrastructure Bonds, appropriations from the State’s General Revenue Fund and moneys received from repayments of loans made from the Water Infrastructure Fund shall be used to pay debt service on Water Infrastructure Bonds, such moneys will be deposited to the credit of an account within the Water Infrastructure Fund (the "Water Infrastructure Fund Bond Payment Account") to pay debt service on Water Infrastructure Fund Bonds. See "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – Water Infrastructure Fund."

**Financial Assistance Bonds Flow of Funds.** On or before the date interest or interest and principal on the Financial Assistance Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board must cause to be transferred, from moneys available for such purpose in the Financial Assistance Account or, in the case of repayments of principal and interest from loans made to the Rural Political Subdivisions from proceeds of the refunded rural water assistance fund bonds available in the Rural Water Assistance Fund, to the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account an amount which will be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which will be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, when such interest or interest and principal, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for money currently on deposit in the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within 15 days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available in the Financial Assistance Account or, in the case of the refunded rural water assistance fund bonds, the Rural Water Assistance Fund, for transfer to the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account, as described above, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Financial Assistance Bonds, which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which will be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is required to request the Comptroller to deposit no later than 3 days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money has been received in the State Treasury, in the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account out of the first money coming into the State Treasury, sufficient money so that the total amount in the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on the Financial Assistance Bonds on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such Financial Assistance Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

After making the transfers for the benefit of the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account, other available money remaining in the Financial Assistance Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for Water Assistance Projects and all of the purposes for which the Board may expend money in the Financial Assistance Account under Section 49-d-8. See "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – Development Fund II."

Notwithstanding the foregoing, money in the Financial Assistance Account representing proceeds from Financial Assistance Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the Financial Assistance Account or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board’s rights to receive repayments of such financial assistance are not available for transfer to the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the Financial Assistance Bond Payment Account.

**EDAP Bonds**

Bonds issued to provide financial assistance pursuant to the Board’s Economically Distressed Areas Program have resulted in draws on the State’s General Revenue Fund. The Board currently anticipates that the issuance of EDAP Bonds (including the Series 2022C Bonds) will result in future draws on the State’s General Revenue Fund. Amounts specifically appropriated by the Legislature in support of debt service on EDAP Bonds are not limitations on general revenue draws, if additional funds are needed during the biennium, since the Constitution itself provides for an appropriation of money needed for the payment of such debt service. See "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS – General Obligation Pledge".

**EDAP Account.** Consistent with the Texas Water Code and Section 49-d-8, the EDAP Account receives the following money, which will be used as further described below:

- (i) Money and Assets Attributable to Bonds (as defined in the 2022C Resolution) designated by the Board as issued for EDAP Projects;
- (ii) money from the sale, transfer, or lease of an EDAP Project that was acquired, constructed, reconstructed, developed, or enlarged with money from the EDAP Account;
- (iii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to bonds designated by the Board as issued for EDAP Projects;
- (iv) investment income earned on money on deposit in the EDAP Account; and
- (v) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the credit of the EDAP Account.

See APPENDIX B attached hereto for unaudited financial data relating to the EDAP Account for various fiscal years, including the fiscal year ended August 31, 2021. See "OTHER INFORMATION – Unaudited Financial Information".

**EDAP Bond Payment Account.** The Board has established the EDAP Bond Payment Account as a special account into which amounts will be deposited as more fully described below, from the EDAP Account, or otherwise from the State Treasury, and used to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest payable on the EDAP Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments, if any, required under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds.

**EDAP Bonds Flow of Funds.** On or before the date interest or interest and principal on the EDAP Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board must cause to be transferred, from moneys available for such purpose in the EDAP Account, to the EDAP Bond Payment Account an amount which will be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the EDAP Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which will be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, when such interest or interest and principal, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for money currently on deposit in the EDAP Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within 15 days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available in the EDAP Bond Payment Account, as described above, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the EDAP Bonds which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which will be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is required to request the Comptroller to deposit no later than three days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money has been received in the State Treasury, in the EDAP Bond Payment Account out of the first money coming into the State Treasury, sufficient money so that the total amount in the EDAP Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on the EDAP Bonds on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such EDAP Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

After making the transfers for the benefit of the EDAP Bond Payment Account, other available money remaining in the EDAP Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for EDAP Projects and all of the purposes for which the Board may expend money in the EDAP Account under Section 49-d-8. See "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – Development Fund II".

Notwithstanding the foregoing, money in the EDAP Account representing proceeds from EDAP Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the EDAP Account or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayments of such financial assistance are not available for transfer to the EDAP Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the EDAP Bond Payment Account.

### **State Participation Bonds**

Bonds issued to provide financial assistance pursuant to the Board's State Participation Program have resulted in draws on the State's general revenue funds and the issuance of additional State Participation Bonds in the future may result in draws on the State's general revenue funds. However, the Board currently anticipates that program assets and revenues will be sufficient to meet debt service requirements on the currently outstanding State Participation Bonds (including the Taxable Series 2022D Bonds). Amounts specifically appropriated by the Legislature in support of debt service on State Participation Bonds are not limitations on general revenue draws, if additional funds are needed during the biennium, since the Constitution itself provides for an appropriation of money needed for the payment of such debt service. See "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS – General Obligation Pledge".

**State Participation Account.** Consistent with the Texas Water Code and Section 49-d-8, the State Participation Account receives the following money, which will be used as further described below:

- (i) Money and assets attributable to bonds designated by the Board as issued for State Participation Projects;
- (ii) money from the sale, transfer, or lease of a State Participation Project that was acquired, constructed, reconstructed, developed, or enlarged with money from the State Participation Account;
- (iii) payments received under a Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to bonds designated by the Board as issued for State Participation Projects;
- (iv) investment income earned on money on deposit in the State Participation Account; and
- (v) any other funds, regardless of their source, that the Board directs be deposited to the credit of the State Participation Account.

See APPENDIX B attached hereto for unaudited financial data relating to the State Participation Account for various fiscal years, including the fiscal year ended August 31, 2021. See "OTHER INFORMATION – Unaudited Financial Information".

**State Participation Bond Payment Account.** The Board has established the State Participation Bond Payment Account as a special account into which amounts will be deposited as more fully described below, from the State Participation Account, or otherwise from the State Treasury, and used to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest payable on the State Participation Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, amounts sufficient to make payments, if any, required under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds.

**State Participation Bonds Flow of Funds.** On or before the date interest or interest and principal on the State Participation Bonds is scheduled to become due and payable, the Board must cause to be transferred, from moneys available for such purpose in the State Participation Account, to the State Participation Bond Payment Account an amount which will be sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the State Participation Bonds, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which will be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, when such interest or interest and principal, and premium, if any, or such payments, if any, become due and payable, with allowance being made for money currently on deposit in the State Participation Bond Payment Account and available to make such payments.

If the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof determines within 15 days of an interest or principal payment date that the money available in the State Participation Bond Payment Account, as described above, is not sufficient to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the State Participation Bonds which then are outstanding and are scheduled to be due and payable on such interest or principal payment date, including, to the extent determined by the Board, an amount which will be sufficient to make payments by the Board under one or more Bond Enhancement Agreements with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, the Executive Administrator or the designee thereof is required to request the Comptroller to deposit no later than three days prior to such interest or principal payment date, or as soon thereafter as sufficient money has been received in the State Treasury, in the State Participation Bond Payment Account out of the first money coming into the State Treasury, sufficient money so that the total amount in the State Participation Bond Payment Account will be sufficient to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest to mature and come due on the State Participation Bonds on such interest or principal payment date, or to make any payments by the Board, to the extent determined by the Board, under any Bond Enhancement Agreement with respect to principal or interest on such State Participation Bonds, and to pay all collection and exchange charges in connection therewith.

After making the transfers for the benefit of the State Participation Bond Payment Account, other available money remaining in the State Participation Account may, at the direction of the Board, be used for State Participation Projects and all of the purposes for which the Board may expend money in the State Participation Account under Section 49-d-8. See "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM – Development Fund II".

Notwithstanding the foregoing, money in the State Participation Account representing proceeds from State Participation Bonds, prepayments of financial assistance provided from the State Participation Account or proceeds from the sale or other disposition of the Board's rights to receive repayments of such financial assistance are not available for transfer to the State Participation Bond Payment Account unless by resolution the Board specifically authorizes the transfer of any such proceeds or prepayments so identified in said resolution to the State Participation Bond Payment Account.

**Water Infrastructure Fund**

*No Water Infrastructure Bonds are being offered pursuant to this Official Statement.* Section 49-d-9 requires that \$50,000,000 of the bonds authorized to be issued under Section 49-d-9 be used for the Water Infrastructure Fund, a special fund in the State Treasury established under Subchapter Q of Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code to provide financial assistance to eligible Texas political subdivisions (the "Water Infrastructure Fund"). The Board met this requirement in 2008. Since 2007, the Legislature has authorized appropriations of money from the State's General Revenue Fund to support the payment of debt service on general obligation bonds issued for the Water Infrastructure Fund ("Water Infrastructure Bonds"). Appropriations of money from the State's General Revenue Fund are expected to be used to defray a portion of the debt service payable on the Water Infrastructure Bonds issued by the Board.

The Board may direct the Comptroller to transfer amounts from the Financial Assistance Account to the Water Infrastructure Fund to provide financial assistance under the Texas Water Code for the purposes provided in Subchapter Q, as listed in Section 15.974, Texas Water Code, as amended. Subchapter Q further provides that the Water Infrastructure Fund may be used (1) as a source of revenue for the repayment of debt service on Financial Assistance Bonds, the proceeds of which have been deposited into the Water Infrastructure Fund, and (2) pursuant to HB 1904 of the 87th Regular Session of the Legislature, effective September 1, 2021, to make transfers from the Water Infrastructure Fund to the Financial Assistance Account for the purposes described in Section 49-d-8, other than for the purposes described in Sections 17.957 and 17.958, Texas Water Code, as amended.

**TABLE 1: WATER ASSISTANCE BONDS\***  
**As of December 31, 2021**

Constitutional Provision <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	Purpose	Constitutionally Authorized Amount	Authorization Used <sup>(3)</sup>	Authorization Currently Being Issued <sup>(4)</sup>	Authorization Remaining <sup>(4),(5)</sup>
Section 49-d-11 <sup>(6)</sup>	Development Fund II	\$ 6,000,000,000	\$ 73,989,345	\$ -	\$ 5,926,010,655
Section 49-d-14 <sup>(7)</sup>	EDAP	200,000,000	-	-	200,000,000
Total			<u>\$ 73,989,345</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 6,126,010,655</u>

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

(1) All section references are to Article III of the Texas Constitution.

(2) The bonding authority provided by the Development Fund I Constitutional Provisions, Section 49-d-9, and Section 49-d-10 has been fully extinguished. Section 49-d-11 and Section 49-d-14 currently represent the only remaining authority to issue Water Assistance Bonds.

(3) Authorization is evergreen; therefore, "Authorization Used" represents aggregate principal amount of bonds outstanding. Excludes principal amount of bonds previously issued and paid.

(4) Authorization is evergreen; therefore, "Authorization Remaining" will increase as principal amount of bonds previously issued and in the process of issuance is paid.

(5) Section 49-d-11 authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds for one or more accounts of Development Fund II in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of bonds issued under Section 49-d-11 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$6 billion.

(6) Section 49-d-14 authorizes the Board to issue additional general obligation bonds for the EDAP Account in amounts such that the aggregate principal amount of bonds issued under Section 49-d-14 that are outstanding at any time does not exceed \$200 million.

*[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]*

## OTHER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS OF THE BOARD

In addition to the financial assistance programs described under the "WATER ASSISTANCE BOND PROGRAM" section of this Official Statement, the Board administers other assistance programs which are funded with special revenues, general revenues or the proceeds of general obligation bonds of the State. The following is a brief summary of such programs. **None of the following programs are being funded with proceeds from the Bonds offered pursuant to this Official Statement.**

### *Texas Agricultural Water Conservation Bond Program*

Article III, Section 50-d of the Constitution (adopted in 1985) authorizes the Board to issue \$200,000,000 in general obligation Texas Agricultural Water Conservation Bonds. Subchapter J was added to Chapter 17 of the Texas Water Code, implementing the Agricultural Water Conservation Bond Program and creating the Agricultural Water Conservation Fund (the "Agriculture Fund").

Money in the Agriculture Fund may be used to provide grants to State agencies to fund conservation programs or conservation projects, provide grants or loans to certain political subdivisions for conservation programs or conservation projects, provide linked deposits to certain financial institutions for loans to certain entities and individuals for conservation projects, pay for the Board's conservation programs, pay costs of issuance for and debt service due on Texas Agricultural Water Conservation Bonds, and to pay the Board's related administrative expenses. Conservation programs, certain costs of which may be financed from the Agriculture Fund, include: (1) agricultural water conservation technical assistance programs; (2) research, demonstration, technology transfer, or educational programs relating to agricultural water use and conservation; (3) precipitation enhancement programs; and (4) any other agricultural water conservation program defined by Board rule. Conservation projects, certain costs of which may be financed from the Agriculture Fund, include projects that: (1) improve water use efficiency; (2) prepare irrigated land for conversion to dry land conditions; (3) prepare dry land for more efficient use of precipitation; (4) purchase and fund the acquisition and installation of devices on public or private property to indicate the amount of water withdrawn for irrigation; (5) prepare and maintain land to be used for brush control activities; and (6) implement any other agricultural water conservation project defined by Board rule.

**TABLE 2: AGRICULTURE FUND GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS  
As of December 31, 2021**

Constitutional Provision <sup>(1)</sup>	Purpose	Constitutionally Authorized Amount	Previously Issued	Authorized But Unissued
Section 50-d	Agriculture Fund	\$ 200,000,000	\$ 35,160,000	\$ 164,840,000
Total			<u>\$ 35,160,000</u>	<u>\$ 164,840,000</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> All section references are to Article III of the Texas Constitution.

### *Flood Infrastructure Fund*

Article III, Section 49-d-14 of the Texas Constitution (adopted in 2019) created the Flood Infrastructure Fund ("FIF") as a special fund in the State Treasury outside the General Revenue Fund. Subchapter I was added to Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code to implement the FIF program and establish the FIF. The FIF is administered by the Board and has been funded with a transfer of \$793 million from the State's economic stabilization fund. The Board may utilize the proceeds of general obligation bonds or revenue bonds issued for an authorized purpose of the FIF.

The FIF program provides grants and zero interest loans for flood control, flood mitigation, and drainage projects. Eligible projects include structural, nonstructural, and nature-based solutions which fall into one of four categories: (1) flood protection planning for watersheds; (2) planning, acquisition, design, construction, and rehabilitation; (3) federal award matching funds; and (4) measures immediately effective in protecting life and property. Project funding is available to eligible political subdivision applicants, including a city, county, district or authority created under Article III, Section 52, or Article XVI, Section 59, of the Texas Constitution. In addition, funding for flood protection planning for watersheds is also available to any other political subdivision of the State, any interstate compact commission to which the State is a party, and any nonprofit water supply corporation created and operating under Chapter 67 of the Texas Water Code.

### *Revenue Bonds*

The Board is authorized to issue an unlimited amount of revenue bonds to fund certain eligible projects. The Board has the authority to sell revenue bonds for the following purposes: (1) to finance the construction of water and wastewater projects of political

subdivisions and nonprofit water supply corporations; (2) to provide interim financing to political subdivisions which are also receiving long term financing from the Board; (3) to provide the State matching funds for federal funds provided to the State Water Pollution Control Revolving Fund, and the State Safe Drinking Water Revolving Fund, commonly referred to as the Clean Water State Revolving Fund ("CWSRF") and the Drinking Water State Revolving Fund ("DWSRF"), respectively; (4) to provide funds for the State Water Implementation Fund for Texas ("SWIRFT"); and (5) to provide matching funds for any additional State revolving funds hereafter established by the Board to provide financial assistance to political subdivisions for public works in accordance with a federal capitalization grant program. The Board's revenue bonds do not constitute a debt of the State, and neither the full faith and credit nor the taxing authority of the State is in any manner pledged, given or loaned to the payment of the Board's revenue bonds. Further, the Board's revenue bonds are not secured by or payable from money in either Development Fund I or Development Fund II.

### ***State Water Pollution Control Revolving Fund***

The Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972, as amended by the Water Quality Act of 1987, as amended (the "Federal Act"), established the Federal Loan Program (described below) as a joint federal and state program. Under the Federal Loan Program, the United States Environmental Protection Agency ("USEPA") is authorized to make grants (the "SRF Capitalization Grants") to states to aid in providing financial assistance to municipalities; intermunicipal, interstate or state agencies; or other public entities eligible for assistance under the Federal Act (the "Eligible Borrowers") for eligible projects including the construction of publicly owned treatment works, managing stormwater, measures to reduce the demand for publicly owned treatment works capacity through water conservation, efficiency, or reuse, and nonpoint source pollution control projects and other authorized purposes pursuant to the Federal Act. As a condition to receipt of an SRF Capitalization Grant, a state is required to establish a perpetual state revolving fund into which the SRF Capitalization Grant must be deposited, and to provide state matching funds at least equal to 20% of the SRF Capitalization Grant. Historically, proceeds of Water Development Bonds and Financial Assistance Bonds have been used to provide such matching funds. Funds in a state revolving fund are permitted to be applied to provide financial assistance to Eligible Borrowers in a number of ways, including making direct loans, purchasing or refinancing debt obligations and providing loan guarantees.

Pursuant to Chapter 15, Subchapter J of the Texas Water Code ("Subchapter J"), which became effective June 17, 1987, the State created the CWSRF for the purpose of providing financial assistance to Eligible Borrowers for authorized activities and uses. The Board currently provides financial assistance by purchasing political subdivision obligations from Eligible Borrowers, or by providing loans or principal forgiveness.

The Board purchases political subdivision obligations or provides loans under the State Revolving Fund program with terms up to thirty (30) years from project completion, but in no event longer than the expected design life of the project financed or refinanced.

### ***State Safe Drinking Water Revolving Fund***

The Federal Safe Drinking Water Act ("SDWA") established national primary drinking water regulations to protect the safety of the public's drinking water. Under the SDWA, the USEPA is authorized to make grants ("DWSRF Capitalization Grants") to states to assist communities in meeting established drinking water standards. As a condition to receipt of a DWSRF Capitalization Grant, a state is required to establish a drinking water state revolving fund into which the DWSRF Capitalization Grant must be deposited, provide state matching funds at least equal to 20% of the DWSRF Capitalization Grant for deposit in the DWSRF and comply with certain other requirements of the SDWA. Historically, proceeds of Water Development Bonds and Financial Assistance Bonds have been used to provide all or a portion of such matching funds. The Board does not expect to issue general obligation bonds to provide matching funds in the future. Pursuant to Subchapter J, Texas created the DWSRF for the purpose of providing financial assistance to political subdivisions and water supply corporations. The Legislature expanded the program to allow funding for privately owned corporations for loan subsidies, provided that only appropriated funds and federal grants are utilized for such purpose.

DWSRF funds are permitted to be applied to provide financial assistance to community water systems and non-profit community water systems in a number of ways, including making direct loans, retiring existing debt through refinancing, and providing loan guarantees for expenditures that facilitate compliance with the primary national drinking water regulations. Under the SDWA, no less than 15% of money credited to the DWSRF must be provided to public water systems which serve fewer than 10,000 persons to the extent such funds can be obligated for eligible projects. Additional set asides may be made for source water protection loans and programs for capacity development and for state administration of the SDWA. The Board currently provides financial assistance by purchasing political subdivision obligations from Eligible Borrowers, or by providing loans or principal forgiveness. The maximum term of such form of financial assistance may not exceed thirty (30) years from project completion, but in no event longer than the expected design life of the project financed or refinanced.

### ***State Water Implementation Fund for Texas Program***

Pursuant to Subchapter C of Chapter 16 of the Texas Water Code, the Legislature directed the Board to prepare, develop, formulate, and adopt a comprehensive state water plan (the "State Water Plan") prior to January 2002. Thereafter, the Board has been responsible for preparing, developing, formulating and adopting a State Water Plan before the end of each successive five-year period. For purposes of developing the State Water Plan, the State is divided into 16 regional water planning areas. Each regional

water planning group for each regional water planning area must prepare a regional water plan and submit the plan to the Board for approval. Upon adoption of the State Water Plan, the Board is required to deliver the State Water Plan to the Governor, the Lieutenant Governor and the Speaker of the Texas House of Representatives and present the adopted State Water Plan for review to the appropriate legislative committees in the Legislature. The 2022 State Water Plan was adopted by the Board on July 7, 2021. The 2022 State Water Plan is available on the website of the Board, at <http://www.twdb.texas.gov/waterplanning/swp/2022/index.asp>.

In 2013, the 83rd Regular Session of the Legislature enacted enabling legislation to implement provisions relating to the proposed constitutional amendments that created SWIFT and SWIRFT to enhance the ability of the State to provide financial assistance for projects to implement the State Water Plan. With the adoption of the two amendments to the Texas Constitution as described below, the plan envisioned by the Legislature was implemented. Revenue bonds issued to support the "State Water Implementation Fund for Texas Program" are issued through the SWIRFT.

At an election held on November 5, 2013, the voters of Texas approved constitutional amendments which added two new sections to Article III of the Constitution. Generally, Section 49-d-12 provided for the appropriation of \$2 billion from the State's economic stabilization fund to create and fund SWIFT as a special fund in the State Treasury outside the State's General Revenue Fund. Section 49-d-13 created SWIRFT as a special fund in the State Treasury outside the General Revenue Fund.

Section 49-d-12 provides that money in SWIFT shall be administered, without further appropriation, by the Board for the purpose of implementing the State Water Plan. In addition, Section 49-d-12 authorizes the Legislature to authorize the Board to enter into Bond Enhancement Agreements to provide a source of revenue or security for general obligation bonds or revenue bonds issued by the Board, the proceeds of which are used to finance State Water Plan projects, provided, that the Bond Enhancement Agreements do not exceed the capacity of SWIFT to fully support such agreements. Moneys to be made available under the terms of a Bond Enhancement Agreement are contributed solely from SWIFT. Subchapter G of Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code provides that the Board has legal title to the money and investments of SWIFT to be used without further appropriation for the sole purpose of implementing the State Water Plan. Responsibility for the management and investment of SWIFT is conferred on the Texas Treasury Safekeeping Trust Company, a special-purpose trust company incorporated by the Comptroller under authority granted by Subchapter G of Chapter 404, Texas Government Code, as amended, which holds and invests SWIFT for and in the name of the Board.

The goal of the State Water Implementation Fund for Texas Program is to achieve funding of approximately \$27 billion of water projects over 50 years from 2015 and that the original \$2 billion capitalization of SWIFT is available in perpetuity. Subchapter G of Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code provides that in each five-year period between adoptions of a new State Water Plan, the Board shall undertake to apply not less than 10 percent of SWIFT funds to support projects that are for rural political subdivisions or agricultural water conservation, and 20 percent of SWIFT funds to support projects, including agricultural irrigation projects, that are designed for water conservation or reuse.

In accordance with State law, \$2 billion from the State's economic stabilization fund was appropriated and transferred to SWIFT. As of December 31, 2021, \$805,821,020 has been transferred from SWIFT to provide a source of revenue or security for SWIRFT revenue bonds issued by the Board, as further described below. SWIFT is administered by the Texas Treasury Safekeeping Trust Company ("TTSTC"). According to information available from TTSTC, as of December 31, 2021 SWIFT has a balance of approximately \$      billion. Information relating to the administration of SWIFT by the TTSTC can be found at its website, [TTSTC.org](http://TTSTC.org).

Section 49-d-13 authorizes the Legislature to authorize the Board to issue bonds and enter into related credit agreements that are payable from revenues available to SWIRFT. Obligations issued or incurred pursuant to Section 49-d-13 are special obligations payable solely from amounts in SWIRFT. Moneys in SWIRFT consist of moneys transferred or deposited to the credit of SWIRFT by law; the proceeds of any fee or tax that may be imposed by the State in the future that by statute is dedicated for deposit to the credit of SWIRFT; any other revenue that the Legislature dedicates for deposit to SWIRFT; investment earnings on amounts credited to SWIRFT; bond proceeds, including proceeds from revenue bonds issued for SWIRFT; repayments of political subdivision obligations made from SWIRFT; money from the sale, transfer, or lease of a project acquired, constructed, reconstructed, developed, or enlarged with money from SWIRFT; and money disbursed to SWIRFT from SWIFT.

The Board may use money in SWIRFT (i) as a source of revenue or security for the payment of the principal of and interest on revenue bonds issued by the Board under Subchapter H of Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code, other bonds issue by the Board if the proceeds of SWIRFT revenue bonds will be deposited in the SWIRFT, (ii) to acquire political subdivision obligations or other assets from another fund or account administered by the Board, or (iii) to pay necessary and reasonable costs incurred by the Board in administering SWIRFT. Money deposited to the credit of SWIRFT must be invested as determined by the Board. Subchapter H of Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code also authorizes that Board to issue revenue bonds for the purpose of providing money for SWIRFT. Revenue bonds issued under Subchapter H of Chapter 15 of the Texas Water Code are special obligations of the Board payable only from and secured by designated income and receipts of SWIRFT, and do not constitute indebtedness of the State.

As of **December, 31, 2021**, the Board has issued twelve series of SWIRFT revenue bonds, aggregating **\$6,573,120,000** in principal amount outstanding. The following entities are Significant Borrowers under the SWIRFT revenue bond indentures: Tarrant Regional Water District; Lone Star Regional Water Authority; Palo Pinto County Municipal Water District No. 1; Coastal Water Authority, North Harris County Regional Water Authority; Sabine River Authority of Texas; North Fort Bend Water Authority; Upper Trinity Regional Water District; and the North Texas Municipal Water District (the "District"). The District finances improvements pursuant to wholesale regional water supply contracts with various municipal counterparties ("Member Cities"). Four of the District's Member Cities, the Cities of Garland, Mesquite, Plano, and Richardson entered into a settlement agreement to amend the rate-setting provisions, among other items. The Public Utility Commission dismissed with prejudice Docket Nos. 46662, 50382, 47863 and 49043, respectively, relating to proceedings involving the District and the Member Cities, and such pleadings are available at [www.puc.texas.gov](http://www.puc.texas.gov).

#### ***Rural Water Assistance Fund***

Chapter 15, Subchapter R, of the Texas Water Code authorizes and governs the Rural Water Assistance Fund ("RWAFF"), which is a special fund in the State Treasury. The RWAFF may be used, among other purposes, to (i) provide low interest loans to Rural Political Subdivisions (as defined below) for water or water related projects and for water quality enhancement projects, including the construction of infrastructure facilities for wholesale or retail water and sewer service, desalination projects, the purchase or lease of well water fields; the construction of infrastructure facilities for wholesale purchase or lease of rights to produce groundwater; onsite or wetland wastewater treatment facilities; and interim financing of construction projects, (ii) finance water projects in the State Water Plan or regional water plan or (iii) enable a Rural Political Subdivision to obtain water or wastewater service supplied by larger political subdivisions or to finance the consolidation or regionalization of neighboring political subdivisions, or both. The RWAFF may also be used to (a) contract for outreach, financial, planning, and technical assistance to assist Rural Political Subdivisions in obtaining financial assistance from any source for any purpose that could be funded by the RWAFF and (b) buy down interest rates on loans or provide grants to Rural Political Subdivisions. A "Rural Political Subdivision" is a nonprofit water supply or sewer service corporation, district, or municipality with a service area of 10,000 or less in population; or that otherwise qualifies for financing from a federal agency; or a county in which no urban area exceeds 50,000 in population.

The Board may direct the Comptroller to transfer amounts from the Financial Assistance Account to the RWAFF to provide financial assistance under the Texas Water Code for the purposes provided in Subchapter R, specifically for the uses described above, as listed in Section 15.994, Texas Water Code, as amended. Subchapter R further provides that the RWAFF may be used as a source of revenue for the repayment of debt service on Financial Assistance Bonds, the proceeds of which have been deposited into the RWAFF.

## TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD

### *General*

The Board is an agency of the State and was created by constitutional amendment in 1957. Its mission is to provide leadership, information, education, and support for planning, financial assistance, and outreach for the conservation and responsible development of water for Texas. The Board is responsible for long-range water planning in the State. The Board is primarily responsible for the State's financial programs associated with the water industry, including the establishment of policy for the financial programs.

The Board initially was given authorization to issue as general obligations of the State, \$200,000,000 in Water Development Bonds for the "construction of dams, reservoirs and other water storage projects." Subsequent amendments to the Constitution and enabling legislation expanded the types of water-related facilities eligible for Board financial assistance to include all components of water supply, wastewater (sewage) conveyance and treatment, flood control, municipal solid waste management and agricultural water conservation projects. The Board may also execute contracts with any agency of the United States for the acquisition and development of storage facilities in the State and reservoirs constructed by the federal government, which contracts constitute general obligations of the State.

The primary focus of the Board prior to 1985 was to provide loans to assist communities that found it a hardship to obtain funding from other sources. Constitutional amendments and legislative changes implemented in 1985 broadened the eligibility criteria to include all eligible applicants and regional water, wastewater, municipal solid waste management, flood control projects, and water projects that involved the conversion from a ground water supply source to a surface supply. In 1987, with the creation of the CWSRF, all political subdivisions (no hardship or regional criteria required) became eligible to apply for financial assistance for wastewater treatment projects. In 1989, a constitutional amendment and legislation authorized the Board to provide loan and grant assistance to construct potable water supply and sanitary sewer systems in impoverished areas through the Economically Distressed Areas Program. In 1998, the State established the DWSRF to receive proceeds of certain federal grants, provide matching funds and make loans to political subdivisions and water supply corporations that facilitate compliance with the federal government's primary national drinking water regulations. In 2013, the voters of the State also approved a constitutional amendment which created the SWIFT and the SWIRFT, and such funds are currently administered by the Board for the purpose of implementing the State Water Plan. See "OTHER FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS OF THE BOARD – State Water Implementation Fund for Texas."

### *State Water Plan*

Pursuant to Subchapter C of Chapter 16 of the Texas Water Code, the Legislature first directed the Board to prepare, develop, formulate, and adopt a comprehensive state water plan (the "State Water Plan") prior to January 2002. Thereafter, the Board has been responsible for preparing, developing, formulating and adopting a State Water Plan before the end of each successive five-year period after that date. The State Water Plan provides for and identifies projects in furtherance of the orderly development, management, and conservation of water resources and preparation for and response to drought conditions, in order that sufficient water will be available at a reasonable cost to ensure public health, safety and welfare, further economic development and protect the agricultural and natural resources of the entire State.

For purposes of developing the State Water Plan, the State is divided into 16 regional water planning areas. Each regional water planning group for each regional water planning area must prepare a regional water plan and submit the plan to the Board for approval by the Board, and for inclusion in the State Water Plan. The regional water planning groups shall submit their adopted regional water plans to the Board no later than January 5 of the year that is one year prior to the date the Board is to adopt the State Water Plan for the ensuing five-year period.

On adoption of the State Water Plan, the Board is required to deliver the State Water Plan to the Governor, the Lieutenant Governor and the Speaker of the Texas House of Representatives and present the adopted State Water Plan for review to the appropriate legislative committees in the Legislature.

The Board unanimously approved the 2022 State Water Plan, and it is available on the website of the Board at: <http://www.twdb.texas.gov/waterplanning/swp/2022/index.asp>.

### *Board Members*

The members of the Board currently are:

***Brooke T. Paup, Chairwoman.*** Appointed to the Board by Governor Greg Abbott, effective February 22, 2018. Reappointed to a new term by Governor Greg Abbott on February 6, 2019 and designated as Chairwoman on April 22, 2021. Ms. Paup most recently served as the Director of Legislative Affairs for the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts and is formerly the Deputy Division Chief of Intergovernmental Relations for the Office of the Attorney General. While with the Office of the Attorney General, Ms. Paup was a Special Assistant for Policy and Research on public finance and legislative and special litigation issues, including SWIFT and SWIRFT. Ms. Paup is a member of the Texas State Bar

and holds a Juris Doctor from Texas Tech University School of Law and is an alumna of Texas A&M University with a Bachelor of Arts degree. Ms. Paup has been appointed for a term set to expire February 1, 2025.

***Kathleen Jackson, Member.*** Appointed to the Board by Governor Rick Perry effective March 18, 2014 and reappointed to a new term by Governor Greg Abbott on March 9, 2017. Ms. Jackson has a diverse background representing agricultural, environmental, industrial and wholesale-supply interests, which includes developing and implementing water management strategies for Southeast Texas. As a registered professional engineer, Ms. Jackson served as public affairs manager for one of the world's largest petroleum and petrochemical producers. Additionally, she was involved in production agriculture with her late husband, who ran a cattle operation and farmed rice. She served as a past member of the Lower Neches Valley Authority Board of Directors, the Texas Water Conservation Association, and participated on the Sabine and Neches Rivers Bay and Estuary Environmental Flows Assessment Program Stakeholders Committee. In August 2021, Governor Abbott appointed Ms. Jackson to serve on the State's Environmental Flows Advisory Group. She is also a board member and past president of the Lamar Institute of Technology Foundation, a sustaining member of the Junior League of Beaumont, a member of the Texas Farm Bureau, past president of the American Cancer Society of North Jefferson County, and a past board member of Junior Achievement of the Golden Triangle. Ms. Jackson received a bachelor's degree in chemical engineering from North Carolina State University. Ms. Jackson's term expires February 1, 2023.

**There currently exists one vacancy on the Board.**

### ***Key Staff Members***

***Jeff Walker, Executive Administrator.*** Mr. Walker was named Executive Administrator of the TWDB on May 19, 2016. He has served in various positions at the TWDB for more than 30 years, including as an agricultural conservation specialist, a financial analyst, a non-point source coordinator, and director of Project Development. In his most recent role as Deputy Executive Administrator of Water Supply and Infrastructure, his areas of responsibility included state water planning, project development, financial assistance, project funds disbursement, financial program administration, water use and population projections, facility needs assessment, project inspection, and reporting. Mr. Walker holds a Master of Business Administration from Texas State University and a Bachelor of Science in Agricultural Economics from Texas A&M University.

***Amanda Lavin, Assistant Executive Administrator.*** Ms. Lavin has more than 25 years of experience in public financing of infrastructure projects in Texas. She previously served as assistant deputy for the office of Water Supply and Infrastructure and helped supervise the implementation of the SWIFT program. Prior to joining the TWDB, Ms. Lavin was a financial advisor to various political subdivisions in the Austin and Houston areas.

***Jessica Peña, Deputy Executive Administrator, Water Supply and Infrastructure.*** Ms. Peña joined the TWDB in July 2001. She was named the Deputy Executive Administrator of Water Supply and Infrastructure in May 2016. Prior to this role, she served as the director of Regional Water Planning and Development, which entailed managing seven multi-disciplined regional teams that implement water and wastewater projects across the state. Her past positions at the TWDB also include team manager for the Northeast Region of the state and financial analyst. Ms. Peña holds a Bachelor's degree in Business Administration with the distinction of magna cum laude from St. Edward's University.

***Rebecca Trevino, Chief Financial Officer.*** Ms. Trevino joined the Board as its Chief Financial Officer in August 2016. Prior to this appointment, she served as the Deputy Chief Financial Officer for the Texas Health & Human Services Commission. Ms. Trevino has served in various financial leadership roles during her career, including that of Chief Financial Officer for the Texas Department of Assistive and Rehabilitative Services and the Texas Water Development Board. She holds a Bachelor of Business Administration degree in Accounting from The University of Texas at Austin and is a Certified Public Accountant.

***Georgia Sanchez, Director, Debt and Portfolio Management, and Development Fund Manager.*** Ms. Sanchez joined the TWDB in March 2017. She previously served more than 23 years with the City of Austin, Texas in roles including Assistant Treasurer and Investment Officer, where she managed cash, investments, and debt programs, and Corporate Budget Manager overseeing the implementation of the city's Capital Improvements Plan. She holds a Bachelor of Business Administration degree in International Business from The University of Texas at Austin.

***Ashley Harden, General Counsel.*** Before being hired as General Counsel of the Board in May 2020, Mr. Harden worked as General Counsel for the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts where his responsibilities involved state and local tax administration, state fiscal matters, and state procurement. Prior to working for the Texas Comptroller, Mr. Harden worked for the Texas Attorney General's Office and the Texas Department of Agriculture, where his practice included banking, public finance, and legal assistance to various federally funded programs. He is a graduate of SMU School of Law and the University of Texas at Austin.

### ***Limitation of Liability of Officials of the Board***

No present or future member of the Board or agent or employee of the Board, in his or her individual capacity, and neither the members of the Board nor any official executing the Bonds will be liable personally for payment on the Bonds or be subject to any personal liability or accountability by reason of the issuance of Bonds.

### ***Bond Review Board Approval***

With certain exceptions, bonds issued by State agencies and institutions, including bonds issued by the Board, must be approved by the Texas Bond Review Board (the "Bond Review Board") prior to their issuance. The Bond Review Board is composed of the Governor, the Lieutenant Governor, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and the Comptroller (as defined herein). The Governor is the Chairman of the Bond Review Board. Each member of the Bond Review Board may, and frequently does, act through a designee.

On **April 5**, 2022, the Bond Review Board approved the Bonds.

### ***Cybersecurity***

The State's Office of the Chief Information Security Officer, in conjunction with the Statewide Information Security Advisory Committee, created a strategic plan for the State that focuses on cybersecurity initiatives. The plan addresses the goals of engagement, tooling, staffing, response and outreach. In addition to compliance with such plan, the Board has adopted information technology policies and procedures, including risk management policies and procedures that are reviewed and updated annually. The Board employs other routine and standard processes that ensure the security of information resources as well, such as an annual controlled penetration test, a biennial Information Security Risk Assessment conducted by a third-party and a Board Security Plan that is updated every two years. In addition, the Board requires annual security awareness training of all employees and contractors and conducts quarterly phishing exercises to reinforce awareness concepts. There have been no material cybersecurity incidents that have impacted the operation or financial condition of the Board.

### ***Sunset Review of the Board***

The Board is subject to review, but not abolishment, under the Texas Sunset Act, Chapter 325, Texas Government Code (the "Sunset Act"), by the Sunset Advisory Commission (the "Commission"). The Board was most recently reviewed in 2011 and is subject to review every 12th year with the next review of the Commission expected to be completed in 2023. Pursuant to the Sunset Act, the Commission has initiated a process to conduct its review and provide any recommendations to the Legislature for consideration during the 2023 legislative session. The Legislature, however, is not prohibited from considering legislation addressing the programs performed by the Board prior to such date. Pursuant to the Sunset Act, the Commission is required to make recommendations to the Legislature regarding the reorganization, consolidation or transfer of programs administered by the Board. The Sunset Act further prohibits the Legislature from enacting legislation which would in any way affect the Board's continuing obligations, including those to the Holder of the Bonds pursuant to the Resolutions.

## **GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE STATE**

### ***Available Information***

The Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller") prepares (a) a quarterly appendix (the "Bond Appendix"), which sets forth certain information regarding the State (including its government, finances, economic profile, and other matters) for use by State entities when issuing debt, (b) an Annual Comprehensive Financial Report ("ACFR"), which includes financial statements audited by the State Auditor, and (c) from time to time notices of certain events as described under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION - Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller—Event Notices." All such documents are provided to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB") and publicly accessible as described in "APPENDIX A – The State of Texas." The most current such documents are described in "APPENDIX A – The State of Texas" and incorporated herein by reference. No representation is made that such documents contain all facts material to an evaluation of the ability of the State to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds, or the value of the Bonds, or that any specific information should be accorded any particular significance.

### ***Constitutional Limitation on Debt***

Article III, Section 49-j of the Texas Constitution prohibits the Legislature from authorizing additional State debt payable from the State's General Revenue Fund, including authorized but unissued bonds and lease purchase contracts in excess of \$250,000 but excluding debt reasonably expected to be paid from other sources, if the resulting maximum annual debt service in any State fiscal year on such State debt payable from the General Revenue Fund exceeds 5% of the average amount of General Revenue Fund revenues for the three immediately preceding fiscal years, excluding revenues constitutionally dedicated for purposes other than payment of state debt.

## LEGAL MATTERS

### *Legal Opinions*

The Board will furnish to the Underwriters complete transcripts of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the legal opinions of the Attorney General of the State to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the Board and, based upon examination of such respective transcripts of proceedings, the legal opinions to like effect of Orrick, Herrington, & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel and, subject to the qualifications set forth herein under "TAX MATTERS", the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, published rulings, and court decisions. In its capacity as Bond Counsel, Bond Counsel has reviewed the information under the captions "PLAN OF FINANCE" (except the subcaption "Anticipated Issuance of General Obligation Additional Bonds", as to which no opinion will be expressed), "THE BONDS", "SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS", "LEGAL MATTERS" (except the last two sentences of the first paragraph appearing under this subcaption "Legal Opinions" and the entirety of the information under the subcaption "No-Litigation Certificate" to which no opinion will be expressed), "TAX MATTERS", "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (excluding any information describing or otherwise pertaining to the continuing disclosure undertaking of the Comptroller and any statements with respect to State's or the Board's compliance with prior continuing disclosure undertakings, as to which no opinion will be expressed), and APPENDIX C to this Official Statement, and such firm is of the opinion that the information relating to the Bonds and the Resolutions and such firm's legal conclusions contained under such captions and in APPENDIX C is a fair and accurate summary of the information purported to be shown therein. In connection with the transactions described herein, Bond Counsel represents only the Board. The legal opinions of Bond Counsel in the forms set forth in APPENDIX C to this Official Statement will accompany the Bonds deposited with DTC. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their counsel, Kassahn & Ortiz, P.C., San Antonio, Texas, whose legal fee is contingent on the issuance and sale of the Bonds. Certain legal matters will be passed on for the Board by Bracewell LLP, Houston, Texas, Disclosure Counsel.

Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP and Bracewell LLP represent one or more of the Underwriters from time to time on matters not related to the Bonds.

The legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction, nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

### *No-Litigation Certificate*

No litigation or other governmental proceedings are pending or, to the knowledge of the Board, threatened which seek to prohibit, restrain or enjoin the issuance, execution and delivery of the Bonds or question the validity or enforceability of the Bonds or any of the proceedings taken in connection with the issuance thereof.

The State is party to various legal proceedings relating to its operations and governmental functions but such proceedings are unrelated to the Bonds or the security for the Bonds. For a discussion of litigation filed against the State please see the Bond Appendix litigation section in APPENDIX A hereto.

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Bonds, the Chairman of the Board or the Chairwoman of the Board, or his or her designee, and the Executive Administrator will execute and deliver a certification to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending which would restrain the issuance and delivery of the Bonds or affect the provision made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds.

### *Eligibility for Investment in Texas*

Section 1201.041 of the Public Security Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code, as amended) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments, investment securities governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business & Commerce Code, as amended, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies and political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value. For political subdivisions in Texas which have adopted investment policies and guidelines in accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act (Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, as amended), the Bonds may have to be assigned a rating of at least "A" or its equivalent as to the investment quality by a national rating agency before the Bonds are eligible investments for sinking funds or other public funds of such political subdivisions.

No representation is made that the Bonds will be acceptable to public entities to secure their deposits or acceptable to such institutions for investment purposes. The Board has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to any such persons or entities or which might otherwise limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such persons or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The Board has not made any review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

### ***Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale***

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemptions provided thereunder. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities laws of any other jurisdiction. The Board assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be offered, sold, or otherwise transferred. It is the obligation of the purchaser to register or qualify sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Underwriters to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Board has agreed to cooperate, at the Underwriters' written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the Board shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

## **TAX MATTERS**

In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel ("Bond Counsel"), based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Bond Counsel is of the further opinion that interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. Complete copies of the proposed forms of opinions of Bond Counsel are set forth in Appendix C hereto.

To the extent the issue price of any maturity of the Bonds is less than the amount to be paid at maturity of such Bonds (excluding amounts stated to be interest and payable at least annually over the term of such Bonds), the difference constitutes "original issue discount," the accrual of which, to the extent properly allocable to each Beneficial Owner thereof, is treated as interest on the Bonds which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. For this purpose, the issue price of a particular maturity of the Bonds is the first price at which a substantial amount of such maturity of the Bonds is sold to the public (excluding bond houses, brokers, or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters, placement agents or wholesalers). The original issue discount with respect to any maturity of the Bonds accrues daily over the term to maturity of such Bonds on the basis of a constant interest rate compounded semiannually (with straight-line interpolations between compounding dates). The accruing original issue discount is added to the adjusted basis of such Bonds to determine taxable gain or loss upon disposition (including sale, redemption, or payment on maturity) of such Bonds. Beneficial Owners of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the tax consequences of ownership of Bonds with original issue discount, including the treatment of Beneficial Owners who do not purchase such Bonds in the original offering to the public at the first price at which a substantial amount of such Bonds is sold to the public.

Bonds purchased, whether at original issuance or otherwise, for an amount higher than their principal amount payable at maturity (or, in some cases, at their earlier call date) ("Premium Bonds") will be treated as having amortizable bond premium. No deduction is allowable for the amortizable bond premium in the case of obligations, like the Premium Bonds, the interest on which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. However, the amount of tax-exempt interest received, and a Beneficial Owner's basis in a Premium Certificate, will be reduced by the amount of amortizable bond premium properly allocable to such Beneficial Owner. Beneficial Owners of Premium Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the proper treatment of amortizable bond premium in their particular circumstances.

The Code imposes various restrictions, conditions and requirements relating to the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on obligations such as the Bonds. The Board has made certain representations and covenanted to comply with certain restrictions, conditions and requirements designed to ensure that interest on the Bonds will not be included in federal gross income. Inaccuracy of these representations or failure to comply with these covenants may result in interest on the Bonds being included in gross income for federal income tax purposes, possibly from the date of original issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel assumes the accuracy of these representations and compliance with these covenants. Bond Counsel has not undertaken to determine (or to inform any person) whether any actions taken (or not taken), or events occurring (or not occurring), or any other matters coming to Bond Counsel's attention after the date of issuance of the Bonds may adversely affect the value of, or the tax status of interest on, the Bonds. Accordingly, the opinion of Bond Counsel is not intended to, and may not, be relied upon in connection with any such actions, events or matters.

Although Bond Counsel is of the opinion that interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the ownership or disposition of, or the accrual or receipt of amounts treated as interest on, the Bonds may otherwise affect a Beneficial Owner's federal, state or local tax liability. The nature and extent of these other tax consequences depends upon the particular tax status of the Beneficial Owner or the Beneficial Owner's other items of income or deduction. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any such other tax consequences.

Current and future legislative proposals, if enacted into law, clarification of the Code or court decisions may cause interest on the Bonds to be subject, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to federal income taxation or otherwise prevent Beneficial Owners from realizing the full current benefit of the tax status of such interest. The introduction or enactment of any such legislature proposals or clarification of the Code or court decisions may also affect, perhaps significantly, the market price for, or marketability of, the Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the potential impact of any pending or proposed federal or state tax legislation, regulations or litigation, as to which Bond Counsel is expected to express no opinion.

The opinion of Bond Counsel is based on current legal authority, covers certain matters not directly addressed by such authorities, and represents Bond Counsel's judgment as to the proper treatment of the Bonds for federal income tax purposes. It is not binding on the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS") or the courts. Furthermore, Bond Counsel cannot give and has not given any opinion or assurance about the future activities of the Board or about the effect of future changes in the Code, the applicable regulations, the interpretation thereof or the enforcement thereof by the IRS. The Board has covenanted, however, to comply with the requirements of the Code.

Bond Counsel's engagement with respect to the Bonds ends with the issuance of the Bonds, and, unless separately engaged, Bond Counsel is not obligated to defend the Board or the Beneficial Owners regarding the tax-exempt status of the Bonds in the event of an audit examination by the IRS. Under current procedures, parties other than the Board and its appointed counsel, including the Beneficial Owners, would have little, if any, right to participate in the audit examination process. Moreover, because achieving judicial review in connection with an audit examination of tax-exempt bonds is difficult, obtaining an independent review of IRS positions with which the Board legitimately disagrees, may not be practicable. Any action of the IRS, including but not limited to selection of the Bonds for audit, or the course or result of such audit, or an audit of bonds presenting similar tax issues may affect the market price for, or the marketability of, the Bonds, and may cause the Board or the Beneficial Owners to incur significant expense.

## CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

Each of the Board and the Comptroller has entered into a separate undertaking for the benefit of bondholders to provide certain updated information and notices to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB") through its Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, as described below.

### *Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board*

**General.** In each Bond Resolution, the Board has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the related Bonds. The Board is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the Board will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of certain specified events, to the MSRB through EMMA.

**Annual Reports.** The Board will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data of the general type included in TABLES 1 and 2 and APPENDIX B of this Official Statement. The Board will update and provide this information within 195 days after the end of each fiscal year ending in or after 2022.

The financial information and operating data to be provided may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document available to the public on the MSRB's website or filed with the SEC, as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule"). The updated information will include audited financial statements, if the Board or the State, as appropriate, commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not available by the required time, the Board will provide unaudited financial statements within the required time and audited financial statements when and if the audit report becomes available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for governmental entities or such other accounting principles as the Board may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation.

The Board's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, it must provide updated information within 195 days thereof unless the Board changes its fiscal year. If the Board changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change prior to the next date by which the Board otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as described above.

**Event Notices.** The Board will notify the MSRB in a timely manner, not in excess of ten (10) Business Days (as defined in the Bond Resolutions) after the occurrence of any of the events listed below. The Board will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinion, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Board; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Board or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Board, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action, or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) the appointment of a successor or additional Paying Agent/Registrar or the change of name of a Paying Agent/Registrar, if material. In addition, the Board will provide timely notice of any failure by the Board to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Board – *Annual Reports*."

For the purposes of the event numbered 12 above, the event is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Board in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Board.

#### ***Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller***

**General.** The Comptroller has entered into an Amended and Restated Continuing Disclosure Agreement with the Bond Review Board dated March 12, 2019. The Board and the legal and beneficial owners of the Bonds are third-party beneficiaries of the Comptroller's agreement. The Comptroller is required to observe this agreement in respect of any issue of Securities, as defined in the agreement (which include the Bonds), for so long as the State remains an "obligated person," as defined in the Rule. Under the agreement, the Comptroller will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the MSRB as described below.

**Annual Reports.** The Comptroller will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. Under its disclosure agreement, the Comptroller is not obligated to provide such financial and operating data more frequently than on an annual basis. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the State of the general type included in the Bond Appendix. The Comptroller will update and provide this information within 195 days after the end of each fiscal year of the State.

The financial information and operating data to be provided may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document available to the public on the MSRB's EMMA website or filed with the SEC, as permitted by the Rule. The updated information provided by the Comptroller will be provided on a cash basis and will not be audited, but the Comptroller will provide audited financial statements of the State prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles for governmental entities when the State Auditor completes its statutorily required audit of such financial statements. The accounting principles pursuant to which such financial statements must be prepared may be changed from time to time to comply with State law.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the Comptroller must provide updated information for each fiscal year within 195 days after that date unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the Comptroller will notify the MSRB of the change prior to the next date by which the Comptroller otherwise would be required to provide financial information and operating data as described above.

**Quarterly Reports.** Although it is not contractually committed to do so, the Comptroller currently prepares and files with the MSRB a quarterly Bond Appendix which provides a general description of the State and sets forth certain information regarding the State, including its government, finances, economic profile, and other matters, for use by State entities when issuing debt. Certain tables within the Bond Appendix are updated on a quarterly basis while other tables within the Bond Appendix are updated on a semiannual or annual basis. The Bond Appendix is not audited and provides financial data on a cash basis. The Comptroller generally files an updated Bond Appendix with the MSRB within two weeks after each January 31, April 30, July 31, and October 31, and it may file voluntary notices of significant events with the MSRB between Bond Appendices, although there is no assurance that it will continue such voluntary filings at such times or at all in the future.

**Event Notices.** The Comptroller will also provide notice to the MSRB of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds on a timely basis no later than 10 business days after the event: (a) the incurrence of a financial obligation (as defined in the Rule, including certain debt, debt-like, and debt-related obligations) of the State, if material, or an agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of any such financial obligation, any of which affect security holders, if material; or (b) a default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar event under the terms of any such financial obligation of the State, any of which reflect financial difficulties.

The Comptroller will also provide timely notice to the MSRB of any failure to provide updated financial information, operating data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement.

### ***Availability of Information***

The Board and the Comptroller have agreed to provide the foregoing financial and operating information and notices only as described above. The Board and the Comptroller will be required to file their respective continuing disclosure information using the MSRB's EMMA system. Investors will be able to access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB free of charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

The quarterly Bond Appendix, if and when filed, the State's ACFR, and annual financial and operating information, and event notices, if any, may be obtained by using the EMMA Quick Search function and entering the term "State of Texas Comptroller." The most recently prepared Bond Appendix, ACFR, and notices may also be accessed on the Comptroller's website at: <https://comptroller.texas.gov/programs/systems/treasury-ops/index.php>.

### ***Limitations and Amendments***

The Board and the Comptroller have agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. Neither is responsible for performance of the other's agreement, and neither has agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of the Board's or the State's financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. Neither makes any representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell the Bonds at any future date. Each disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of the Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the Board and the Comptroller to comply with their respective agreements.

The Board and the Comptroller may amend their respective continuing disclosure agreements from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the Board or the State, if (i) the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (ii) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent to the amendment or (b) a person unaffiliated with the State, the Comptroller, the Bond Review Board and the Board (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the beneficial owners of such Bonds. The Board may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the Board or the Comptroller so amends its disclosure agreement, it has agreed to include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of financial information and operating data so provided.

## **OTHER INFORMATION**

### ***Ratings***

Fitch Ratings, Inc., Moody's Investors Service, Inc. and S&P Global Ratings, a division of S&P Global Inc., have assigned ratings of "■", "■" and "■" respectively, to the Bonds. An explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained from the company furnishing the rating. The ratings reflect only the respective views of such rating companies and the Board and the Underwriters make no representation as to the appropriateness of the ratings. There is no assurance that such ratings will continue for any given period of time or that they will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by any or all of such rating companies if, in the judgment of any or all companies, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such ratings, or any of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds. A securities rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell, or hold securities.

### ***Underwriting***

The Underwriters have agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase: the Series 2022A Bonds at a purchase price of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (consisting of a principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus an original issue premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, and less an underwriting discount of \$\_\_\_\_\_); the Series 2022B Bonds at a purchase price of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (consisting of a principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus an original issue premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, and less an underwriting discount of \$\_\_\_\_\_); the Series 2022C Bonds at a purchase price of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (consisting of a principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus an original issue premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, and less an underwriting discount of \$\_\_\_\_\_); and the Taxable Series 2022D Bonds at a purchase price of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (consisting of a principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus an original issue premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, and less an underwriting discount of \$\_\_\_\_\_).

The Underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the Bonds if any Bonds are purchased. The Bonds to be offered to the public may be offered and sold to certain dealers (including the Underwriters and other dealers depositing Bonds into investment trusts) at prices lower than the public offering prices of the Bonds and such public offering prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriters.

The Underwriters have furnished for inclusion in this Official Statement the following paragraphs of this subcaption. The Board makes no representation as to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained in the following paragraphs.

The Underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage services. Certain of the Underwriters and their respective affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various financial advisory and investment banking services for the State, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the Underwriters and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities, which may include credit default swaps) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers and may at any time hold long and short positions in such securities and instruments. Such investment and securities activities may involve securities and instruments of the Board or the State.

The Underwriters and their respective affiliates may also communicate independent investment recommendations, market color or trading ideas and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such assets, securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they should acquire, long and/or short positions in such assets, securities and instruments.

The Board intends to use a portion of the proceeds from the Series 2022B Bonds, the Series 2022C Bonds, and the Taxable Series 2022D Bonds to redeem the Refunded Bonds. To the extent an Underwriter or an affiliate thereof is an owner of Refunded Bonds, such Underwriter or its affiliate, as applicable, would receive, as an owner of a Refunded Bond, a portion of the proceeds from the issuance of the Series 2022B Bonds, Series 2022C Bonds and Taxable Series 2022D Bonds contemplated herein in connection with such Refunded Bonds being redeemed by the Board.

### ***Unaudited Financial Information***

The Board provides financial information and operating data regarding the Development Fund II, the State Participation Program, and the Economically Distressed Areas Program in APPENDIX B to this Official Statement. The information presented in APPENDIX B is unaudited, and is prepared in accordance with State requirements for State agencies.

### ***Forward-Looking Statements***

The statements contained or incorporated by reference into this Official Statement that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, including statements regarding the Board's and the Comptroller's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the Board and the Comptroller on the date of this Official Statement or the date of the Bond Appendix, ACFR, or event notice, respectively, and the Board and the Comptroller assume no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the Board's and the State's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements included herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal, and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial, and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future

business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the Board and the Comptroller. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement will prove to be accurate.

### ***Certification of Official Statement***

The financial and other information contained herein have been obtained from the Board's records and other sources which are deemed reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Resolutions contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes and documents and the Resolutions. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such documents for further information. Reference is made to original documents in all respects.

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Bonds, the Board will be furnished a letter from the State, signed on behalf of the State by the Comptroller, upon which the Underwriters will be authorized to rely, to the effect that (a) to the best of the Comptroller's knowledge and belief, the documents identified in APPENDIX A hereto are true and correct as of their respective dates and do not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact that would make the statements made therein, in light of the circumstances under which they are made, misleading; (b) the information therein has been obtained from sources which the Comptroller's office believes to be reliable; and (c) the Comptroller has entered into a continuing disclosure agreement with the Texas Bond Review Board, for the benefit of the Board and the legal and beneficial owners of the Bonds, to provide, with respect to the State, updated financial information and operating data, timely notice of certain financial obligation events, and other specified events.

### ***Financial Advisor***

Hilltop Securities Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the Board in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. The Financial Advisor's fee for services rendered with respect to the sale of the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and delivery of the Bonds. Hilltop Securities Inc., in its capacity as Financial Advisor, does not assume any responsibility for the information, covenants and representations contained in any of the legal documents with respect to the federal income tax status of the Bonds, or the possible impact of any present, pending or future actions taken by any legislative or judicial bodies.

The Financial Advisor to the Board has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the Board and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

### ***Website References***

References to website addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such websites and the information or links contained therein (or in any other document expressly incorporated herein) are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement, including for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, the Rule.

### ***Approval of Official Statement***

The Resolutions approved the form and content of this Official Statement and authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Underwriters. Questions regarding this Official Statement may be directed to Georgia Sanchez Director, Director, Debt and Portfolio Management and Development Fund Manager, Texas Water Development Board, 1700 North Congress Avenue, 6th Floor, Austin, Texas 78701; Telephone: (512) 475-4584; Electronic Mail: [georgia.sanchez@twdb.texas.gov](mailto:georgia.sanchez@twdb.texas.gov).

## **TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD**

/s/  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Executive Administrator  
Texas Water Development Board

**SCHEDULE I - SCHEDULE OF REFUNDED BONDS\***

**Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2012G**

<u>Original Dated Date</u>	<u>Maturity (August 1)</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Amount</u>
October 2, 2012	2023	5.000%	\$ 1,240,000
	2024	5.000%	1,300,000
	2025	5.000%	1,365,000
	2026	5.000%	1,445,000
	2027	5.000%	1,505,000
	2028	5.000%	1,590,000
	2029	5.000%	1,670,000
	2030	5.000%	3,815,000
	2031	5.000%	4,005,000
	2032	5.000%	4,200,000
	2033	5.000%	4,415,000
	2034	5.000%	4,635,000
	2035	5.000%	4,820,000
	2036	5.000% (1)	4,260,000
	2037	5.000% (1)	9,130,000
	2038	5.000% (1)	9,585,000
	2039	3.500% (2)	3,405,000
	2039	4.000% (2)	2,190,000
	2039	5.000% (2)	21,645,000
	2040	3.500% (2)	3,575,000
	2040	4.000% (2)	2,300,000
	2040	5.000% (2)	22,650,000
	2041	3.500% (2)	3,755,000
	2041	4.000% (2)	2,410,000
	2041	5.000% (2)	23,710,000
			<u>\$ 144,620,000</u>

These Refunded Bonds are to be called on August 1, 2022 at par.

- (1) Represent mandatory sinking fund installments of a Term Bond with a final maturity of August 1, 2038.  
(2) Represent mandatory sinking fund installments of a Term Bond with a final maturity of August 1, 2041.

\* Preliminary, subject to change

**Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2012F  
(Economically Distressed Areas Program)**

<u>Original Dated Date</u>	<u>Maturity (August 1)</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Amount</u>
September 5, 2012	2023	5.000%	\$ 1,470,000
	2024	5.000%	1,470,000
	2025	5.000%	1,470,000
	2026	5.000%	1,470,000
	2027	5.000%	1,470,000
	2028	5.000%	1,470,000
	2029	5.000%	1,470,000
	2030	5.000%	1,465,000
	2031	3.000%	1,465,000
	2032	3.100%	1,465,000

These Refunded Bonds are to be called on August 1, 2022 at par.

**Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2013D  
(State Participation Program)**

<u>Original Dated Date</u>	<u>Maturity (August 1)</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Amount</u>
December 19, 2013	2023	3.530%	\$ 1,075,000
	2024	3.682%	1,115,000
	2025	3.832%	1,155,000
	2026	3.982%	1,200,000
	2027	4.132%	1,245,000
	2028	4.282%	1,300,000
	2029	4.432%	1,355,000
	2030	4.847% <sup>(1)</sup>	1,415,000
	2031	4.847% <sup>(1)</sup>	1,485,000
	2032	4.847% <sup>(1)</sup>	1,550,000
	2033	4.847% <sup>(1)</sup>	1,630,000
	2034	4.847% <sup>(1)</sup>	1,705,000
	2035	4.847% <sup>(1)</sup>	1,790,000

These Refunded Bonds are to be called on August 1, 2022 at par.

<sup>(1)</sup> Represent mandatory sinking fund installments of a Term Bond with a final maturity of August 1, 2035.

## APPENDIX A

### THE STATE OF TEXAS

As described in the body of the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION - Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller," the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts ("Comptroller") is required to file updated annual financial and operating data, audited financial statements of the State when received, and timely notice of certain events with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"), and the Comptroller voluntarily files quarterly Bond Appendices and occasional notices of significant events.

The Official Statement hereby incorporates by reference the previously filed documents listed below, except for any information superseded by information that is included directly in the body of the Official Statement or incorporated by reference in a subsequent document, as well as any future filings that the Comptroller makes with the MSRB through EMMA prior to the termination of the offering of the Bonds under the Official Statement:

- State of Texas Annual Comprehensive Financial Report for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2021
- Appendix A: The State of Texas (November 2021)
- Each notice, if any, filed with the MSRB by the Comptroller since the end of the fiscal year of the State addressed in the foregoing Comprehensive Annual Financial Report.

These documents and any subsequently filed documents, if any, may be obtained by accessing EMMA at <https://emma.msrb.org/>, using the MSRB Quick Search function and entering the term "State of Texas Comptroller." The documents may also be accessed on the Comptroller's website at: <https://comptroller.texas.gov/programs/systems/treasury-ops/index.php>. For further information see "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION - Continuing Disclosure Undertaking of the Comptroller" in the body of the Official Statement.

Information in the Bond Appendix, ACFR, and any notice incorporated herein by reference is provided as of the date specified in the documents. No representation is made that such documents contain all facts material to an evaluation of the ability of the State to pay principal of and interest on the Bonds when due, or the value of the Bonds, or that any specific information should be accorded any particular significance.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

**APPENDIX B**

**SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA (UNAUDITED)**

**Statement of Net Position - DFund II**  
**UNAUDITED<sup>1</sup>**

	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
<b>ASSETS</b>					
Current Assets:					
Cash and Cash Equivalents:					
Cash in State Treasury	\$ 92,426,424	\$ 81,390,753	\$ 91,528,940	\$ 84,925,680	\$ 138,221,750
Receivables from:					
Interest and Dividends	50,027,982	50,112,663	49,100,085	13,431,829	12,862,790
Interfund Receivables	25,317,840	25,022,215	26,038,798	25,497,291	25,158,919
Due From Other Funds	67,780,915	67,308,673	74,523,221	64,512,593	67,050,272
Loans and Contracts	26,530,284	25,032,785	31,263,815	21,876,404	23,979,195
<b>Total Current Assets</b>	<b>262,083,445</b>	<b>248,867,089</b>	<b>272,454,858</b>	<b>210,243,797</b>	<b>267,272,925</b>
Non-Current Assets:					
Loans and Contracts	1,090,183,619	1,100,395,834	1,081,217,864	891,206,460	856,314,266
Interfund Receivables	340,756,562	311,599,347	302,001,377	270,414,142	209,949,360
<b>Total Non-Current Assets</b>	<b>1,430,940,182</b>	<b>1,411,995,182</b>	<b>1,383,219,242</b>	<b>1,161,620,602</b>	<b>1,066,263,626</b>
<b>Total Assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,693,023,627</b>	<b>\$ 1,660,862,271</b>	<b>\$ 1,655,674,100</b>	<b>\$ 1,371,864,399</b>	<b>\$ 1,333,536,551</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>					
Current Liabilities:					
Payables from:					
Accounts Payable	\$ 36,065	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 37,552	\$ -
Interest Payable	6,962,659	6,838,535	6,713,351	5,676,115	5,487,118
Due to Other Funds	67,780,915	67,308,673	74,523,221	62,295,625	65,651,230
General Obligation Bonds Payable	60,818,599	60,504,777	67,848,620	56,712,599	60,192,599
<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	<b>135,598,239</b>	<b>134,651,985</b>	<b>149,085,191</b>	<b>124,721,891</b>	<b>131,330,947</b>
Non-Current Liabilities:					
General Obligation Bonds Payable	1,329,585,028	1,283,578,237	1,248,166,576	992,170,915	931,978,316
<b>Total Non-Current Liabilities</b>	<b>1,329,585,028</b>	<b>1,283,578,237</b>	<b>1,248,166,576</b>	<b>992,170,915</b>	<b>931,978,316</b>
<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 1,465,183,267</b>	<b>\$ 1,418,230,222</b>	<b>\$ 1,397,251,767</b>	<b>\$ 1,116,892,806</b>	<b>\$ 1,063,309,263</b>
<b>NET POSITION</b>					
Unrestricted	227,840,360	242,632,049	258,422,332	254,971,593	270,227,288
<b>Total Net Position</b>	<b>\$ 227,840,360</b>	<b>\$ 242,632,049</b>	<b>\$ 258,422,332</b>	<b>\$ 254,971,593</b>	<b>\$ 270,227,288</b>

*Numbers may not add due to rounding*

<sup>1</sup>The financial data presented here is a recapitulation of the Board's financial statements presented in their Annual Financial Reports. The Board's financial statements become a part of the Annual Comprehensive Financial Report for the State of Texas, which is audited by the State Auditor's Office; however, the scope of the reviews at the agency level do not constitute an audit of the individual agency's financial statements. Consequently, these statements are considered unaudited at the agency level. Any adjustments related to the agency's financial data as a result of the ACFR Audit are not reflected in the amounts reported here.

**Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position - DFund II**

UNAUDITED<sup>1</sup>

	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
<b>OPERATING REVENUES:</b>					
Interest and Investment Income	\$ 77,651,475	\$ 67,348,014	\$ 66,098,215	\$ 43,826,509	\$ 51,681,608
<b>Total Operating Revenues</b>	<b>77,651,475</b>	<b>67,348,014</b>	<b>66,098,215</b>	<b>43,826,509</b>	<b>51,681,608</b>
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES:</b>					
Professional Fees and Services	1,680,613	474,971	523,179	276,492	25,128
Travel	6,888	1,255	-	1,838	-
Printing and Reproduction	1,214	2,951	1,284	314	-
Interest	58,901,716	52,120,852	49,773,969	48,027,847	36,400,785
Other Operating Expenses	476,889	19,000	9,500	-	-
<b>Total Operating Expenses</b>	<b>61,067,320</b>	<b>52,619,029</b>	<b>50,307,931</b>	<b>48,306,492</b>	<b>36,425,914</b>
<b>Operating Income (Loss)</b>	<b>16,584,155</b>	<b>14,728,985</b>	<b>15,790,284</b>	<b>(4,479,982)</b>	<b>15,255,695</b>
<b>Income/(Loss) before Other Revenues, Expenses, Gains/Losses and Transfers</b>	<b>16,584,155</b>	<b>14,728,985</b>	<b>15,790,284</b>	<b>(4,479,982)</b>	<b>15,255,695</b>
<b>OTHER REVENUES, EXPENSES, GAINS/LOSSES AND TRANSFERS:</b>					
Transfers-In	40,266,006	61,650,456	63,143,501	47,898,511	56,437,053
Transfers-Out	(44,228,747)	(61,587,753)	(63,143,501)	(46,869,268)	(56,437,053)
<b>Total Other Revenue, Expenses, Gain/Losses and Transfers</b>	<b>(3,962,741)</b>	<b>62,704</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>1,029,243</b>	<b>-</b>
<b>Change in Net Position</b>	<b>12,621,413</b>	<b>14,791,689</b>	<b>15,790,284</b>	<b>(3,450,740)</b>	<b>15,255,695</b>
Total Net Position - September 1	215,218,947	227,840,360	242,632,049	258,422,332	254,971,593
<b>Total Net Position - August 31</b>	<b>\$ 227,840,360</b>	<b>\$ 242,632,049</b>	<b>\$ 258,422,332</b>	<b>\$ 254,971,593</b>	<b>\$ 270,227,288</b>

*Numbers may not add due to rounding*

<sup>1</sup>The financial data presented here is a recapitulation of the Board's financial statements presented in their Annual Financial Reports. The Board's financial statements become a part of the Annual Comprehensive Financial Report for the State of Texas, which is audited by the State Auditor's Office; however, the scope of the reviews at the agency level do not constitute an audit of the individual agency's financial statements. Consequently, these statements are considered unaudited at the agency level. Any adjustments related to the agency's financial data as a result of the ACFR Audit are not reflected in the amounts reported here.

**Balance Sheet / Statement of Net Position - EDAP**  
**UNAUDITED<sup>1</sup>**

	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
<b>ASSETS</b>					
Current Assets:					
Cash and Cash Equivalents:					
Cash in State Treasury	\$ 1,531,106	\$ 1,853,410	\$ 2,237,468	\$ 925,410	\$ 878,344
Receivables From:					
Interest and Dividends	190,116	170,640	153,210	149,133	143,117
Loans and Contracts	1,725,094	1,816,314	1,832,701	1,917,836	1,915,566
<b>Total Current Assets</b>	<b>3,446,316</b>	<b>3,840,364</b>	<b>4,223,379</b>	<b>2,992,379</b>	<b>2,937,028</b>
Non-Current Assets:					
Loans & Contracts	25,754,541	23,596,925	21,348,838	22,951,002	20,538,436
<b>Total Noncurrent Assets</b>	<b>25,754,541</b>	<b>23,596,925</b>	<b>21,348,838</b>	<b>22,951,002</b>	<b>20,538,436</b>
<b>Total Assets</b>	<b>\$ 29,200,857</b>	<b>\$ 27,437,289</b>	<b>\$ 25,572,217</b>	<b>\$ 25,943,381</b>	<b>\$ 23,475,464</b>
<b>LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES</b>					
Liabilities:					
Current Liabilities:					
Payables From:					
Accounts Payable	\$ 81,384	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 5,504	\$ -
Interest Payable	815,102	754,898	672,578	769,599	695,514
General Obligation Bonds Payable	22,629,612	22,873,140	22,874,134	23,229,761	22,144,761
<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	<b>23,526,098</b>	<b>23,628,038</b>	<b>23,546,712</b>	<b>24,004,864</b>	<b>22,840,275</b>
Non-Current Liabilities:					
General Obligation Bonds Payable	236,539,316	213,764,093	190,889,959	218,450,843	196,306,082
<b>Total Non-Current Liabilities</b>	<b>236,539,316</b>	<b>213,764,093</b>	<b>190,889,959</b>	<b>218,450,843</b>	<b>196,306,082</b>
<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 260,065,414</b>	<b>\$ 237,392,131</b>	<b>\$ 214,436,671</b>	<b>\$ 242,455,707</b>	<b>\$ 219,146,357</b>
<b>FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENT - FUND BALANCES</b>					
Fund Balances (Deficits):					
Restricted	29,119,473	27,437,289	25,572,217	25,937,877	23,475,464
<b>Government-Wide Statement of Net Position</b>					
Net Position:					
Restricted for:					
Debt Retirement	(259,984,030)	(237,392,131)	(214,436,671)	(242,450,203)	(219,146,357)
<b>Total Net Position<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>\$ (230,864,557)</b>	<b>\$ (209,954,841)</b>	<b>\$ (188,864,454)</b>	<b>\$ (216,512,326)</b>	<b>\$ (195,670,893)</b>

*Numbers may not add due to rounding*

<sup>1</sup>The financial data presented here is a recapitulation of the Board's financial statements presented in their Annual Financial Reports. The Board's financial statements become a part of the Annual Comprehensive Financial Report for the State of Texas, which is audited by the State Auditor's Office; however, the scope of the reviews at the agency level do not constitute an audit of the individual agency's financial statements. Consequently, these statements are considered unaudited at the agency level. Any adjustments related to the agency's financial data as a result of the ACFR Audit are not reflected in the amounts reported here.

<sup>2</sup>Total Net Position reflects Total Fund Balances offsets by amounts in Net Position Restricted for Debt Retirement.

**Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances / Statement of Activities - EDAP**  
**UNAUDITED<sup>1</sup>**

	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
<b>REVENUES</b>					
Interest and Other Investment Income	\$ 310,482	\$ 766,675	\$ 724,763	\$ 938,177	\$ 690,873
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>310,482</b>	<b>766,675</b>	<b>724,763</b>	<b>938,177</b>	<b>690,873</b>
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>					
Professional Fees and Services	517,847	121,997	10,747	490,068	14,568
Travel	3,085	434	-	269	-
Printing and Reproduction	-	617	-	2,850	-
Intergovernmental Payments	26,819,949	-	(6,000)	33,257,116	(40)
Public Assistance Payments	16,547,000	-	-	17,795,000	-
Other Expenditures	9,500	9,500	-	-	-
Debt service:					
Interest	8,498,675	7,900,722	6,916,972	7,062,217	7,050,343
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>52,396,055</b>	<b>8,033,270</b>	<b>6,921,718</b>	<b>58,607,520</b>	<b>7,064,872</b>
<b>Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over Expenditures</b>	<b>(52,085,573)</b>	<b>(7,266,596)</b>	<b>(6,196,955)</b>	<b>(57,669,343)</b>	<b>(6,373,998)</b>
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)</b>					
Transfers In	29,880,411	30,674,769	29,886,794	33,277,979	30,319,489
Transfers Out	(2,465,548)	(2,493,687)	(2,599,451)	(3,256,508)	(3,104,058)
<b>Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)</b>	<b>27,414,863</b>	<b>28,181,082</b>	<b>27,287,343</b>	<b>30,021,471</b>	<b>27,215,431</b>
<b>Net Change in Fund Balances/Net Position</b>	<b>(24,670,710)</b>	<b>20,914,486</b>	<b>21,090,388</b>	<b>(27,647,872)</b>	<b>20,841,433</b>
<b>STATEMENT OF NET POSITION</b>					
Net Position - September 1	(206,198,534)	(230,869,328)	(209,954,842)	(188,864,454)	(216,512,326)
<b>Net Position - August 31</b>	<b>\$ (230,869,244)</b>	<b>\$ (209,954,842)</b>	<b>\$ (188,864,454)</b>	<b>\$ (216,512,326)</b>	<b>\$ (195,670,893)</b>

*Numbers may not add due to rounding*

<sup>1</sup>The financial data presented here is a recapitulation of the Board's financial statements presented in their Annual Financial Reports. The Board's financial statements become a part of the Annual Comprehensive Financial Report for the State of Texas, which is audited by the State Auditor's Office; however, the scope of the reviews at the agency level do not constitute an audit of the individual agency's financial statements. Consequently, these statements are considered unaudited at the agency level. Any adjustments related to the agency's financial data as a result of the ACFR Audit are not reflected in the amounts reported here.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

**APPENDIX C**

**PROPOSED FORMS OF BOND COUNSEL OPINIONS**

*Opinions in substantially the following forms will be delivered by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel, upon the delivery of the Bonds, assuming no material changes in facts or law.*

[TO COME]

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

**APPENDIX D**

**SCHEDULE OF DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

**SCHEDULE OF DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS\***

\$0* State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Bonds, Series 2022A	\$0* State of Texas Water Financial Assistance Refunding Bonds, Series 2022B
---	---

Fiscal Year	Total Existing Debt Service	Less:				Projected Total Debt Service	
		Refunded Debt Service	2022A Bonds Debt Service		2022B Bonds Debt Service		
			-	Principal	Interest		Principal
2022	\$ 86,082,236	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 86,082,236
2023	77,258,082	-	-	-	-	-	77,258,082
2024	74,809,272	-	-	-	-	-	74,809,272
2025	70,023,606	-	-	-	-	-	70,023,606
2026	66,451,720	-	-	-	-	-	66,451,720
2027	64,794,070	-	-	-	-	-	64,794,070
2028	60,393,050	-	-	-	-	-	60,393,050
2029	61,625,882	-	-	-	-	-	61,625,882
2030	57,639,217	-	-	-	-	-	57,639,217
2031	58,488,124	-	-	-	-	-	58,488,124
2032	48,818,975	-	-	-	-	-	48,818,975
2033	48,927,694	-	-	-	-	-	48,927,694
2034	44,152,601	-	-	-	-	-	44,152,601
2035	44,201,710	-	-	-	-	-	44,201,710
2036	43,122,082	-	-	-	-	-	43,122,082
2037	48,714,595	-	-	-	-	-	48,714,595
2038	48,728,297	-	-	-	-	-	48,728,297
2039	58,335,343	-	-	-	-	-	58,335,343
2040	58,510,272	-	-	-	-	-	58,510,272
2041	58,698,279	-	-	-	-	-	58,698,279
2042	27,131,626	-	-	-	-	-	27,131,626
2043	27,327,489	-	-	-	-	-	27,327,489
2044	27,113,906	-	-	-	-	-	27,113,906
2045	27,309,238	-	-	-	-	-	27,309,238
2046	1,806,919	-	-	-	-	-	1,806,919
	\$ 1,290,464,286	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,290,464,286

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

**SCHEDULE OF DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS\***

\$0\*

State of Texas

Water Financial Assistance

Refunding Bonds, Series 2022C

(Economically Distressed Areas Program)

Year	Total Existing Debt Service	Less:				Projected Total Debt Service
		Refunded Debt Service	2022C Bonds Debt Service			
			Principal	Interest	Total	
2022	\$ 27,492,641	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 27,492,641
2023	25,598,640	-	-	-	-	25,598,640
2024	24,279,437	-	-	-	-	24,279,437
2025	20,365,353	-	-	-	-	20,365,353
2026	17,364,353	-	-	-	-	17,364,353
2027	14,854,540	-	-	-	-	14,854,540
2028	14,423,790	-	-	-	-	14,423,790
2029	13,259,540	-	-	-	-	13,259,540
2030	11,530,090	-	-	-	-	11,530,090
2031	11,118,090	-	-	-	-	11,118,090
2032	10,787,740	-	-	-	-	10,787,740
2033	7,729,425	-	-	-	-	7,729,425
2034	7,483,775	-	-	-	-	7,483,775
2035	7,235,144	-	-	-	-	7,235,144
2036	2,758,631	-	-	-	-	2,758,631
2037	2,677,219	-	-	-	-	2,677,219
2038	2,592,675	-	-	-	-	2,592,675
	<u>\$ 221,551,082</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 221,551,082</u>

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

**SCHEDULE OF DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS\***

\$0\*

State of Texas

Water Financial Assistance

Refunding Bonds, Taxable Series 2022D

(State Participation Program)

<b>Year</b>	<b>Total Existing Debt Service</b>	<b>Less:</b>				<b>Projected Total Debt Service</b>
		<b>Refunded Debt Service</b>	<b>2022D Bonds Debt Service</b>			
			<b>Principal</b>	<b>Interest</b>	<b>Total</b>	
2022	\$ 9,213,663	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 9,213,663
2023	8,994,643	-	-	-	-	8,994,643
2024	8,894,229	-	-	-	-	8,894,229
2025	8,780,343	-	-	-	-	8,780,343
2026	8,664,608	-	-	-	-	8,664,608
2027	8,546,436	-	-	-	-	8,546,436
2028	8,440,681	-	-	-	-	8,440,681
2029	10,813,198	-	-	-	-	10,813,198
2030	10,708,505	-	-	-	-	10,708,505
2031	8,760,061	-	-	-	-	8,760,061
2032	8,744,234	-	-	-	-	8,744,234
2033	8,753,642	-	-	-	-	8,753,642
2034	8,749,755	-	-	-	-	8,749,755
2035	8,048,689	-	-	-	-	8,048,689
	<u>\$ 126,112,687</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 126,112,687</u>

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

## APPENDIX E

### BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

*This appendix describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC") while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as the Official Statement. The Board, the Financial Advisor and the Underwriters believe the source of such information to be reliable, but none of the Board, the Financial Advisor nor the Underwriters take any responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The Board and the Underwriters cannot and do not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in the Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC. Termination of the DTC Book-Entry-Only System by the Issuer may require consent of the Participants under DTC Operational Arrangements.*

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully registered Bond will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, as set forth on the inside of the cover pages hereof, in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants" and, together with the Direct Participants, the "Participants"). DTC has an S&P Global Ratings rating of "AA+." The DTC rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co. or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time.

Beneficial Owners of the Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of the Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners, in the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of the notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor such other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to the Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the Board as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts the Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts, upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC nor its nominee, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the Board, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as securities depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Board or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor securities depository is not obtained, Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The Board may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, Bond certificates will be printed and delivered to DTC.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry system has been obtained from sources that the Board believes to be reliable, but the Board takes no responsibility for the accuracy thereof and the information is not to be construed as a representation by the Board, the Financial Advisor or the Underwriters.

*Use of certain terms in other sections of the Official Statement.* In reading the Official Statement it should be understood while the Bonds are in the book-entry-only system, references in other sections of the Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Resolution will be given only to DTC.

[THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

